



NHD-0216K3Z-FL-GBW

Serial Liquid Crystal Display Module

NHD- Newhaven Display
0216- 2 lines x 16 characters
K3Z- Model
F- Transflective
L- Yellow/Green LED backlight
G- STN Gray
B- 6:00 view
W- Wide Temperature (-20 ~ +70c)
RoHS Compliant

Newhaven Display International, Inc.

2511 Technology Drive, Suite 101

Elgin IL, 60124

Ph: 847-844-8795 Fax: 847-844-8796

www.newhavendisplay.com

nhtech@newhavendisplay.com

nhsales@newhavendisplay.com

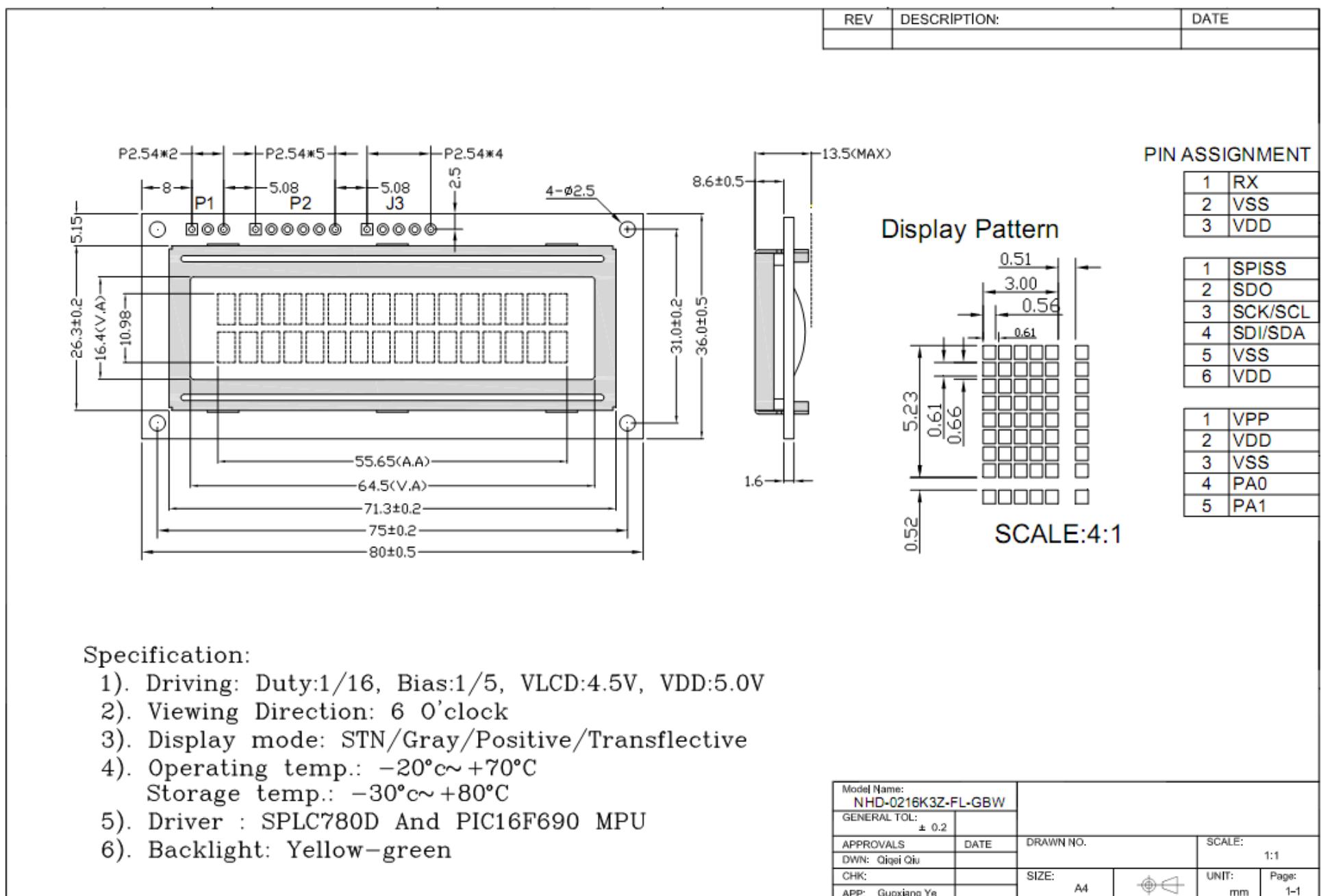
Document Revision History

Revision	Date	Description	Changed by
0	7/11/2007	Initial Release	-
1	12/15/2009	User guide reformat	CL

Functions and Features

- 2 lines x 16 characters
- Serial Interface: I2C, SPI or RS232
- 5V power supply
- 1/16 duty, 1/5 bias
- 5x8 pixels with cursor
- RoHS Compliant

Mechanical Drawing



Pin Description

Pin No.	Symbol	External Connection	Function Description
1	RX	MPU	RS232 Serial input port
2	VSS	Power Supply	Ground
3	VDD	Power Supply	Power supply for logic (+5.0V)
1	SPISS	MPU	SPI Slave Select (NC in I2C mode)
2	SDO	NC	No Connect
3	SCK/SCL	MPU	Serial Clock
4	SDI/SDA	MPU	Serial Data In (SPI) / Serial Data (I2C)
5	VSS	Power Supply	Ground
6	VDD	Power Supply	Power Supply for logic (+5.0V)
1	VPP	NC	No Connect
2	VDD	NC	No Connect
3	Vss	NC	No Connect
4	PA0	NC	No Connect
5	PA1	NC	No Connect

Recommended LCD connector: 2.54mm pitch pins on P1 or P2

Backlight connector: controlled by command **Mates with:** -

Jumper Communication Selection

R1	R2	Protocol	Description
Short	Short	TEST	Self-test
Open	Short	SPI	100KHz max clock
Short	Open	I2C	100KHz max clock
Open	Open	RS232	5V, TTL signal



Electrical Characteristics

Item	Symbol	Condition	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Operating Temperature Range	Top		-20	-	+70	°C
Storage Temperature Range	Tst		-30	-	+80	°C
Supply Voltage	VDD		4.7	5.0	5.5	V
Supply Current	IDD	Ta=25 °C VDD=5.0V	-	125	-	mA
Supply for LCD (contrast)	VDD-V0	Ta=25 °C	-	-	-	V
"H" Level input (Schmitt Trigger)	Vih		0.8VDD	-	VDD	V
"L" Level input (Schmitt Trigger)	Vil		VSS	-	0.2VDD	V
"H" Level output	Voh		-	-	-	V
"L" Level output	Vol		-	-	-	V
Backlight Supply Current	Iled		-	100	-	mA

Optical Characteristics

Item	Symbol	Condition	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Viewing Angle – Top	θ	Cr ≥ 2	-	10	-	°
Viewing Angle – Bottom	θ	Cr ≥ 2	-	60	-	°
Viewing Angle – Left	Φ	Cr ≥ 2	-	45	-	°
Viewing Angle – Right	Φ	Cr ≥ 2	-	45	-	°
Contrast Ratio	Cr		-	3	-	-
Response Time (rise)	Tr	-	-	100	150	ms
Response Time (fall)	Tf	-	-	150	200	ms

Built-in LCD Controller: PIC 16F690

http://www.newhavendisplay.com/app_notes/PIC16F690.pdf

Communication Information

This display uses a built-in PIC 16F690 for serial communication.

I2C protocol:

To enter the I2C mode, place a jumper on R1.

SDA and SDA have pull-up resistors (10K Ohm) on R7 and R8.

The default I2C address is 80 (50 hex). The I2C address can be changed to any 8-bit value by command function, with the exception that the LSB (least significant bit) must always be '0'. Once the I2C address has been changed, it will be saved in the system memory, and it will revert back to the default address if either RS232 or SPI protocol is selected. The I2C interface is capable of receiving data at up to 100KHz-clock rate.

SPI protocol:

To enter the SPI mode, place a jumper on R2.

SPI mode has a normally high level idle clock. When Slave Select is LOW, data is sampled on the rising edge of the Clock.

The SPI interface is capable of receiving data at up to 100KHz-clock rate.

RS232 protocol:

To enter the RS232 mode, both R1 and R2 should be open.

The RS232 signal must be 5V TTL compatible. Communication format is 8-bit data, 1 Stop bit, no parity, no hand-shaking. Default BAUD rate is 9600, and is changeable with a command function. Once the BAUD rate has been changed, it will be saved in the system memory, and it will revert back to the default address if either I2C or SPI protocol is selected.

ASCII TEXT

To display normal text, just enter its ASCII number. A number from **0x00 to 0x07** displays the user defined custom character, **0x20 to 0x7F** displays the standard set of characters, **0xA0 to 0xFD** display characters and symbols that are factory-masked on the SPLC780D controller. 0xFE is reserved.

Table of Commands

Prefix	CMD	Param	Description
0xFE	0x41	None	Display on
0xFE	0x42	None	Display off
0xFE	0x45	1 Byte	Set cursor
0xFE	0x46	None	Cursor home
0xFE	0x47	None	Underline cursor on
0xFE	0x48	None	Underline cursor off
0xFE	0x49	None	Move cursor left one place
0xFE	0x4A	None	Move cursor right one place
0xFE	0x4B	None	Blinking cursor on
0xFE	0x4C	None	Blinking cursor off
0xFE	0x4E	None	Backspace
0xFE	0x51	None	Clear screen
0xFE	0x52	1 Byte	Set contrast
0xFE	0x53	1 Byte	Set backlight brightness
0xFE	0x54	9 Byte	Load custom character
0xFE	0x55	None	Move display one place to the left
0xFE	0x56	None	Move display one place to the right
0xFE	0x61	1 Byte	Change RS232 BAUD rate 232
0xFE	0x62	1 Byte	Change I2C address
0xFE	0x70	None	Display firmware version number
0xFE	0x71	None	Display RS232 BAUD rate
0xFE	0x72	None	Display I2C address

Changing the I2C Slave Address

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x62 [adr]

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
[adr]	1 byte		New I ² C address, 0x00 – 0xFE The LSB is always '0'.

Description This command sets the I2C address, the address must be an even number, (LSB = 0). The address change requires 20 microsecond to take effect; therefore, the subsequent input must have an appropriate delay. The default I2C address can be restored if SPI or RS232 is selected as the communication mode.

Default 0x50

Changing BAUD Rate

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x61 [baud]

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	[baud]	1 byte	New RS232 BAUD Rate, 1 - 8

Description This command sets the RS232 BAUD rate, the single byte parameter select the desired BAUD rate as in the table below. The new BAUD rate requires 20 microsecond to take effect, therefore, the subsequent input must have an appropriate delay. The default BAUD rate can be restored if I2C or SPI is selected as the communication mode. Illegal parameter input will be discarded.
Default 9600 BAUD

Parameter	BAUD
1	300
2	1200
3	2400
4	9600
5	14400
6	19.2K
7	57.6K
8	115.2K

Turn On Display

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x41

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn on LCD screen

Description This command turns on the LCD display screen, the display text is not altered.
Default LCD screen is on

Turn Off Display

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x42

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn off LCD screen

Description This command turns off the LCD display screen, the display text is not altered.
Default LCD screen is on

Set Cursor Position

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x45 [pos]

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
[pos]	1 byte		Put cursor at location specified by [pos], 0x00 to 0x67

Description This command moves the cursor to a specified location where the next character will be displayed. The typical cursor position for a 4-line display is show below; a cursor position outside these ranges will not be viewable.

.	Column1	Column20
Line1	0x00	0x13
Line 2	0x40	0x53
Line 3	0x14	0x27
Line 4	0x54	0x67

Default After a reset, the cursor is on position 0x00.

Home Cursor

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x46

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Position cursor at line 1 column 1

Description This command move the cursor to line 1, column 1 of the LCD screen, the display text is not altered.
Default None

Turn On Underline Cursor

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x47

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn on underline cursor

Description This command turns on the underline cursor, the cursor position is where the next character will appear.

Default The underline cursor is off.

Turn Off Underline Cursor

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x48

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn off underline cursor

Description This command turns off the underline cursor.

Default The underline cursor is off.

Move Cursor Left One Space

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x49

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Move cursor left 1 space
Description	This command moves the cursor position left 1 space, regardless the cursor is displayed or not, and the displayed character is not altered		
Default	None		

Move Cursor Right One Space

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x4A

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Move cursor right 1 space
Description	This command moves the cursor position right 1 space, regardless the cursor is displayed or not, and the displayed character is not altered		
Default	None		

Turn On Blinking Cursor

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x4B

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn on the blinking cursor
Description	This command turns on the blinking cursor, both the cursor and the character on the cursor will blink.		
Default	The blinking cursor is off.		

Turn Off Blinking Cursor

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x4C

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Turn off the blinking cursor
Description	This command turns off the blinking cursor.		
Default	The blinking cursor is off.		

Back Space

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x4E

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Move cursor back one space, deletes the character on the cursor.
Description	This command is destructive backspace, the cursor is moved back one space and the character on the cursor is deleted.		
Default	None.		

Clear Screen

Syntax	hexadecimal	0xFE	0x51
Parameter	<u>Parameter</u>	Length	Description
	None	None	Clear LCD and move cursor to line 1 column 1.
Description	This command clears the entire display and place the cursor at line 1 column 1.		
Default	None.		

Set Display Contrast

Syntax	hexadecimal 0xFE 0x52 [contrast]						
Parameter	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th><th>Length</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[contrast]</td><td>1 byte</td><td>Set the display contrast, value between 1 to 50</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter	Length	Description	[contrast]	1 byte	Set the display contrast, value between 1 to 50
Parameter	Length	Description					
[contrast]	1 byte	Set the display contrast, value between 1 to 50					
Description	This command sets the LCD character display contrast, the contrast setting is between 1 to 50, where 50 is the highest contrast.						
Default	Default contrast value is 40.						

Set Backlight Brightness

Syntax	hexadecimal 0xFE 0x53 [brightness]						
<hr/>							
Parameter	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th><th>Length</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[brightness]</td><td>1 byte</td><td>Set the LCD backlight brightness level, value between 1 to 8.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter	Length	Description	[brightness]	1 byte	Set the LCD backlight brightness level, value between 1 to 8.
Parameter	Length	Description					
[brightness]	1 byte	Set the LCD backlight brightness level, value between 1 to 8.					
Description	This command set the LCD display backlight brightness level, the value is between 1 to 8.						
Default	Default brightness value is 1.						

Load Custom Characters

Syntax	hexadecimal 0xFE 0x54 [addr] [d0 ...d7]									
Parameter	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th><th>Length</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[addr]</td><td>1 byte</td><td>Custom character address, 0 – 7</td></tr> <tr> <td>[D0..D7]</td><td>8 bytes</td><td>Custom character pattern bit map</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Parameter	Length	Description	[addr]	1 byte	Custom character address, 0 – 7	[D0..D7]	8 bytes	Custom character pattern bit map
Parameter	Length	Description								
[addr]	1 byte	Custom character address, 0 – 7								
[D0..D7]	8 bytes	Custom character pattern bit map								
Description	There are space for eight user defined custom characters, this command load the custom character into one of the eight locations. The custom character pattern is bit mapped into 8 data bytes, the bit map for Spanish character ‘;’ is shown in table below, to display the custom character, user simply enter the address of the character (0 to 8).									
Default	None.									

Shift Display to the Left

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x55

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Shift the LCD screen to the left one Place.
Description	This command shifts the display one place to the left, the cursor position also moves with the display, and the display data is not altered.		
Default	None		

Shift Display to the Right

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x56

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Shift the LCD screen to the right one Place.
Description	This command shifts the display one place to the right, the cursor position also moves with the display, and the display data is not altered.		
Default	None		

Display Firmware Version Number

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x70

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Display the firmware version number.
Description	This command displays the micro-controller firmware version number.		
Default	None.		

Display RS232 Baud Rate

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x71

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Display Baud Rate
Description	This command displays the current RS232 BAUD rate.		
Default	None.		

Display I²C Address

Syntax hexadecimal 0xFE 0x72

Parameter	Parameter	Length	Description
	None	None	Display I ² C Address
Description	This command displays the current I ² C slave address.		
Default	None.		

Built-in Font Table

Lower 4 Bits \ Upper 4 Bits	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
xxxx0000	CG RAM (1)			Ø	ø	P	^	P				-	タミ	xp		
xxxx0001	(2)		!	1	A	Q	a	q			■	アチ	4	ä	q	
xxxx0010	(3)		"	2	B	R	b	r			『	イツ	×	β	θ	
xxxx0011	(4)		#	3	C	S	c	s			』	ウテ	モ	ε	∞	
xxxx0100	(5)		\$	4	D	T	d	t			、	エト	ト	ム	¤	
xxxx0101	(6)		%	5	E	U	e	u			・	オナ	ユ	σ	º	
xxxx0110	(7)		&	6	F	V	f	v			ヲ	カニ	ヨ	ρ	Σ	
xxxx0111	(8)		'	7	G	W	g	w			アキ	ラ	9	π		
xxxx1000	(1)		(8	H	X	h	x			イ	ク	ネリ	ゞ	☒	
xxxx1001	(2))	9	I	Y	i	y			ウ	ケ	ル	‐	¥	
xxxx1010	(3)		*	:	J	Z	j	z			エ	コ	ハ	レ	జ	
xxxx1011	(4)		+	;	K	[k	{			オ	サ	ヒ	ロ	¤	
xxxx1100	(5)		,	<	L	¥	l	l			ヤ	シ	フ	ワ	¤	
xxxx1101	(6)		-	=	M]	m	}			ュ	ス	ヘ	ン	÷	
xxxx1110	(7)		.	>	N	^	n	→			ヨ	セ	ホ	♪	♪	
xxxx1111	(8)		/	?	O	_	o	€			□	ソ	マ	¤	ö	█

Example Initialization Program

See program code at http://www.newhavendisplay.com/app_notes/Serial_LCD.txt

Quality Information

Test Item	Content of Test	Test Condition	Note
High Temperature storage	Endurance test applying the high storage temperature for a long time.	+80°C , 48hrs	2
Low Temperature storage	Endurance test applying the low storage temperature for a long time.	-30°C , 48hrs	1,2
High Temperature Operation	Endurance test applying the electric stress (voltage & current) and the high thermal stress for a long time.	+70°C 48hrs	2
Low Temperature Operation	Endurance test applying the electric stress (voltage & current) and the low thermal stress for a long time.	-20°C , 48hrs	1,2
High Temperature / Humidity Operation	Endurance test applying the electric stress (voltage & current) and the high thermal with high humidity stress for a long time.	+40°C , 90% RH , 48hrs	1,2
Thermal Shock resistance	Endurance test applying the electric stress (voltage & current) during a cycle of low and high thermal stress.	0°C,30min -> +25°C,5min -> +50°C,30min = 1 cycle 10 cycles	
Vibration test	Endurance test applying vibration to simulate transportation and use.	10-55Hz , 15mm amplitude. 60 sec in each of 3 directions X,Y,Z For 15 minutes	3
Static electricity test	Endurance test applying electric static discharge.	VS=800V, RS=1.5kΩ, CS=100pF One time	

Note 1: No condensation to be observed.

Note 2: Conducted after 4 hours of storage at 25°C, 0%RH.

Note 3: Test performed on product itself, not inside a container.

Precautions for using LCDs/LCMs

See Precautions at www.newhavendisplay.com/specs/precautions.pdf

Warranty Information and Terms & Conditions

http://www.newhavendisplay.com/index.php?main_page=terms



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Data Sheet

20-Pin Flash-Based, 8-Bit
CMOS Microcontrollers with
nanoWatt Technology

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is provided only for your convenience and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. **MICROCHIP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WRITTEN OR ORAL, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, RELATED TO THE INFORMATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ITS CONDITION, QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PURPOSE.** Microchip disclaims all liability arising from this information and its use. Use of Microchip devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Microchip from any and all damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, under any Microchip intellectual property rights.

Trademarks

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, Accuron, dsPIC, KEELOQ, microID, MPLAB, PIC, PICmicro, PICSTART, PRO MATE, PowerSmart, rfPIC and SmartShunt are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

AmpLab, FilterLab, Migratable Memory, MXDEV, MXLAB, SEEVAL, SmartSensor and The Embedded Control Solutions Company are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Analog-for-the-Digital Age, Application Maestro, CodeGuard, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, dsPICworks, ECAN, ECONOMONITOR, FanSense, FlexROM, fuzzyLAB, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, ICEPIC, Linear Active Thermistor, Mindi, MiWi, MPASM, MPLIB, MPLINK, PICkit, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICLAB, PICtail, PowerCal, PowerInfo, PowerMate, PowerTool, REAL ICE, rfLAB, rfPICDEM, Select Mode, Smart Serial, SmartTel, Total Endurance, UNI/O, WiperLock and ZENA are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2006, Microchip Technology Incorporated, Printed in the U.S.A., All Rights Reserved.

 Printed on recycled paper.

**QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CERTIFIED BY DNV
= ISO/TS 16949:2002 =**

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona, Gresham, Oregon and Mountain View, California. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.



MICROCHIP PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

20-Pin Flash-Based, 8-Bit CMOS Microcontrollers with nanoWatt Technology

High-Performance RISC CPU:

- Only 35 instructions to learn:
 - All single-cycle instructions except branches
- Operating speed:
 - DC – 20 MHz oscillator/clock input
 - DC – 200 ns instruction cycle
- Interrupt capability
- 8-level deep hardware stack
- Direct, Indirect and Relative Addressing modes

Special Microcontroller Features:

- Precision Internal Oscillator:
 - Factory calibrated to $\pm 1\%$
 - Software selectable frequency range of 8 MHz to 32 kHz
 - Software tunable
 - Two-Speed Start-up mode
 - Crystal fail detect for critical applications
 - Clock mode switching during operation for power savings
- Power-Saving Sleep mode
- Wide operating voltage range (2.0V-5.5V)
- Industrial and Extended Temperature range
- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Power-up Timer (PWRTE) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR) with software control option
- Enhanced low-current Watchdog Timer (WDT) with on-chip oscillator (software selectable nominal 268 seconds with full prescaler) with software enable
- Multiplexed Master Clear/Input pin
- Programmable code protection
- High Endurance Flash/EEPROM cell:
 - 100,000 write Flash endurance
 - 1,000,000 write EEPROM endurance
 - Flash/Data EEPROM retention: > 40 years
- Enhanced USART module:
 - Supports RS-485, RS-232 and LIN 2.0
 - Auto-Baud Detect
 - Auto-wake-up on Start bit

Low-Power Features:

- **Standby Current:**
 - 50 nA @ 2.0V, typical
- **Operating Current:**
 - 11 μ A @ 32 kHz, 2.0V, typical
 - 220 μ A @ 4 MHz, 2.0V, typical
- **Watchdog Timer Current:**
 - <1 μ A @ 2.0V, typical

Peripheral Features:

- 17 I/O pins and 1 input only pin:
 - High current source/sink for direct LED drive
 - Interrupt-on-Change pin
 - Individually programmable weak pull-ups
 - Ultra Low-Power Wake-up (ULPWU)
- Analog Comparator module with:
 - Two analog comparators
 - Programmable on-chip voltage reference (CVREF) module (% of VDD)
 - Comparator inputs and outputs externally accessible
 - SR Latch mode
 - Timer 1 Gate Sync Latch
 - Fixed 0.6V VREF
- A/D Converter:
 - 10-bit resolution and 12 channels
- Timer0: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit programmable prescaler
- Enhanced Timer1:
 - 16-bit timer/counter with prescaler
 - External Timer1 Gate (count enable)
 - Option to use OSC1 and OSC2 in LP mode as Timer1 oscillator if INTOSC mode selected
- Timer2: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit period register, prescaler and postscaler
- Enhanced Capture, Compare, PWM+ module:
 - 16-bit Capture, max resolution 12.5 ns
 - Compare, max resolution 200 ns
 - 10-bit PWM with 1, 2 or 4 output channels, programmable “dead time”, max frequency 20 kHz
 - PWM output steering control
- Synchronous Serial Port (SSP):
 - SPI mode (Master and Slave)
- I²CTM (Master/Slave modes):
 - I²CTM address mask
- In-Circuit Serial ProgrammingTM (ICSPTM) via two pins

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Device	Program Memory	Data Memory		I/O	10-bit A/D (ch)	Comparators	Timers 8/16-bit	SSP	ECCP+	EUSART
	Flash (words)	SRAM (bytes)	EEPROM (bytes)							
PIC16F631	1024	64	128	18	—	2	1/1	No	No	No
PIC16F677	2048	128	256	18	12	2	1/1	Yes	No	No
PIC16F685	4096	256	256	18	12	2	2/1	No	Yes	No
PIC16F687	2048	128	256	18	12	2	1/1	Yes	No	Yes
PIC16F689	4096	256	256	18	12	2	1/1	Yes	No	Yes
PIC16F690	4096	256	256	18	12	2	2/1	Yes	Yes	Yes

PIC16F631 Pin Diagram

20-pin PDIP, SOIC, SSOP

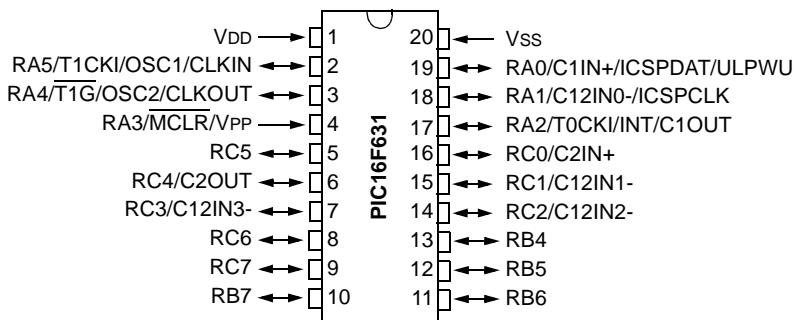


TABLE 1: PIC16F631 PIN SUMMARY

I/O	Pin	Analog	Comparators	Timers	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	19	AN0/ULPWU	C1IN+	—	IOC	Y	ICSPDAT
RA1	18	AN1	C12IN0-	—	IOC	Y	ICSPCLK
RA2	17	—	C1OUT	T0CKI	IOC/INT	Y	—
RA3	4	—	—	—	IOC	Y ⁽¹⁾	MCLR/VPP
RA4	3	—	—	T1G	IOC	Y	OSC2/CLKOUT
RA5	2	—	—	T1CKI	IOC	Y	OSC1/CLKIN
RB4	13	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB5	12	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB6	11	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB7	10	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RC0	16	AN4	C2IN+	—	—	—	—
RC1	15	AN5	C12IN1-	—	—	—	—
RC2	14	AN6	C12IN2-	—	—	—	—
RC3	7	AN7	C12IN3-	—	—	—	—
RC4	6	—	C2OUT	—	—	—	—
RC5	5	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC6	8	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC7	9	—	—	—	—	—	—
—	1	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
—	20	—	—	—	—	—	VSS

Note 1: Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PIC16F677 Pin Diagram

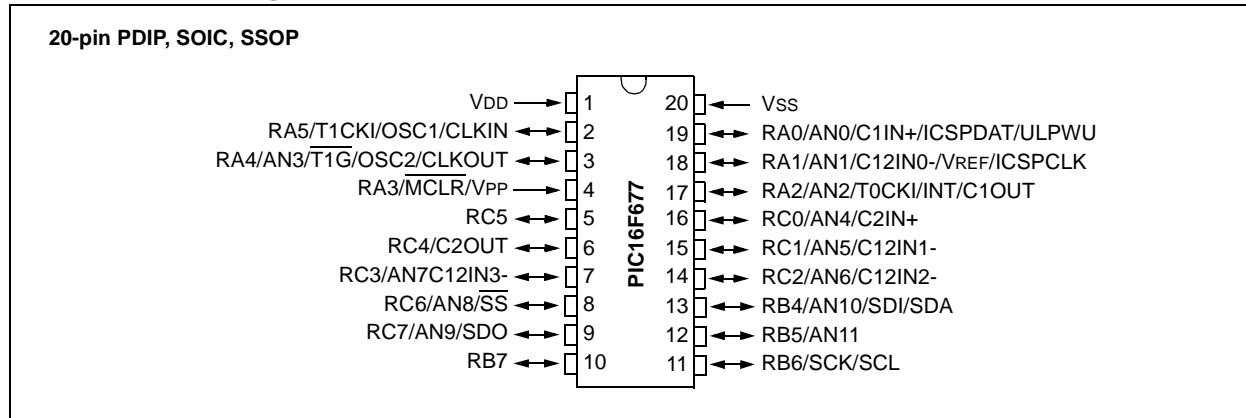


TABLE 2: PIC16F677 PIN SUMMARY

I/O	Pin	Analog	Comparators	Timers	SSP	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	19	AN0/ULPWU	C1IN+	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPDAT
RA1	18	AN1/VREF	C12IN0-	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPCLK
RA2	17	AN2	C1OUT	T0CKI	—	IOC/INT	Y	—
RA3	4	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y ⁽¹⁾	MCLR/VPP
RA4	3	AN3	—	T1G	—	IOC	Y	OSC2/CLKOUT
RA5	2	—	—	T1CKI	—	IOC	Y	OSC1/CLKIN
RB4	13	AN10	—	—	SDI/SDA	IOC	Y	—
RB5	12	AN11	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB6	11	—	—	—	SCL/SCK	IOC	Y	—
RB7	10	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RC0	16	AN4	C2IN+	—	—	—	—	—
RC1	15	AN5	C12IN1-	—	—	—	—	—
RC2	14	AN6	C12IN2-	—	—	—	—	—
RC3	7	AN7	C12IN3-	—	—	—	—	—
RC4	6	—	C2OUT	—	—	—	—	—
RC5	5	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC6	8	AN8	—	—	SS	—	—	—
RC7	9	AN9	—	—	SDO	—	—	—
—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
—	20	—	—	—	—	—	—	Vss

Note 1: Pull-up activated only with external MCLR configuration.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PIC16F685 Pin Diagram

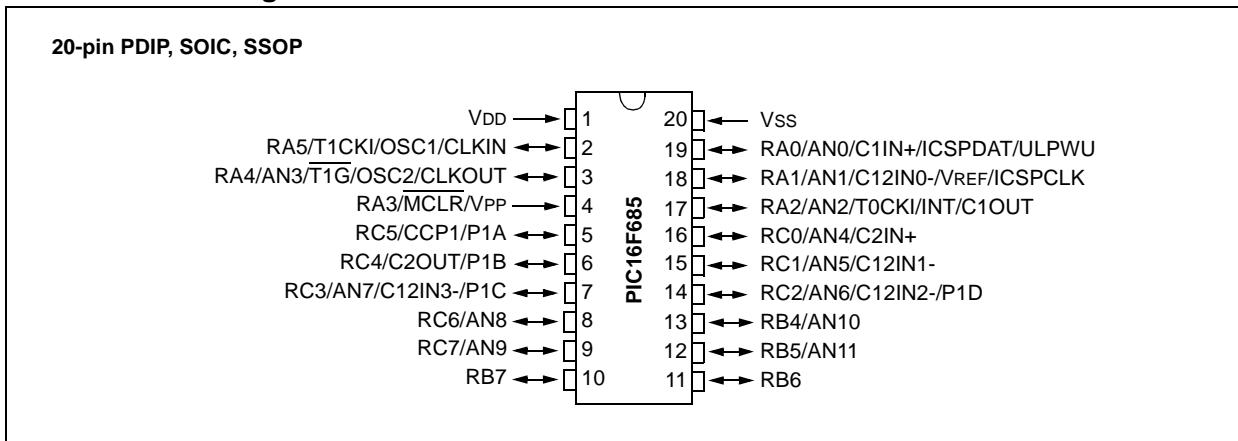


TABLE 3: PIC16F685 PIN SUMMARY

I/O	Pin	Analog	Comparators	Timers	ECCP	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	19	AN0/ULPWU	C1IN+	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPDAT
RA1	18	AN1/VREF	C12IN0-	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPCLK
RA2	17	AN2	C1OUT	T0CKI	—	IOC/INT	Y	—
RA3	4	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y ⁽¹⁾	MCLR/VPP
RA4	3	AN3	—	$\overline{T1G}$	—	IOC	Y	OSC2/CLKOUT
RA5	2	—	—	T1CKI	—	IOC	Y	OSC1/CLKIN
RB4	13	AN10	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB5	12	AN11	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB6	11	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RB7	10	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y	—
RC0	16	AN4	C2IN+	—	—	—	—	—
RC1	15	AN5	C12IN1-	—	—	—	—	—
RC2	14	AN6	C12IN2-	—	P1D	—	—	—
RC3	7	AN7	C12IN3-	—	P1C	—	—	—
RC4	6	—	C2OUT	—	P1B	—	—	—
RC5	5	—	—	—	CCP1/P1A	—	—	—
RC6	8	AN8	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC7	9	AN9	—	—	—	—	—	—
—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
—	20	—	—	—	—	—	—	VSS

Note 1: Pull-up activated only with external MCLR configuration.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PIC16F687/689 Pin Diagram

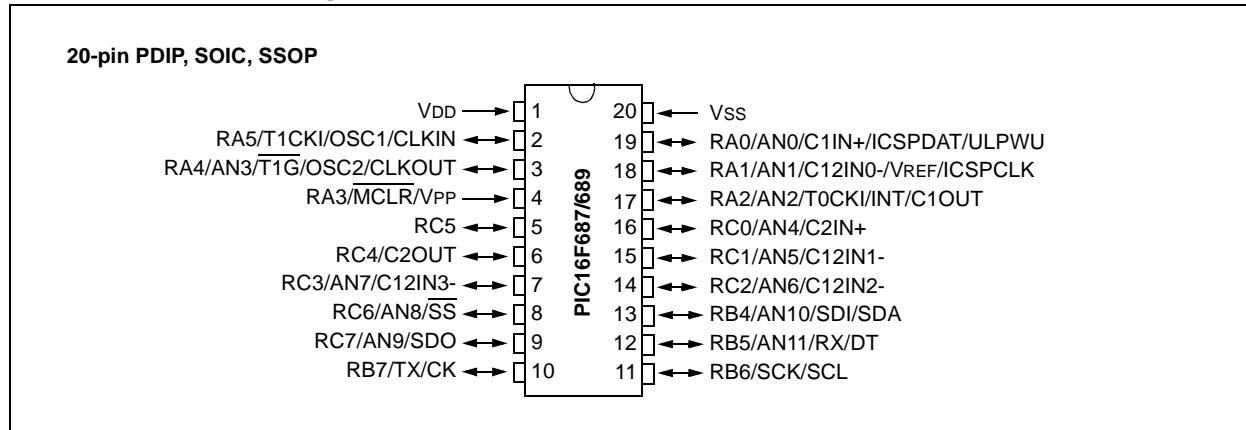


TABLE 4: PIC16F687/689 PIN SUMMARY

I/O	Pin	Analog	Comparators	Timers	EUSART	SSP	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	19	AN0/ULPWU	C1IN+	—	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPDAT
RA1	18	AN1/VREF	C12IN0-	—	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPCLK
RA2	17	AN2	C1OUT	T0CKI	—	—	IOC/INT	Y	—
RA3	4	—	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y ⁽¹⁾	MCLR/VPP
RA4	3	AN3	—	T1G	—	—	IOC	Y	OSC2/CLKOUT
RA5	2	—	—	T1CKI	—	—	IOC	Y	OSC1/CLKIN
RB4	13	AN10	—	—	—	SDI/SDA	IOC	Y	—
RB5	12	AN11	—	—	RX/DT	—	IOC	Y	—
RB6	11	—	—	—	—	SCL/SCK	IOC	Y	—
RB7	10	—	—	—	TX/CK	—	IOC	Y	—
RC0	16	AN4	C2IN+	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC1	15	AN5	C12IN1-	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC2	14	AN6	C12IN2-	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC3	7	AN7	C12IN3-	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC4	6	—	C2OUT	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC5	5	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC6	8	AN8	—	—	—	SS	—	—	—
RC7	9	AN9	—	—	—	SDO	—	—	—
—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
—	20	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Vss

Note 1: Pull-up activated only with external MCLR configuration.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PIC16F690 Pin Diagram (PDIP, SOIC, SSOP)

20-pin PDIP, SOIC, SSOP

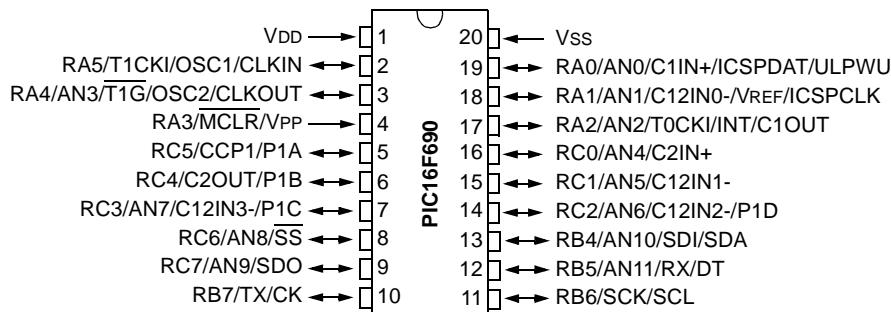


TABLE 5: PIC16F690 PIN SUMMARY

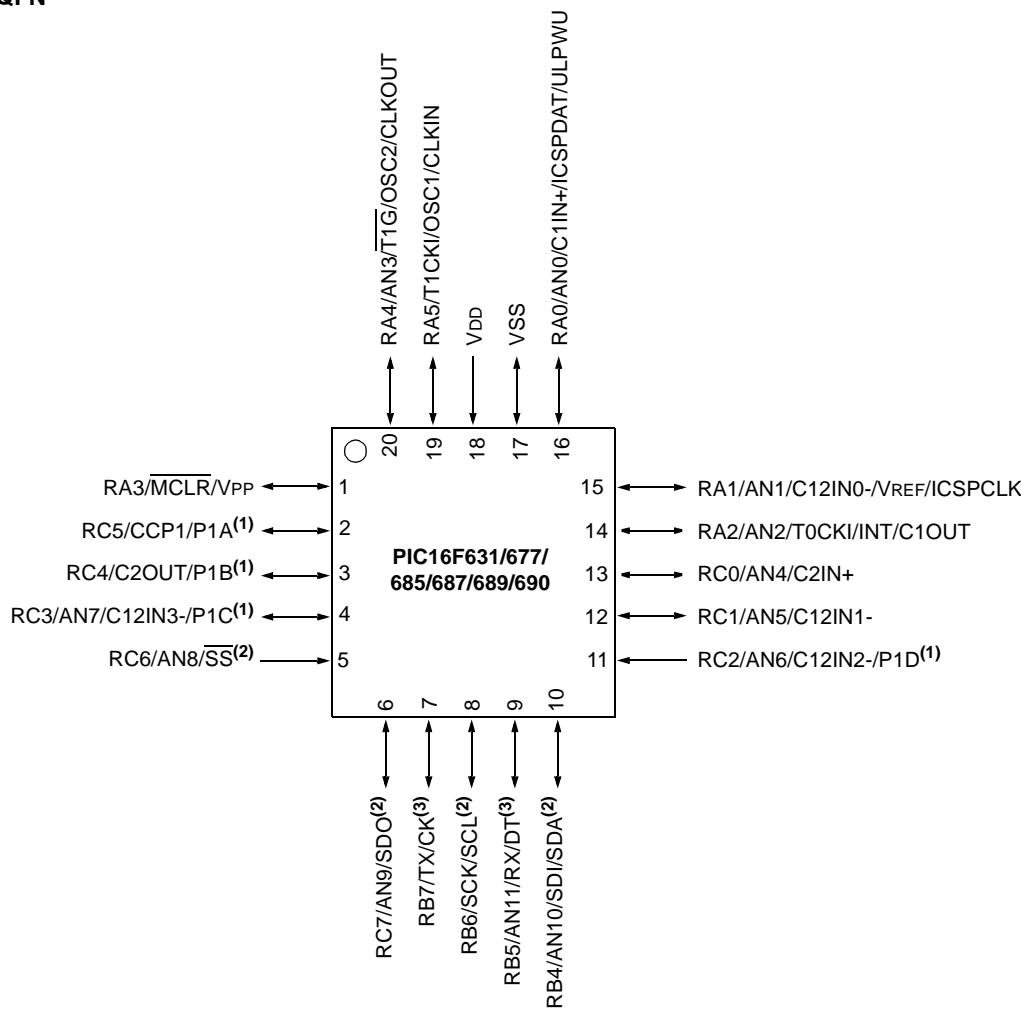
I/O	Pin	Analog	Comparators	Timers	ECCP	EUSART	SSP	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	19	AN0/ULPWU	C1IN+	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPDAT
RA1	18	AN1/VREF	C12IN0-	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y	ICSPCLK
RA2	17	AN2	C1OUT	T0CKI	—	—	—	IOC/INT	Y	—
RA3	4	—	—	—	—	—	—	IOC	Y ⁽¹⁾	MCLR/VPP
RA4	3	AN3	—	T1G	—	—	—	IOC	Y	OSC2/CLKOUT
RA5	2	—	—	T1CKI	—	—	—	IOC	Y	OSC1/CLKIN
RB4	13	AN10	—	—	—	SDI/SDA	IOC	Y	—	—
RB5	12	AN11	—	—	—	RX/DT	—	IOC	Y	—
RB6	11	—	—	—	—	SCL/SCK	IOC	Y	—	—
RB7	10	—	—	—	—	TX/CK	—	IOC	Y	—
RC0	16	AN4	C2IN+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC1	15	AN5	C12IN1-	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
RC2	14	AN6	C12IN2-	—	P1D	—	—	—	—	—
RC3	7	AN7	C12IN3-	—	P1C	—	—	—	—	—
RC4	6	—	C2OUT	—	P1B	—	—	—	—	—
RC5	5	—	—	—	CCP1/P1A	—	—	—	—	—
RC6	8	AN8	—	—	—	—	SS	—	—	—
RC7	9	AN9	—	—	—	—	SDO	—	—	—
—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
—	20	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VSS

Note 1: Pull-up activated only with external MCLR configuration.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PIC16F690 Pin Diagram (QFN)

20-pin QFN



Note 1: CCP1/P1A, P1B, P1C and P1D are available on PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

2: SS, SDO, SDI/SDA and SCL/SCK are available on PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: RX/DT and TX/CK are available on PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Table of Contents

1.0	Device Overview	9
2.0	Memory Organization	25
3.0	Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor).....	47
4.0	I/O Ports	59
5.0	Timer0 Module	81
6.0	Timer1 Module with Gate Control.....	84
7.0	Timer2 Module	91
8.0	Comparator Module.....	93
9.0	Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Module	107
10.0	Data EEPROM and Flash Program Memory Control	119
11.0	Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM Module	127
12.0	Enhanced Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (EUSART).....	149
13.0	SSP Module Overview	175
14.0	Special Features of the CPU	193
15.0	Instruction Set Summary	213
16.0	Development Support.....	223
17.0	Electrical Specifications.....	227
18.0	DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables.....	255
19.0	Packaging Information.....	275
	Appendix A: Data Sheet Revision History	281
	Appendix B: Migrating from other PICmicro® Devices	281

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at docerrors@microchip.com or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

<http://www.microchip.com>

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; <http://www.microchip.com>
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at www.microchip.com to receive the most current information on all of our products.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

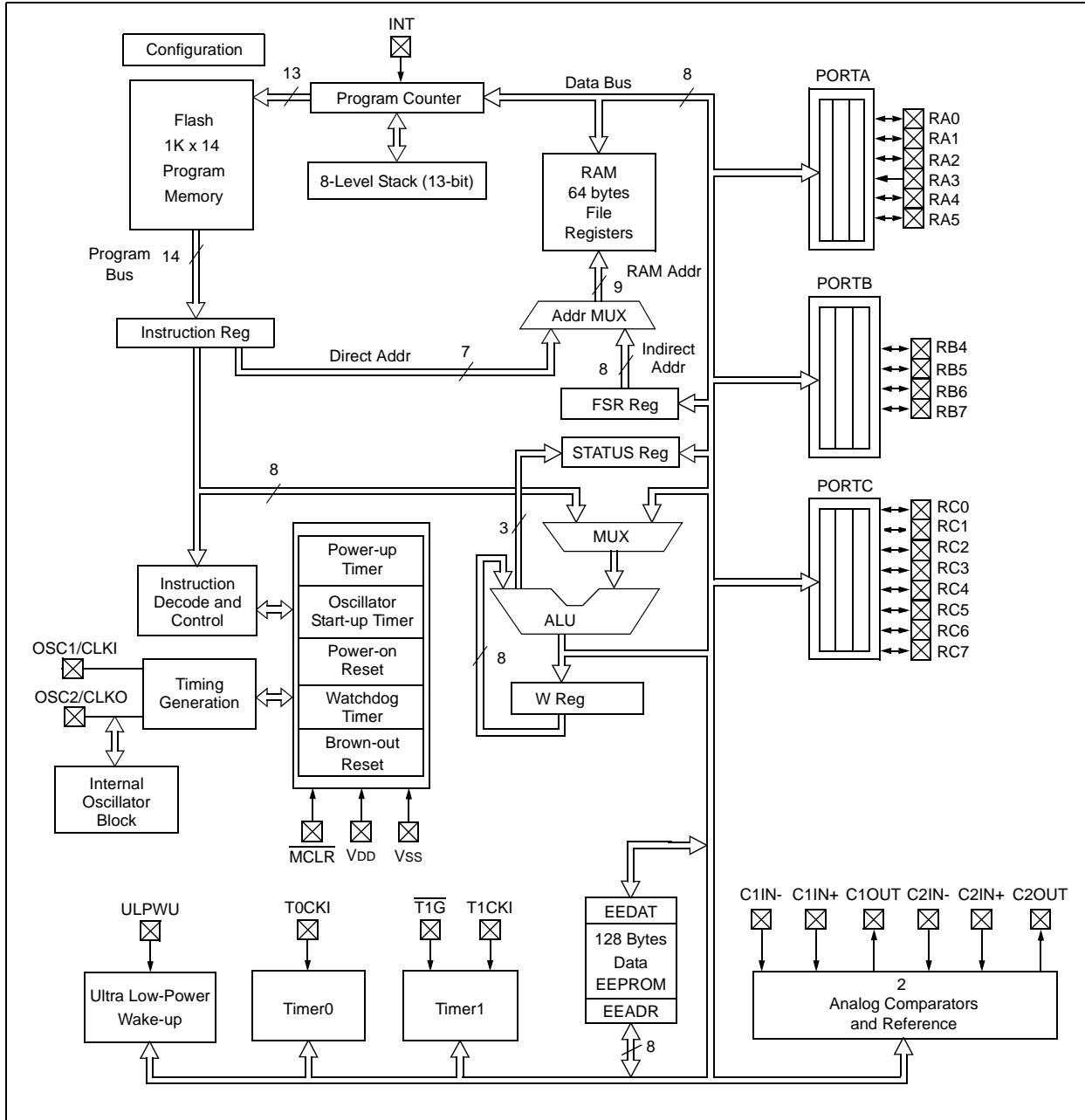
1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 devices are covered by this data sheet. They are available in 20-pin PDIP, SOIC, TSSOP and QFN packages.

Block Diagrams and pinout descriptions of the devices are as follows:

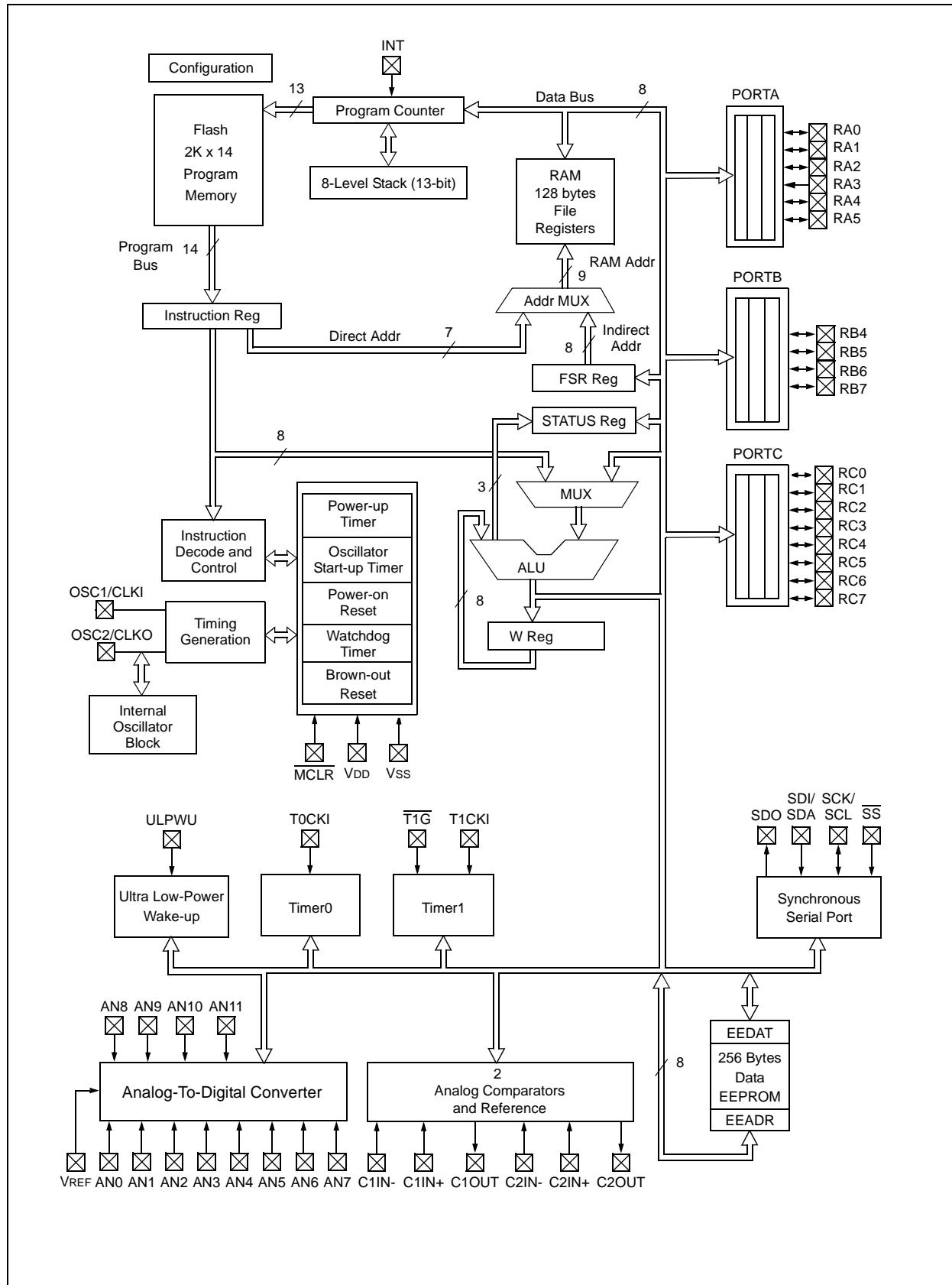
- PIC16F631 (Figure 1-1, Table 1-1)
- PIC16F677 (Figure 1-2, Table 1-2)
- PIC16F685 (Figure 1-3, Table 1-3)
- PIC16F687/PIC16F689 (Figure 1-4, Table 1-4)
- PIC16F690 (Figure 1-5, Table 1-5)

FIGURE 1-1: PIC16F631 BLOCK DIAGRAM



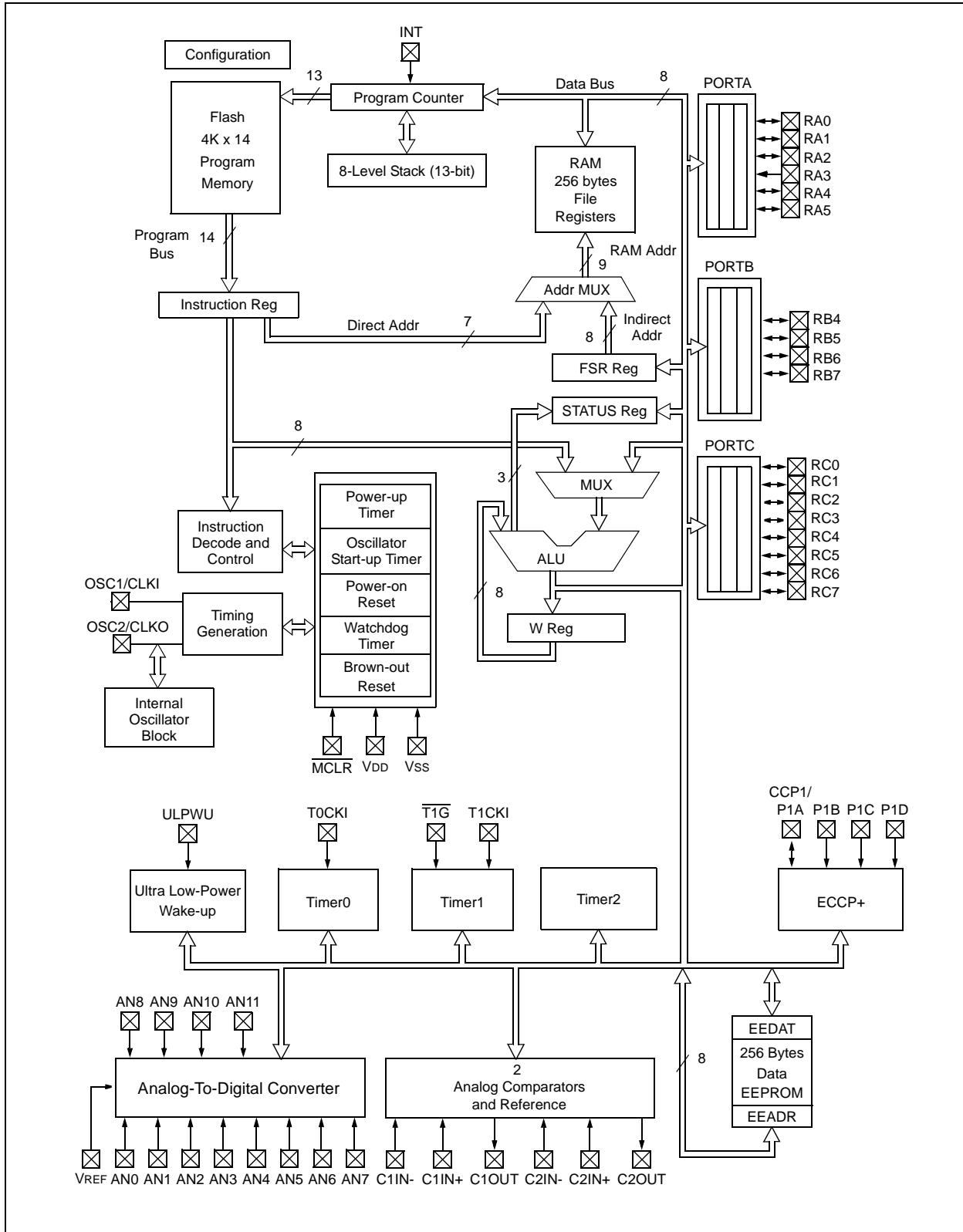
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 1-2: PIC16F677 BLOCK DIAGRAM



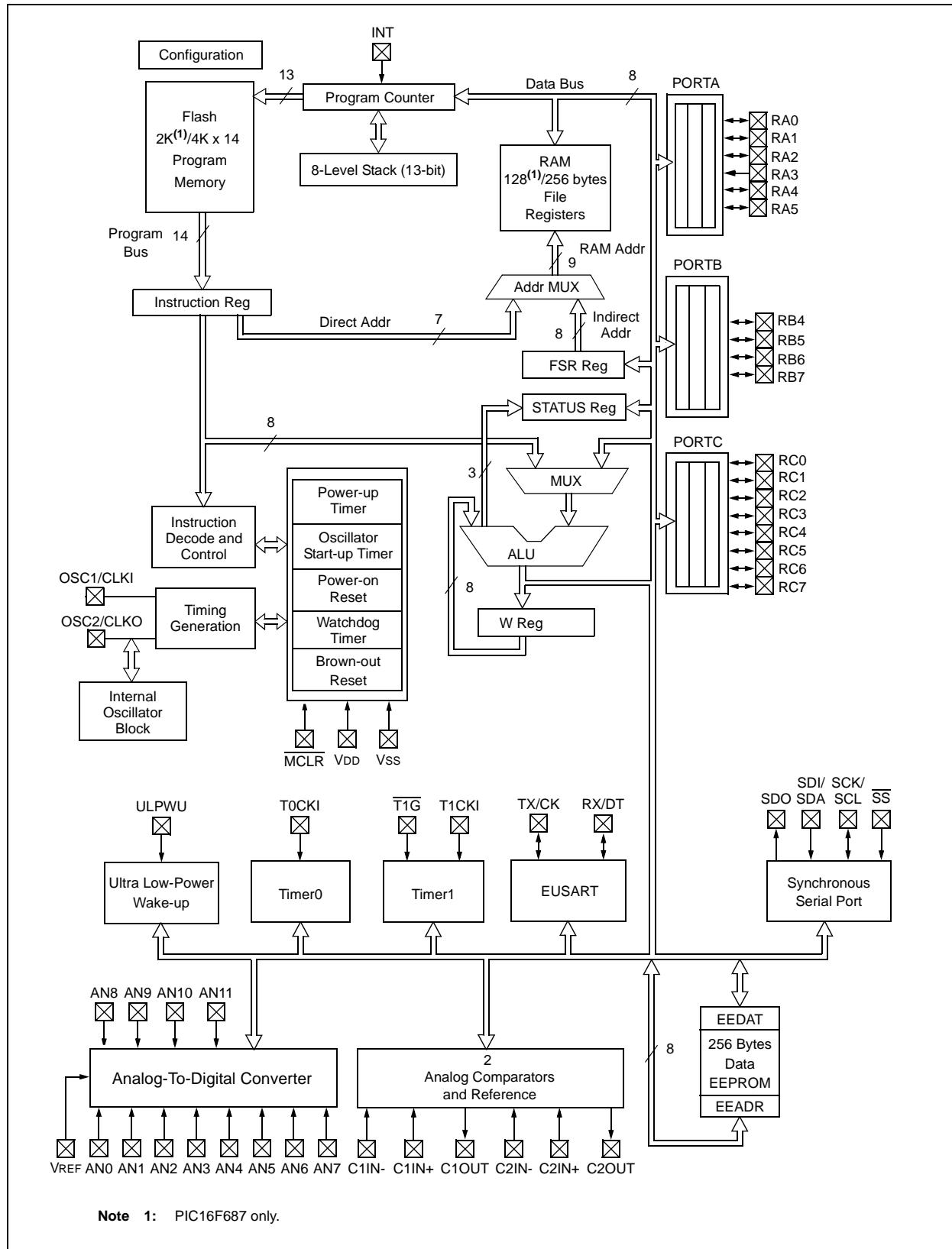
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 1-3: PIC16F685 BLOCK DIAGRAM



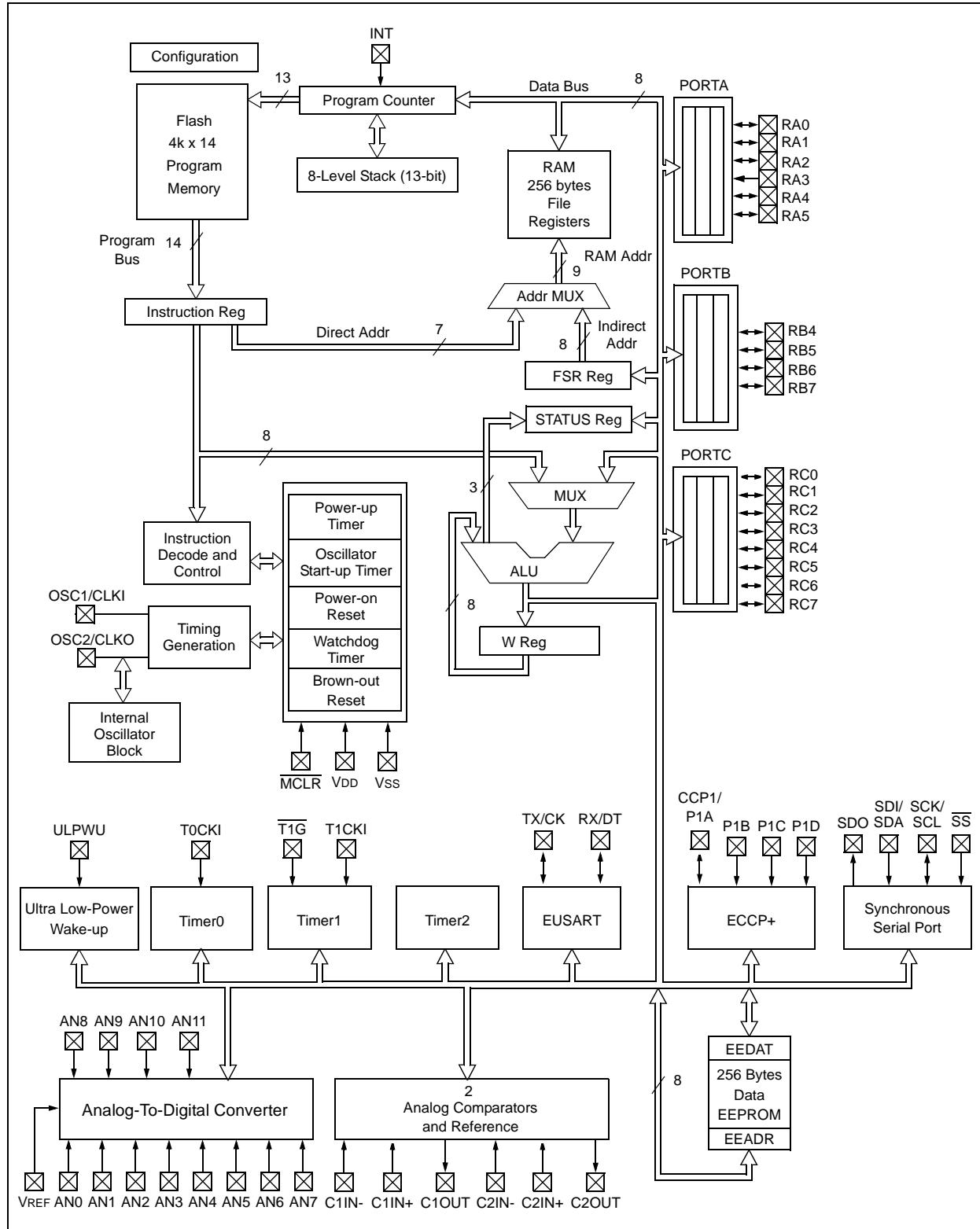
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 1-4: PIC16F687/PIC16F689 BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 1-5: PIC16F690 BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-1: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F631

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ULPWU	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 non-inverting input.
	ICSPDAT	ST	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ULPWU	AN	—	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up input.
RA1/C12IN0-/ICSPCLK	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	C12IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	ICSP™ clock.
RA2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT	RA2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	INT	ST	—	External interrupt pin.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
RA3/MCLR/VPP	RA3	TTL	—	General purpose input. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change.
	MCLR	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
RA4/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1G	ST	—	Timer1 gate input.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	Fosc/4 output.
RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKIN	ST	—	External clock input/RC oscillator connection.
RB4	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RB5	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RB6	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RB7	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RC0/C2IN+	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 non-inverting input.
RC1/C12IN1-	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C12IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC2/C12IN2-	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C12IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC3/C12IN3-	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C12IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC4/C2OUT	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
RC5	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-1: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F631 (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RC6	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
RC7	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
VSS	VSS	Power	—	Ground reference.
VDD	VDD	Power	—	Positive supply.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output

TTL = TTL compatible input ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels

HV = High Voltage XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F677

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ ULPWU	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN0	AN	—	A/D Channel 0 input.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 non-inverting input.
	ICSPDAT	ST	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ULPWU	AN	—	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up input.
RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ ICSPCLK	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN1	AN	—	A/D Channel 1 input.
	C12IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
	VREF	AN	—	External Voltage Reference for A/D.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	ICSP™ clock.
RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT	RA2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN2	AN	—	A/D Channel 2 input.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	INT	ST	—	External interrupt pin.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
RA3/MCLR/VPP	RA3	TTL	—	General purpose input. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change.
	MCLR	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN3	AN	—	A/D Channel 3 input.
	T1G	ST	—	Timer1 gate input.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	FOSC/4 output.
RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKIN	ST	—	External clock input/RC oscillator connection.
RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN10	AN	—	A/D Channel 10 input.
	SDI	ST	—	SPI data input.
	SDA	ST	OD	I ² C™ data input/output.
RB5/AN11	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN11	AN	—	A/D Channel 11 input.
RB6/SCK/SCL	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SCK	ST	CMOS	SPI clock.
	SCL	ST	OD	I ² C™ clock.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output

TTL = TTL compatible input

HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output

ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels

XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F677 (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RB7	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RC0/AN4/C2IN+	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN4	AN	—	A/D Channel 4 input.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 non-inverting input.
RC1/AN5/C12IN1-	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN5	AN	—	A/D Channel 5 input.
	C12IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC2/AN6/C12IN2-	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN6	AN	—	A/D Channel 6 input.
	C12IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC3/AN7/C12IN3-	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN7	AN	—	A/D Channel 7 input.
	C12IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 inverting input.
RC4/C2OUT	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
RC5	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
RC6/AN8/SS	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN8	AN	—	A/D Channel 8 input.
	SS	ST	—	Slave Select input.
RC7/AN9/SDO	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN9	AN	—	A/D Channel 9 input.
	SDO	—	CMOS	SPI data output.
Vss	Vss	Power	—	Ground reference.
Vdd	Vdd	Power	—	Positive supply.

Legend:
 AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-3: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F685

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ ULPWU	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN0	AN	—	A/D Channel 0 input.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 positive input.
	ICSPDAT	TTL	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ULPWU	AN	—	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up input.
RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ICSPCLK	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN1	AN	—	A/D Channel 1 input.
	C12IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	VREF	AN	—	External Voltage Reference for A/D.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	ICSP™ clock.
RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT	RA2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN2	AN	—	A/D Channel 2 input.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	INT	ST	—	External interrupt pin.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
RA3/MCLR/VPP	RA3	TTL	—	General purpose input. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change.
	<u>MCLR</u>	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN3	AN	—	A/D Channel 3 input.
	<u>T1G</u>	ST	—	Timer1 gate input.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	Fosc/4 output.
RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKIN	ST	—	External clock input/RC oscillator connection.
RB4/AN10	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN10	AN	—	A/D Channel 10 input.
RB5/AN11	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN11	AN	—	A/D Channel 11 input.
RB6	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RB7	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
RC0/AN4/C2IN+	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN4	AN	—	A/D Channel 4 input.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 positive input.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-3: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F685 (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RC1/AN5/C12IN1-	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN5	AN	—	A/D Channel 5 input.
	C12IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
RC2/AN6/C12IN2-/P1D	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN6	AN	—	A/D Channel 6 input.
	C12IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	P1D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC3/AN7/C12IN3-/P1C	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN7	AN	—	A/D Channel 7 input.
	C12IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	P1C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC4/C2OUT/P1B	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
	P1B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC5/CCP1/P1A	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	CCP1	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare input.
	P1A	ST	CMOS	PWM output.
RC6/AN8	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN8	AN	—	A/D Channel 8 input.
RC7/AN9	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN9	AN	—	A/D Channel 9 input.
VSS	VSS	Power	—	Ground reference.
VDD	VDD	Power	—	Positive supply.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-4: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F687/PIC16F689

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ ULPWU	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN0	AN	—	A/D Channel 0 input.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 positive input.
	ICSPDAT	TTL	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ULPWU	AN	—	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up input.
RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ICSPCLK	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN1	AN	—	A/D Channel 1 input.
	C12IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	VREF	AN	—	External Voltage Reference for A/D.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	ICSP™ clock.
RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT	RA2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN2	AN	—	A/D Channel 2 input.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	INT	ST	—	External Interrupt.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
RA3/MCLR/VPP	RA3	TTL	—	General purpose input. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change.
	MCLR	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN3	AN	—	A/D Channel 3 input.
	T1G	ST	—	Timer1 gate input.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	Fosc/4 output.
RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKIN	ST	—	External clock input/RC oscillator connection.
RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN10	AN	—	A/D Channel 10 input.
	SDI	ST	—	SPI data input.
	SDA	ST	OD	I ² C™ data input/output.
RB5/AN11/RX/DT	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN11	AN	—	A/D Channel 11 input.
	RX	ST	—	EUSART asynchronous input.
	DT	ST	CMOS	EUSART synchronous data.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal
 OD = Open Drain

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-4: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F687/PIC16F689 (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RB6/SCK/SCL	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SCK	ST	CMOS	SPI clock.
	SCL	ST	OD	I ² C TM clock.
RB7/TX/CK	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	TX	—	CMOS	EUSART asynchronous output.
	CK	ST	CMOS	EUSART synchronous clock.
RC0/AN4/C2IN+	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN4	AN	—	A/D Channel 4 input.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 positive input.
RC1/AN5/C12IN1-	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN5	AN	—	A/D Channel 5 input.
	C12IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
RC2/AN6/C12IN2-	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN6	AN	—	A/D Channel 6 input.
	C12IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
RC3/AN7/C12IN3-	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN7	AN	—	A/D Channel 7 input.
	C12IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
RC4/C2OUT	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
RC5	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
RC6/AN8/SS	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN8	AN	—	A/D Channel 8 input.
	SS	ST	—	Slave Select input.
RC7/AN9/SDO	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN9	AN	—	A/D Channel 9 input.
	SDO	—	CMOS	SPI data output.
VSS	Vss	Power	—	Ground reference.
VDD	VDD	Power	—	Positive supply.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output

OD = Open Drain

TTL = TTL compatible input

ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels

HV = High Voltage

XTAL = Crystal

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-5: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F690

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ ULPWU	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN0	AN	—	A/D Channel 0 input.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 positive input.
	ICSPDAT	TTL	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ULPWU	AN	—	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up input.
RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ICSPCLK	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN1	AN	—	A/D Channel 1 input.
	C12IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	VREF	AN	—	External Voltage Reference for A/D.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	ICSP™ clock.
RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT	RA2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN2	AN	—	A/D Channel 2 input.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	INT	ST	—	External interrupt.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
RA3/MCLR/VPP	RA3	TTL	—	General purpose input. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change.
	<u>MCLR</u>	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN3	AN	—	A/D Channel 3 input.
	<u>T1G</u>	ST	—	Timer1 gate input.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	Fosc/4 output.
RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator.
	CLKIN	ST	—	External clock input/RC oscillator connection.
RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN10	AN	—	A/D Channel 10 input.
	SDI	ST	—	SPI data input.
	SDA	ST	OD	I ² C™ data input/output.
RB5/AN11/RX/DT	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	AN11	AN	—	A/D Channel 11 input.
	RX	ST	—	EUSART asynchronous input.
	DT	ST	CMOS	EUSART synchronous data.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal
 OD = Open Drain

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 1-5: PINOUT DESCRIPTION – PIC16F690 (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RB6/SCK/SCL	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SCK	ST	CMOS	SPI clock.
	SCL	ST	OD	I ² C TM clock.
RB7/TX/CK	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	TX	—	CMOS	EUSART asynchronous output.
	CK	ST	CMOS	EUSART synchronous clock.
RC0/AN4/C2IN+	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN4	AN	—	A/D Channel 4 input.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 positive input.
RC1/AN5/C12IN1-	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN5	AN	—	A/D Channel 5 input.
	C12IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
RC2/AN6/C12IN2-/P1D	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN6	AN	—	A/D Channel 6 input.
	C12IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	P1D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC3/AN7/C12IN3-/P1C	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN7	AN	—	A/D Channel 7 input.
	C12IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1 or C2 negative input.
	P1C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC4/C2OUT/P1B	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
	P1B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
RC5/CCP1/P1A	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	CCP1	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare input.
	P1A	ST	CMOS	PWM output.
RC6/AN8/SS	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN8	AN	—	A/D Channel 8 input.
	SS	ST	—	Slave Select input.
RC7/AN9/SDO	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN9	AN	—	A/D Channel 9 input.
	SDO	—	CMOS	SPI data output.
VSS	VSS	Power	—	Ground reference.
VDD	VDD	Power	—	Positive supply.

Legend:
 AN = Analog input or output
 TTL = TTL compatible input
 HV = High Voltage

CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
 ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
 XTAL = Crystal
 OD = Open Drain

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

2.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

2.1 Program Memory Organization

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 has a 13-bit program counter capable of addressing an 8K x 14 program memory space. Only the first 1K x 14 (0000h-03FFh) is physically implemented for the PIC16F631, the first 2K x 14 (0000h-07FFh) for the PIC16F677/PIC16F687, and the first 4K x 14 (0000h-0FFFh) for the PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690. Accessing a location above these boundaries will cause a wraparound. The Reset vector is at 0000h and the interrupt vector is at 0004h (see Figures 2-1 through 2-3).

FIGURE 2-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR THE PIC16F631

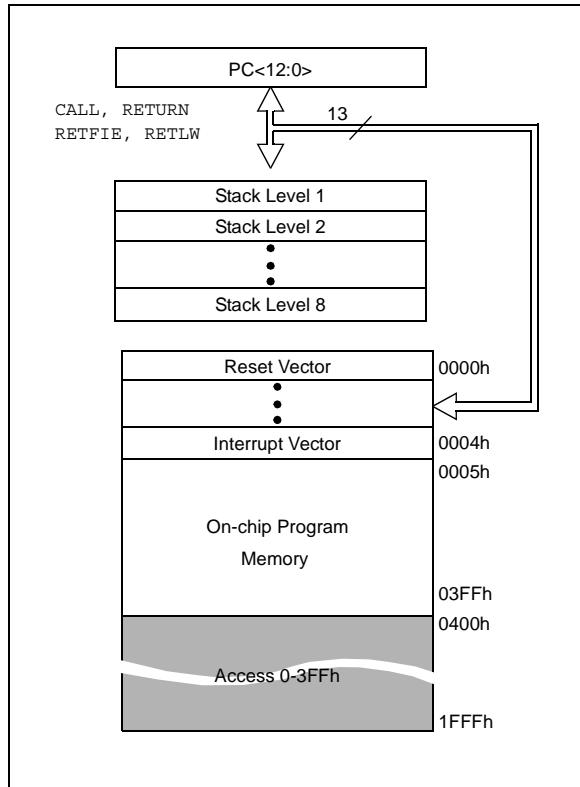
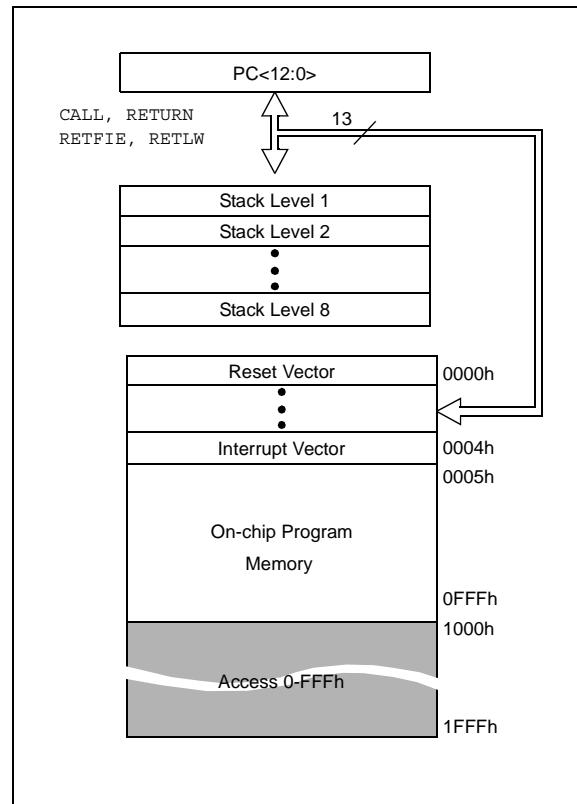
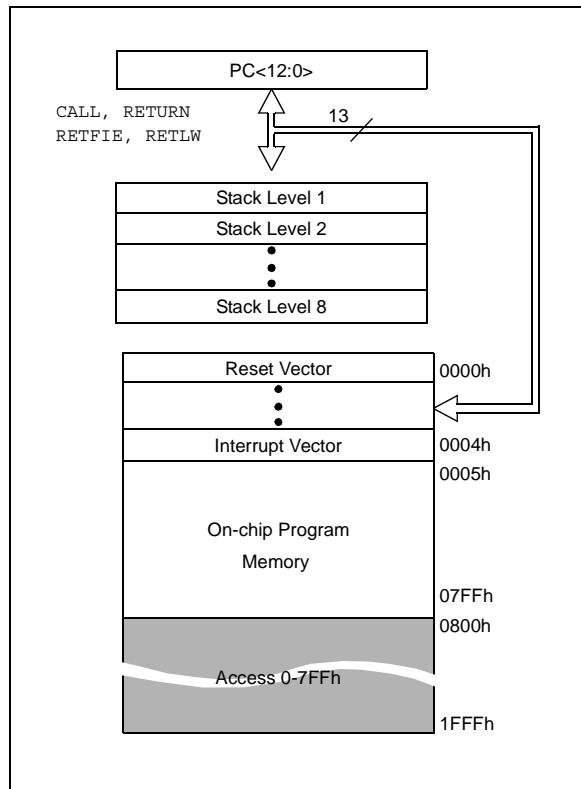


FIGURE 2-2: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR THE PIC16F685/689/690



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-3: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR THE PIC16F677/PIC16F687



2.2 Data Memory Organization

The data memory (see Figures 2-6 through 2-8) is partitioned into four banks which contain the General Purpose Registers (GPR) and the Special Function Registers (SFR). The Special Function Registers are located in the first 32 locations of each bank. The General Purpose Registers, implemented as static RAM, are located in the last 96 locations of each Bank. Register locations F0h-FFh in Bank 1, 170h-17Fh in Bank 2 and 1F0h-1FFh in Bank 3 point to addresses 70h-7Fh in Bank 0. The actual number of General Purpose Registers (GPR) in each Bank depends on the device. Details are shown in Figures 2-4 through 2-8. All other RAM is unimplemented and returns '0' when read. RP<1:0> of the STATUS register are the bank select bits:

<u>RP1</u>	<u>RP0</u>	
0	0	→ Bank 0 is selected
0	1	→ Bank 1 is selected
1	0	→ Bank 2 is selected
1	1	→ Bank 3 is selected

2.2.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file is organized as 128 x 8 in the PIC16F687 and 256 x 8 in the PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690. Each register is accessed, either directly or indirectly, through the File Select Register (FSR) (see **Section 2.4 “Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers”**).

2.2.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers are registers used by the CPU and peripheral functions for controlling the desired operation of the device (see Tables 2-1 through 2-4). These registers are static RAM.

The special registers can be classified into two sets: core and peripheral. The Special Function Registers associated with the “core” are described in this section. Registers related to the operation of peripheral features are described in the section of that peripheral feature.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-4: PIC16F631 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address
Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 80h	Indirect addr. (1) 100h	Indirect addr. (1) 180h
TMRO 01h	OPTION_REG 81h	TMR0 101h	OPTION_REG 181h
PCL 02h	PCL 82h	PCL 102h	PCL 182h
STATUS 03h	STATUS 83h	STATUS 103h	STATUS 183h
FSR 04h	FSR 84h	FSR 104h	FSR 184h
PORTA 05h	TRISA 85h	PORTA 105h	TRISA 185h
PORTB 06h	TRISB 86h	PORTB 106h	TRISB 186h
PORTC 07h	TRISC 87h	PORTC 107h	TRISC 187h
	88h	108h	188h
	89h	109h	189h
PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 8Ah	PCLATH 10Ah	PCLATH 18Ah
INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 8Bh	INTCON 10Bh	INTCON 18Bh
PIR1 0Ch	PIE1 8Ch	EEDAT 10Ch	EECON1 18Ch
PIR2 0Dh	PIE2 8Dh	EEADR 10Dh	EECON2 ⁽¹⁾ 18Dh
TMR1L 0Eh	PCON 8Eh		18Eh
TMR1H 0Fh	OSCCON 8Fh		18Fh
T1CON 10h	OSCTUNE 90h		190h
	91h		191h
	92h		192h
	93h		193h
	94h		194h
	WPUA 95h	WPUB 115h	195h
	IOCA 96h	IOCB 116h	196h
	WDTCON 97h		197h
	98h	VRCON 118h	198h
	99h	CM1CON0 119h	199h
	9Ah	CM2CON0 11Ah	19Ah
	9Bh	CM2CON1 11Bh	19Bh
	9Ch		19Ch
	9Dh		19Dh
	9Eh	ANSEL 11Ch	19Eh
	9Fh		19Fh
	A0h		1A0h
General Purpose Registers 40h			
64 Bytes			
Bank 0	Bank 1	Bank 2	Bank 3
	EFh	16Fh	1EFh
	F0h	accesses 70h-7Fh	1F0h
	FFh	17Fh	1FFh
		accesses 70h-7Fh	

 Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not a physical register.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-5: PIC16F677 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address
Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 80h	Indirect addr. (1) 100h	Indirect addr. (1) 180h
TMR0 01h	OPTION_REG 81h	TMR0 101h	OPTION_REG 181h
PCL 02h	PCL 82h	PCL 102h	PCL 182h
STATUS 03h	STATUS 83h	STATUS 103h	STATUS 183h
FSR 04h	FSR 84h	FSR 104h	FSR 184h
PORTA 05h	TRISA 85h	PORTA 105h	TRISA 185h
PORTB 06h	TRISB 86h	PORTB 106h	TRISB 186h
PORTC 07h	TRISC 87h	PORTC 107h	TRISC 187h
	88h		188h
	89h		189h
PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 8Ah	PCLATH 10Ah	PCLATH 18Ah
INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 8Bh	INTCON 10Bh	INTCON 18Bh
PIR1 0Ch	PIE1 8Ch	EEDAT 10Ch	EECON1 18Ch
PIR2 0Dh	PIE2 8Dh	EEADR 10Dh	EECON2 ⁽¹⁾ 18Dh
TMR1L 0Eh	PCON 8Eh		18Eh
TMR1H 0Fh	OSCCON 8Fh		18Fh
T1CON 10h	OSCTUNE 90h		190h
	91h		191h
	92h		192h
SSPBUF 13h	SSPADD ⁽²⁾ 93h		193h
SSPCON 14h	SSPSTAT 94h		194h
	WPUA 95h	WPUB 115h	195h
	IOCA 96h	IOCB 116h	196h
	WDTCON 97h		197h
	98h	VRCON 118h	198h
	99h	CM1CON0 119h	199h
	9Ah	CM2CON0 11Ah	19Ah
	9Bh	CM2CON1 11Bh	19Bh
	9Ch		19Ch
	9Dh		19Dh
ADRESH 1Eh	ADRESL 9Eh	ANSEL 11Eh	SRCON 19Eh
ADCN0 1Fh	ADCN1 9Fh	ANSELH 11Fh	
General Purpose Register 96 Bytes	General Purpose Register 32 Bytes	A0h	120h
	BFh		
	C0h		
	EFh		
	F0h		
	FFh		
	accesses 70h-7Fh	accesses 70h-7Fh	accesses 70h-7Fh
		16Fh	1EFh
		170h	1F0h
		17Fh	1FFh
Bank 0	Bank 1	Bank 2	Bank 3

■ Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not a physical register.

2: Address 93h also accesses the SSP Mask (SSPMASK) register under certain conditions.
See Registers 13-2 and 13-3 for more details.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-6: PIC16F685 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address
Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 80h	Indirect addr. (1) 100h	Indirect addr. (1) 180h
TMR0 01h	OPTION_REG 01h	TMR0 81h	TMR0 101h	OPTION_REG 181h
PCL 02h	PCL 02h	PCL 82h	PCL 102h	PCL 182h
STATUS 03h	STATUS 03h	STATUS 83h	STATUS 103h	STATUS 183h
FSR 04h	FSR 04h	FSR 84h	FSR 104h	FSR 184h
PORTA 05h	TRISA 05h	PORTA 85h	PORTA 105h	TRISA 185h
PORTB 06h	TRISB 06h	PORTB 86h	PORTB 106h	TRISB 186h
PORTC 07h	TRISC 07h	PORTC 87h	PORTC 107h	TRISC 187h
		88h		188h
		89h		189h
PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 8Ah	PCLATH 10Ah	PCLATH 18Ah
INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 8Bh	INTCON 10Bh	INTCON 18Bh
PIR1 0Ch	PIE1 0Ch	PIE1 8Ch	EEDAT 10Ch	EECON1 18Ch
PIR2 0Dh	PIE2 0Dh	PIE2 8Dh	EEADR 10Dh	EECON2 ⁽¹⁾ 18Dh
TMR1L 0Eh	PCON 0Eh	PCON 8Eh	EEDATH 10Eh	18Eh
TMR1H 0Fh	OSCCON 0Fh	OSCCON 8Fh	EEADRH 10Fh	18Fh
T1CON 10h	OSCTUNE 10h	OSCTUNE 90h		190h
TMR2 11h		91h		191h
T2CON 12h	PR2 12h	PR2 92h		192h
		93h		193h
		94h		194h
CCPR1L 15h	WPUA 15h	WPUA 95h	WPUB 115h	195h
CCPR1H 16h	IOCA 16h	IOCA 96h	IOCB 116h	196h
CCP1CON 17h	WDTCON 17h	WDTCON 97h		197h
		98h	VRCON 118h	198h
		99h	CM1CON0 119h	199h
		9Ah	CM2CON0 11Ah	19Ah
		9Bh	CM2CON1 11Bh	19Bh
		9Ch		19Ch
		9Dh		19Dh
PWM1CON 1Ch		9Eh	ANSEL 11Eh	19Eh
ECCPAS 1Dh		9Fh	ANSELH 11Fh	19Fh
ADRESH 1Eh	ADRESL 1Eh			
ADCNO 1Fh	ADCON1 1Fh			
		A0h		1A0h
General Purpose Register 96 Bytes	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes		General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	
		EFh		
	accesses 70h-7Fh	F0h	accesses 70h-7Fh	16Fh
		FFh		170h
				17Fh
Bank 0	Bank 1		Bank 2	Bank 3

■ Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not a physical register.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-7: PIC16F687/PIC16F689 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address
Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 80h	Indirect addr. (1) 100h	Indirect addr. (1) 180h
TMR0 01h	OPTION_REG 01h	TMRO 81h	TMRO 101h	OPTION_REG 181h
PCL 02h	PCL 02h	PCL 82h	PCL 102h	PCL 182h
STATUS 03h	STATUS 03h	STATUS 83h	STATUS 103h	STATUS 183h
FSR 04h	FSR 04h	FSR 84h	FSR 104h	FSR 184h
PORTA 05h	TRISA 05h	PORTA 85h	PORTA 105h	TRISA 185h
PORTB 06h	TRISB 06h	PORTB 86h	PORTB 106h	TRISB 186h
PORTC 07h	TRISC 07h	PORTC 87h	PORTC 107h	TRISC 187h
08h		88h	108h	188h
09h		89h	109h	189h
PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 8Ah	PCLATH 10Ah	PCLATH 18Ah
INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 8Bh	INTCON 10Bh	INTCON 18Bh
PIR1 0Ch	PIE1 0Ch	EEDAT 8Ch	EEDAT 10Ch	EECON1 18Ch
PIR2 0Dh	PIE2 0Dh	EEADR 8Dh	EEADR 10Dh	EECON2 ⁽¹⁾ 18Dh
TMR1L 0Eh	PCON 0Eh	EEDATH ⁽³⁾ 8Eh	EEDATH ⁽³⁾ 10Eh	18Eh
TMR1H 0Fh	OSCCON 0Fh	EEADRH ⁽³⁾ 8Fh	EEADRH ⁽³⁾ 10Fh	18Fh
T1CON 10h	OSCTUNE 10h		110h	190h
11h		91h	111h	191h
12h		92h	112h	192h
SSPBUF 13h	SSPADD ⁽²⁾ 13h		113h	193h
SSPCON 14h	SSPSTAT 14h		114h	194h
15h	WPUA 15h	WPUB 95h	115h	195h
16h	IOCA 16h	IOCB 96h	116h	196h
17h	WDTCON 17h		117h	197h
RCSTA 18h	TXSTA 18h	VRCON 98h	118h	198h
TXREG 19h	SPBRG 19h	CM1CON0 99h	119h	199h
RCREG 1Ah	SPBRGH 1Ah	CM2CON0 9Ah	11Ah	19Ah
1Bh	BAUDCTL 1Bh	CM2CON1 9Bh	11Bh	19Bh
1Ch			11Ch	19Ch
1Dh			11Dh	19Dh
ADRESH 1Eh	ADRESL 1Eh	ANSEL 9Eh	11Eh	SRCON 19Eh
ADC0N0 1Fh	ADC0N1 1Fh	ANSELH 9Fh	11Fh	19Fh
General Purpose Register 96 Bytes 7Fh	General Purpose Register 32 Bytes BFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes (PIC16F689 only) C0h	120h	1A0h
	48 Bytes (PIC16F689 only) EFh			
	accesses 70h-7Fh FFh	accesses 70h-7Fh F0h	170h 17Fh	accesses 70h-7Fh 1F0h 1FFh
Bank 0	Bank 1	Bank 2	Bank 3	

 Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not a physical register.

2: Address 93h also accesses the SSP Mask (SSPMSK) register under certain conditions.
See Registers 13-2 and 13-3 for more details.

3: PIC16F689 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-8: PIC16F690 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

File Address	File Address	File Address	File Address
Indirect addr. (1) 00h	Indirect addr. (1) 80h	Indirect addr. (1) 100h	Indirect addr. (1) 180h
TMR0 01h	OPTION_REG 81h	TMR0 101h	OPTION_REG 181h
PCL 02h	PCL 82h	PCL 102h	PCL 182h
STATUS 03h	STATUS 83h	STATUS 103h	STATUS 183h
FSR 04h	FSR 84h	FSR 104h	FSR 184h
PORTA 05h	TRISA 85h	PORTA 105h	TRISA 185h
PORTB 06h	TRISB 86h	PORTB 106h	TRISB 186h
PORTC 07h	TRISC 87h	PORTC 107h	TRISC 187h
	88h		188h
	89h		189h
PCLATH 0Ah	PCLATH 8Ah	PCLATH 10Ah	PCLATH 18Ah
INTCON 0Bh	INTCON 8Bh	INTCON 10Bh	INTCON 18Bh
PIR1 0Ch	PIE1 8Ch	EEDAT 10Ch	EECON1 18Ch
PIR2 0Dh	PIE2 8Dh	EEADR 10Dh	EECON2 ⁽¹⁾ 18Dh
TMR1L 0Eh	PCON 8Eh	EEDATH 10Eh	
TMR1H 0Fh	OSCCON 8Fh	EEADRH 10Fh	
T1CON 10h	OSCTUNE 90h		190h
TMR2 11h	91h		191h
T2CON 12h	PR2 92h		192h
SSPBUF 13h	SSPADD ⁽²⁾ 93h		193h
SSPCON 14h	SSPSTAT 94h		194h
CCPR1L 15h	WPUA 95h	WPUB 115h	195h
CCPR1H 16h	IOCA 96h	IOCB 116h	196h
CCP1CON 17h	WDTCON 97h		197h
RCSTA 18h	TXSTA 98h	VRCON 118h	198h
TXREG 19h	SPBRG 99h	CM1CON0 119h	199h
RCREG 1Ah	SPBRGH 9Ah	CM2CON0 11Ah	19Ah
	BAUDCTL 9Bh	CM2CON1 11Bh	19Bh
PWM1CON 1Bh			19Ch
ECCPAS 1Ch			11Dh
ADRESH 1Dh			PSTRCON 19Dh
ADCON0 1Eh	ADRESL 9Ch		SRCON 19Eh
			19Fh
	ADCON1 9Dh		1A0h
General Purpose Register 96 Bytes	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	
	EFh	16Fh	
	F0h	170h	
	FFh	17Fh	
Bank 0	Bank 1	Bank 2	Bank 3

■ Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not a physical register.

2: Address 93h also accesses the SSP Mask (SSPMSK) register under certain conditions.

See Registers 13-2 and 13-3 for more details.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 2-1: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 0

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Page
Bank 0											
00h	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)							xxxxx xxxx	44,201	
01h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register							xxxxx xxxx	81,201	
02h	PCL	Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte							0000 0000	44,201	
03h	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	TO	PD	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	36,201
04h	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer							xxxxx xxxx	44,201	
05h	PORTA ⁽⁷⁾	—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--xx xxxx	59,201
06h	PORTB ⁽⁷⁾	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	—	—	—	—	xxxxx ----	69,201
07h	PORTC ⁽⁷⁾	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxxx xxxx	76,201
08h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
09h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
0Ah	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for upper 5 bits of Program Counter				---0 0000	44,201	
0Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF ⁽¹⁾	0000 000x	38,201
0Ch	PIR1	—	ADIF ⁽⁴⁾	RCIF ⁽²⁾	TXIF ⁽²⁾	SSPIF ⁽⁵⁾	CCP1IF ⁽³⁾	TMR2IF ⁽³⁾	TMR1IF	-000 0000	41,201
0Dh	PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	42,201
0Eh	TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register							xxxxx xxxx	86,201	
0Fh	TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register							xxxxx xxxx	86,201	
10h	T1CON	T1GINV	TMR1GE	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0000 0000	88,201
11h	TMR2 ⁽³⁾	Timer2 Module Register							0000 0000	91,201	
12h	T2CON ⁽³⁾	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	92,201
13h	SSPBUF ⁽⁵⁾	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register							xxxxx xxxx	178,201	
14h	SSPCON ^(5, 6)	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	177,201
15h	CCPR1L ⁽³⁾	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)							xxxxx xxxx	128,201	
16h	CCPR1H ⁽³⁾	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)							xxxxx xxxx	128,201	
17h	CCP1CON ⁽³⁾	P1M1	P1M0	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	0000 0000	127,201
18h	RCSTA ⁽²⁾	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	159,201
19h	TXREG ⁽²⁾	EUSART Transmit Data Register							0000 0000	151	
1Ah	RCREG ⁽²⁾	EUSART Receive Data Register							0000 0000	154	
1Bh	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
1Ch	PWM1CON ⁽³⁾	PRSEN	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	PDC3	PDC2	PDC1	PDC0	0000 0000	144,201
1Dh	ECCPAS ⁽³⁾	ECCPASE	ECCPAS2	ECCPAS1	ECCPAS0	PSSAC1	PSSAC0	PSSBD1	PSSBD0	0000 0000	141,201
1Eh	ADRESH ⁽⁴⁾	A/D Result Register High Byte							xxxxx xxxx	115,201	
1Fh	ADCON0 ⁽⁴⁾	ADFM	VCFG	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/DONE	ADON	0000 0000	113,201

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

Note 1: MCLR and WDT Reset do not affect the previous value data latch. The RABIF bit will be cleared upon Reset but will set again if the mismatch exists.

2: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

4: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

5: PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

6: When SSPCON register bits SPPM<3:0> = 1001, any reads or writes to the SSPADD SFR address are accessed through the SSPMSK register. See Registers 13-2 and 13-3 for more detail.

7: Port pins with analog functions controlled by the ANSEL and ANSELH registers will read '0' immediately after a Reset even though the data latches are either undefined (POR) or unchanged (other Resets).

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 2-2: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 1

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Page
Bank 1											
80h	INDF									xxxx xxxx	44,201
81h	OPTION_REG	RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	37,201
82h	PCL									0000 0000	44,201
83h	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	TO	PD	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	36,201
84h	FSR									xxxx xxxx	44,201
85h	TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	59,201
86h	TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	70,202
87h	TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	76,201
88h	—									—	—
89h	—									—	—
8Ah	PCLATH	—	—	—						--0 0000	44,201
8Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TOIE	INTE	RABIE	TOIF	INTF	RABIF ⁽¹⁾	0000 000x	38,201
8Ch	PIE1	—	ADIE ⁽⁴⁾	RCIE ⁽²⁾	TXIE ⁽²⁾	SSPIE ⁽⁵⁾	CCP1IE ⁽³⁾	TMR2IE ⁽³⁾	TMR1IE	-000 0000	39,202
8Dh	PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	40,202
8Eh	PCON	—	—	ULPWUE	SBOREN	—	—	POR	BOR	--01 --qq	43,202
8Fh	OSCCON	—	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS	HTS	LTS	SCS	-110 q000	48,202
90h	OSCTUNE	—	—	—	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0	--0 0000	52,202
91h	—									—	—
92h	PR2 ⁽³⁾									1111 1111	91,202
93h	SSPADD ^(5, 7)									0000 0000	184,202
93h	SSPMSK ^(5, 7)	MSK7	MSK6	MSK5	MSK4	MSK3	MSK2	MSK1	MSK0	1111 1111	187,202
94h	SSPSTAT ⁽⁵⁾	SMP	CKE	D/A	P	S	R/W	UA	BF	0000 0000	176,202
95h	WPUA ⁽⁶⁾	—	—	WPUA5	WPUA4	—	WPUA2	WPUA1	WPUA0	--11 -111	62,202
96h	IOCA	—	—	IOCA5	IOCA4	IOCA3	IOCA2	IOCA1	IOCA0	--00 0000	62,202
97h	WDTCON	—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN	--0 1000	209,202
98h	TXSTA ⁽²⁾	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	158,202
99h	SPBRG ⁽²⁾	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	161,202
9Ah	SPBRGH ⁽²⁾	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	161,202
9Bh	BAUDCTL ⁽²⁾	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	160,202
9Ch	—									—	—
9Dh	—									—	—
9Eh	ADRESL ⁽⁴⁾									xxxx xxxx	115,202
9Fh	ADC0N1 ⁽⁴⁾	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	—	—	—	—	-000 ----	114,202

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

Note 1: MCLR and WDT Reset do not affect the previous value data latch. The RABIF bit will be cleared upon Reset but will set again if the mismatch exists.

2: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

4: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

5: PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

6: RA3 pull-up is enabled when pin is configured as MCLR in Configuration Word.

7: Accessible only when SSPCON register bits SPPM<3:0> = 1001.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 2-3: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 2

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Page
Bank 2											
100h	INDF	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register)							xxxx xxxx	44,201	
101h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register							xxxx xxxx	81,201	
102h	PCL	Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte							0000 0000	44,201	
103h	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	TO	PD	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	36,201
104h	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer							xxxx xxxx	44,201	
105h	PORTA ⁽⁴⁾	—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--xx xxxx	59,201
106h	PORTB ⁽⁴⁾	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	—	—	—	—	xxxx ----	69,201
107h	PORTC ⁽⁴⁾	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	76,201
108h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
109h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
10Ah	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter				---0 0000	44,201	
10Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF ⁽¹⁾	0000 000x	38,201
10Ch	EEDAT	EEDAT7	EEDAT6	EEDAT5	EEDAT4	EEDAT3	EEDAT2	EEDAT1	EEDATO	0000 0000	120,202
10Dh	EEADR	EEADR7 ⁽³⁾	EEADR6	EEADR5	EEADR4	EEADR3	EEADR2	EEADR1	EEADRO	0000 0000	120,202
10Eh	EEDATH ⁽²⁾	—	—	EEDATH5	EEDATH4	EEDATH3	EEDATH2	EEDATH1	EEDATH0	--00 0000	120,202
10Fh	EEADRH ⁽²⁾	—	—	—	—	EEDADRH3	EEDADRH2	EEDADRH1	EEDADRH0	---- 0000	120,202
110h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
111h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
112h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
113h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
114h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
115h	WPUB	WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	70,202
116h	IOCB	IOCB7	IOCB6	IOCB5	IOCB4	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	70,202
117h	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
118h	VRCON	C1VREN	C2VREN	VRR	VP6EN	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	106,202
119h	CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1R	C1CH1	C1CH0	0000 -000	98,202
11Ah	CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2R	C2CH1	C2CH0	0000 -000	99,202
11Bh	CM2CON1	MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC	00-- --10	101,202
11Ch	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
11Dh	—	Unimplemented							—	—	
11Eh	ANSEL	ANS7	ANS6	ANS5	ANS4	ANS3 ⁽³⁾	ANS2 ⁽³⁾	ANS1	ANS0	1111 1111	61,202
11Fh	ANSELH ⁽³⁾	—	—	—	—	ANS11	ANS10	ANS9	ANS8	---- 1111	115,202

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

Note 1: MCLR and WDT Reset does not affect the previous value data latch. The RABIF bit will be cleared upon Reset but will set again if the mismatch exists.

2: PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

4: Port pins with analog functions controlled by the ANSEL and ANSELH registers will read '0' immediately after a Reset even though the data latches are either undefined (POR) or unchanged (other Resets).

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 2-4: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 3

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Page
Bank 3											
180h	INDF									xxxx xxxx	44,201
181h	OPTION_REG	RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	37,201
182h	PCL	Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	44,201
183h	STATUS	IRP	RP1	RP0	TO	PD	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	36,201
184h	FSR	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer								xxxx xxxx	44,201
185h	TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	59,201
186h	TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	70,202
187h	TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	76,202
188h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
189h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
18Ah	PCLATH	—	—	—	Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter				---0 0000	44,201	
18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF ⁽¹⁾	0000 000x	38,201
18Ch	ECON1	EEPGD ⁽²⁾	—	—	—	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	x--- x000	121,202
18Dh	ECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								---- ----	119,202
18Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
18Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
190h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
191h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
192h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
193h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
194h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
195h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
196h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
197h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
198h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
199h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
19Ah	—	Unimplemented								—	—
19Bh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
19Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
19Dh	PSTRCON ⁽²⁾	—	—	—	STRSYNC	STRD	STRC	STRB	STRA	---0 0001	145,202
19Eh	SRCON	SR1	SR0	C1SEN	C2REN	PULSS	PULSR	—	—	0000 00--	103,202
19Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented
Note 1: MCLR and WDT Reset does not affect the previous value data latch. The RABIF bit will be cleared upon Reset but will set again if the mismatch exists.

2: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

2.2.2.1 STATUS Register

The STATUS register, shown in Register 2-1, contains:

- the arithmetic status of the ALU
- the Reset status
- the bank select bits for data memory (GPR and SFR)

The STATUS register can be the destination for any instruction, like any other register. If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC or C bits, then the write to these three bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Furthermore, the TO and PD bits are not writable. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, CLRF STATUS, will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the STATUS register as '000u uuu' (where u = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only BCF, BSF, SWAPF and MOVWF instructions are used to alter the STATUS register, because these instructions do not affect any Status bits. For other instructions not affecting any Status bits, see **Section 15.0 “Instruction Set Summary”**

Note 1: The C and DC bits operate as a Borrow and Digit Borrow out bit, respectively, in subtraction. See the SUBLW and SUBWF instructions for examples.

REGISTER 2-1: STATUS: STATUS REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-1	R-1	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
IRP	RP1	RP0	TO	PD	Z	DC ⁽¹⁾	C ⁽¹⁾
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **IRP:** Register Bank Select bit (used for indirect addressing)

1 = Bank 2, 3 (100h-1FFh)

0 = Bank 0, 1 (00h-FFh)

bit 6-5 **RP<1:0>:** Register Bank Select bits (used for direct addressing)

00 = Bank 0 (00h-7Fh)

01 = Bank 1 (80h-FFh)

10 = Bank 2 (100h-17Fh)

11 = Bank 3 (180h-1FFh)

bit 4 **TO:** Time-out bit

1 = After power-up, CLRWDT instruction or SLEEP instruction

0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 3 **PD:** Power-down bit

1 = After power-up or by the CLRWDT instruction

0 = By execution of the SLEEP instruction

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit

1 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero

0 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit Carry/Borrow bit (ADDWF, ADDLW, SUBLW, SUBWF instructions)⁽¹⁾

1 = A carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result occurred

0 = No carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result

bit 0 **C:** Carry/Borrow bit⁽¹⁾ (ADDWF, ADDLW, SUBLW, SUBWF instructions)⁽¹⁾

1 = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

0 = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note 1: For Borrow, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (RRF, RLF) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high-order or low-order bit of the source register.

2.2.2.2 OPTION Register

The OPTION register, shown in Register 2-2, is a readable and writable register, which contains various control bits to configure:

- Timer0/WDT prescaler
- External RA2/INT interrupt
- Timer0
- Weak pull-ups on PORTA/PORPB

Note: To achieve a 1:1 prescaler assignment for Timer0, assign the prescaler to the WDT by setting PSA bit of the OPTION register to '1'. See **Section 6.3 "Timer1 Prescaler"**.

REGISTER 2-2: OPTION_REG: OPTION REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
bit 7				bit 0			

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- | | |
|---------|--|
| bit 7 | RABPU: PORTA/PORPB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = PORTA/PORPB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTA/PORPB pull-ups are enabled by individual PORT latch values |
| bit 6 | INTEDG: Interrupt Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge of RA2/INT pin
0 = Interrupt on falling edge of RA2/INT pin |
| bit 5 | T0CS: Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on RA2/T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (Fosc/4) |
| bit 4 | T0SE: Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on RA2/T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on RA2/T0CKI pin |
| bit 3 | PSA: Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT
0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module |
| bit 2-0 | PS<2:0>: Prescaler Rate Select bits |

Bit Value	Timer0 Rate	WDT Rate
000	1 : 2	1 : 1
001	1 : 4	1 : 2
010	1 : 8	1 : 4
011	1 : 16	1 : 8
100	1 : 32	1 : 16
101	1 : 64	1 : 32
110	1 : 128	1 : 64
111	1 : 256	1 : 128

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

2.2.2.3 INTCON Register

The INTCON register, shown in Register 2-3, is a readable and writable register, which contains the various enable and flag bits for TMR0 register overflow, PORTA change and external RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT pin interrupts.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-3: INTCON: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE	PEIE	TOIE	INTE	RABIE ^(1,3)	TOIF ⁽²⁾	INTF	RABIF
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit
-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit
'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
'0' = Bit is cleared
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	GIE: Global Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts 0 = Disables all interrupts
bit 6	PEIE: Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts 0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts
bit 5	TOIE: Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the Timer0 interrupt 0 = Disables the Timer0 interrupt
bit 4	INTE: RA2/INT External Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the RA2/INT external interrupt 0 = Disables the RA2/INT external interrupt
bit 3	RABIE: PORTA/PORPB Change Interrupt Enable bit ^(1,3) 1 = Enables the PORTA/PORPB change interrupt 0 = Disables the PORTA/PORPB change interrupt
bit 2	TOIF: Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit ⁽²⁾ 1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software) 0 = TMR0 register did not overflow
bit 1	INTF: RA2/INT External Interrupt Flag bit 1 = The RA2/INT external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software) 0 = The RA2/INT external interrupt did not occur
bit 0	RABIF: PORTA/PORPB Change Interrupt Flag bit 1 = When at least one of the PORTA or PORPB general purpose I/O pins changed state (must be cleared in software) 0 = None of the PORTA or PORPB general purpose I/O pins have changed state

- Note 1:** IOCA or IOCB register must also be enabled.
2: TOIF bit is set when Timer0 rolls over. Timer0 is unchanged on Reset and should be initialized before clearing TOIF bit.
3: Includes ULPWU interrupt.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

2.2.2.4 PIE1 Register

The PIE1 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 2-4.

Note: Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 2-4: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	ADIE ⁽⁵⁾	RCIE ⁽³⁾	TXIE ⁽³⁾	SSPIE ⁽⁴⁾	CCP1IE ⁽²⁾	TMR2IE ⁽¹⁾	TMR1IE	
bit 7	bit 0							

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 6 **ADIE:** A/D Converter (ADC) Interrupt Enable bit⁽⁵⁾
1 = Enables the ADC interrupt
0 = Disables the ADC interrupt
- bit 5 **RCIE:** EUSART Receive Interrupt Enable bit⁽³⁾
1 = Enables the EUSART receive interrupt
0 = Disables the EUSART receive interrupt
- bit 4 **TXIE:** EUSART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit⁽⁵⁾
1 = Enables the EUSART transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the EUSART transmit interrupt
- bit 3 **SSPIE:** Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt Enable bit⁽⁴⁾
1 = Enables the SSP interrupt
0 = Disables the SSP interrupt
- bit 2 **CCP1IE:** CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit⁽²⁾
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt
- bit 1 **TMR2IE:** Timer2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit⁽¹⁾
1 = Enables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt
- bit 0 **TMR1IE:** Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Timer1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer1 overflow interrupt

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

2: PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

4: PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

5: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

2.2.2.5 PIE2 Register

The PIE2 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 2-5.

Note: Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 2-5: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	—	—	—	—
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **OSFIE:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Enables oscillator fail interrupt

0 = Disables oscillator fail interrupt

bit 6 **C2IE:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Enables Comparator C2 interrupt

0 = Disables Comparator C2 interrupt

bit 5 **C1IE:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Enables Comparator C1 interrupt

0 = Disables Comparator C1 interrupt

bit 4 **EEIE:** EE Write Operation Interrupt Enable bit

1 = Enables write operation interrupt

0 = Disables write operation interrupt

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

2.2.2.6 PIR1 Register

The PIR1 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 2-6.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-6: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	ADIF ⁽⁵⁾	RCIF ⁽³⁾	TXIF ⁽³⁾	SSPIF ⁽⁴⁾	CCP1IF ⁽²⁾	TMR2IF ⁽¹⁾	TMR1IF
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **ADIF:** A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit⁽⁵⁾

 1 = A/D conversion complete (must be cleared in software)
 0 = A/D conversion has not completed or has not been started

bit 5 **RCIF:** EUSART Receive Interrupt Flag bit⁽³⁾

 1 = The EUSART receive buffer is full (cleared by reading RCREG)
 0 = The EUSART receive buffer is not full

bit 4 **TXIF:** EUSART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit⁽³⁾

 1 = The EUSART transmit buffer is empty (cleared by writing to TXREG)
 0 = The EUSART transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **SSPIF:** Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt Flag bit⁽⁴⁾

 1 = The Transmission/Reception is complete (must be cleared in software)
 0 = Waiting to Transmit/Receive

bit 2 **CCP1IF:** CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit⁽²⁾

Capture mode:

 1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
 0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred

Compare mode:

 1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
 0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred

PWM mode:

Unused in this mode

bit 1 **TMR2IF:** Timer2 to PR2 Interrupt Flag bit⁽¹⁾

 1 = A Timer2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)
 0 = No Timer2 to PR2 match occurred

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit

 1 = The TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
 0 = The TMR1 register did not overflow

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

2: PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

3: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

4: PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

5: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

2.2.2.7 PIR2 Register

The PIR2 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 2-7.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 2-7: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 2

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	—	—	—	—
bit 7							

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **OSFIF:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Flag bit
1 = System oscillator failed, clock input has changed to INTOSC (must be cleared in software)
0 = System clock operating
- bit 6 **C2IF:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Comparator output (C2OUT bit) has changed (must be cleared in software)
0 = Comparator output (C2OUT bit) has not changed
- bit 5 **C1IF:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Comparator output (C1OUT bit) has changed (must be cleared in software)
0 = Comparator output (C1OUT bit) has not changed
- bit 4 **EEIF:** EE Write Operation Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Write operation completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = Write operation has not completed or has not started
- bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

2.2.2.8 PCON Register

The Power Control (PCON) register (see Register 2-8) contains flag bits to differentiate between a:

- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Watchdog Timer Reset (WDT)
- External MCLR Reset

The PCON register also controls the Ultra Low-Power Wake-up and software enable of the BOR.

REGISTER 2-8: PCON: POWER CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
—	—	ULPWUE	SBOREN ⁽¹⁾	—	—	POR	BOR
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

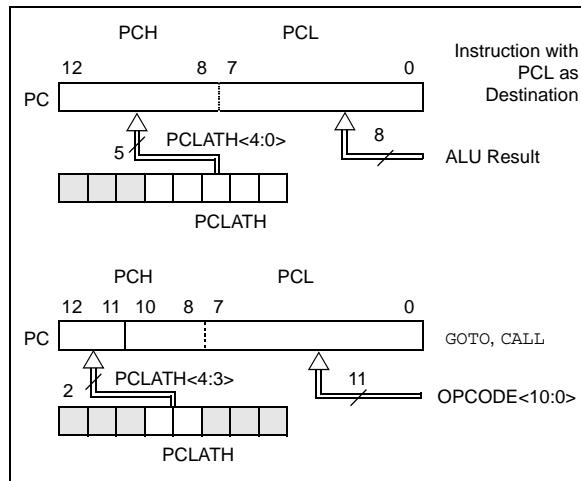
bit 7-6	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 5	ULPWUE: Ultra Low-Power Wake-up Enable bit 1 = Ultra Low-Power Wake-up enabled 0 = Ultra Low-Power Wake-up disabled
bit 4	SBOREN: Software BOR Enable bit ⁽¹⁾ 1 = BOR enabled 0 = BOR disabled
bit 3-2	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 1	POR: Power-on Reset Status bit 1 = No Power-on Reset occurred 0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)
bit 0	BOR: Brown-out Reset Status bit 1 = No Brown-out Reset occurred 0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Note 1: BOREN<1:0> = 01 in the Configuration Word register for this bit to control the BOR.

2.3 PCL and PCLATH

The Program Counter (PC) is 13 bits wide. The low byte comes from the PCL register, which is a readable and writable register. The high byte (PC<12:8>) is not directly readable or writable and comes from PCLATH. On any Reset, the PC is cleared. Figure 2-9 shows the two situations for the loading of the PC. The upper example in Figure 2-9 shows how the PC is loaded on a write to PCL (PCLATH<4:0> → PCH). The lower example in Figure 2-9 shows how the PC is loaded during a CALL or GOTO instruction (PCLATH<4:3> → PCH).

FIGURE 2-9: LOADING OF PC IN DIFFERENT SITUATIONS



2.3.1 MODIFYING PCL

Executing any instruction with the PCL register as the destination simultaneously causes the Program Counter PC<12:8> bits (PCH) to be replaced by the contents of the PCLATH register. This allows the entire contents of the program counter to be changed by writing the desired upper 5 bits to the PCLATH register. When the lower 8 bits are written to the PCL register, all 13 bits of the program counter will change to the values contained in the PCLATH register and those being written to the PCL register.

A computed GOTO is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (ADDWF PCL). Care should be exercised when jumping into a look-up table or program branch table (computed GOTO) by modifying the PCL register. Assuming that PCLATH is set to the table start address, if the table length is greater than 255 instructions or if the lower 8 bits of the memory address rolls over from 0xFF to 0x00 in the middle of the table, then PCLATH must be incremented for each address rollover that occurs between the table beginning and the target location within the table.

For more information refer to Application Note AN556, "Implementing a Table Read" (DS00556).

2.3.2 STACK

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 devices have an 8-level x 13-bit wide hardware stack (see Figures 2-2 and 2-3). The stack space is not part of either program or data space and the Stack Pointer is not readable or writable. The PC is PUSHed onto the stack when a CALL instruction is executed or an interrupt causes a branch. The stack is POPped in the event of a RETURN, RETLW or a RETFIE instruction execution. PCLATH is not affected by a PUSH or POP operation.

The stack operates as a circular buffer. This means that after the stack has been PUSHed eight times, the ninth push overwrites the value that was stored from the first push. The tenth push overwrites the second push (and so on).

- Note 1:** There are no Status bits to indicate stack overflow or stack underflow conditions.
- 2:** There are no instructions/mnemonics called PUSH or POP. These are actions that occur from the execution of the CALL, RETURN, RETLW and RETFIE instructions or the vectoring to an interrupt address.

2.4 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

The INDF register is not a physical register. Addressing the INDF register will cause indirect addressing.

Indirect addressing is possible by using the INDF register. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses data pointed to by the File Select Register (FSR). Reading INDF itself indirectly will produce 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly results in a no operation (although Status bits may be affected). An effective 9-bit address is obtained by concatenating the 8-bit FSR and the IRP bit of the STATUS register, as shown in Figure 2-10.

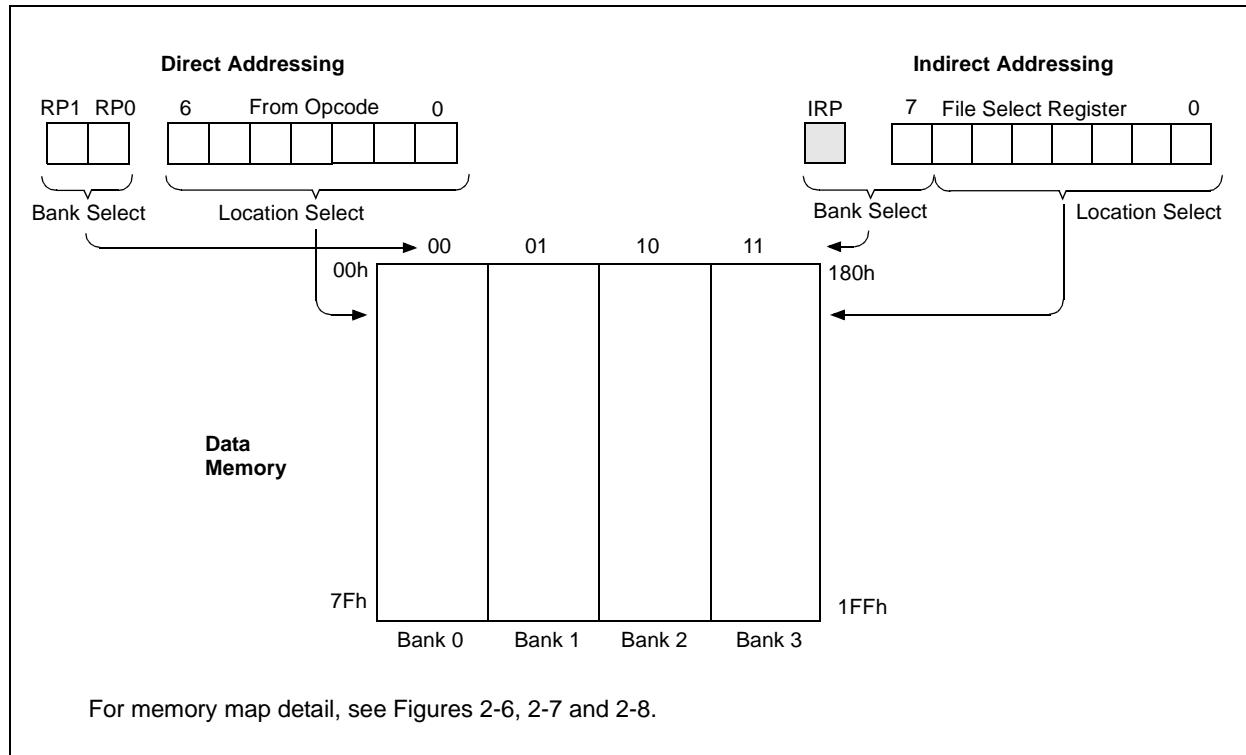
A simple program to clear RAM location 20h-2Fh using indirect addressing is shown in Example 2-1.

EXAMPLE 2-1: INDIRECT ADDRESSING

MOVWF	0x20	; initialize pointer	
MOVWF	FSR	;to RAM	
NEXT	CLRF	INDF	;clear INDF register
	INCF	FSR	;inc pointer
	BTFS	FSR, 4	;all done?
	GOTO	NEXT	;no clear next
CONTINUE			;yes continue

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 2-10: DIRECT/INDIRECT ADDRESSING PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

3.0 OSCILLATOR MODULE (WITH FAIL-SAFE CLOCK MONITOR)

3.1 Overview

The Oscillator module has a wide variety of clock sources and selection features that allow it to be used in a wide range of applications while maximizing performance and minimizing power consumption. Figure 3-1 illustrates a block diagram of the Oscillator module.

Clock sources can be configured from external oscillators, quartz crystal resonators, ceramic resonators and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) circuits. In addition, the system clock source can be configured from one of two internal oscillators, with a choice of speeds selectable via software. Additional clock features include:

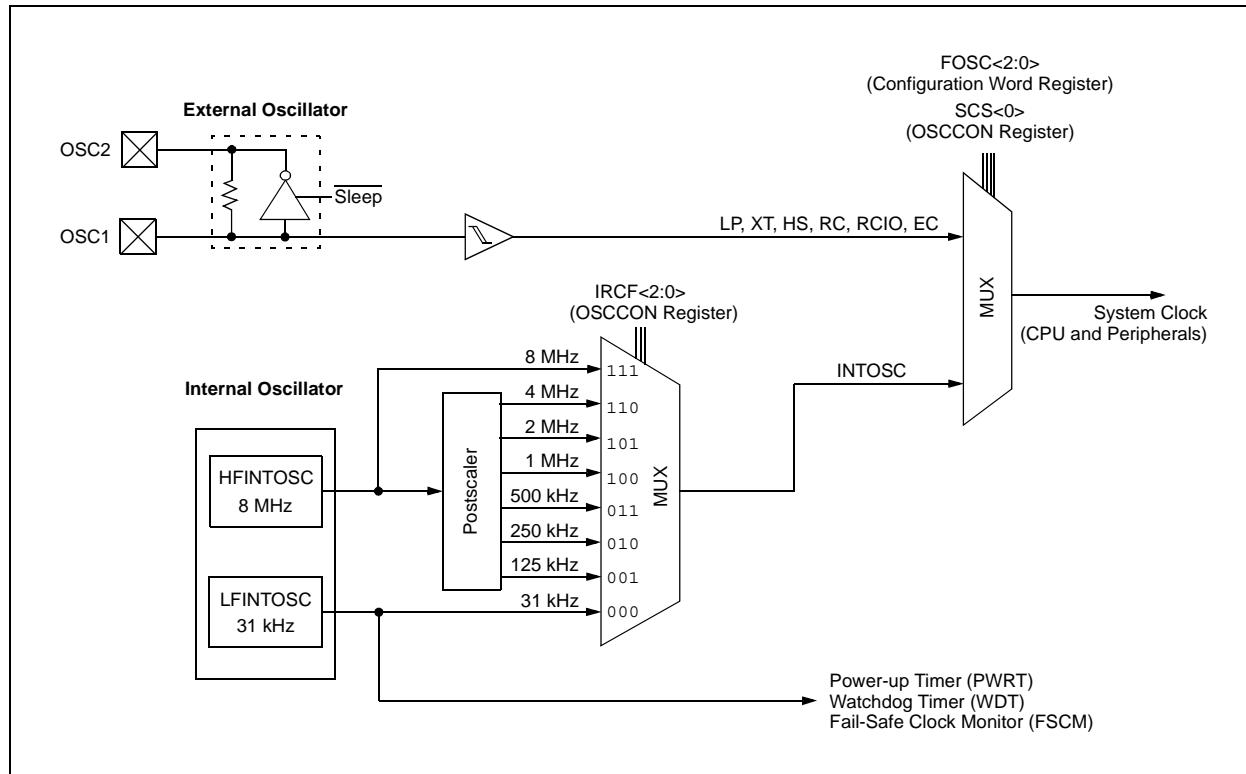
- Selectable system clock source between external or internal via software.
- Two-Speed Start-up mode, which minimizes latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution.
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) designed to detect a failure of the external clock source (LP, XT, HS, EC or RC modes) and switch automatically to the internal oscillator.

The Oscillator module can be configured in one of eight clock modes.

1. EC – External clock with I/O on OSC2/CLKOUT.
2. LP – 32 kHz Low-Power Crystal mode.
3. XT – Medium Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator Oscillator mode.
4. HS – High Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator mode.
5. RC – External Resistor-Capacitor (RC) with Fosc/4 output on OSC2/CLKOUT.
6. RCIO – External Resistor-Capacitor (RC) with I/O on OSC2/CLKOUT.
7. INTOSC – Internal oscillator with Fosc/4 output on OSC2 and I/O on OSC1/CLKIN.
8. INTSCIO – Internal oscillator with I/O on OSC1/CLKIN and OSC2/CLKOUT.

Clock Source modes are configured by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG). The internal clock can be generated from two internal oscillators. The HFINTOSC is a calibrated high-frequency oscillator. The LFINTOSC is an uncalibrated low-frequency oscillator.

FIGURE 3-1: PICmicro® MCU CLOCK SOURCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

3.2 Oscillator Control

The Oscillator Control (OSCCON) register (Figure 3-1) controls the system clock and frequency selection options. The OSCCON register contains the following bits:

- Frequency selection bits (IRCF)
- Frequency Status bits (HTS, LTS)
- System clock control bits (OSTS, SCS)

REGISTER 3-1: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R-1	R-0	R-0	R/W-0
—	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS ⁽¹⁾	HTS	LTS	SCS
bit 7							

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IRCF<2:0>:** Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits

111 = 8 MHz

110 = 4 MHz (default)

101 = 2 MHz

100 = 1 MHz

011 = 500 kHz

010 = 250 kHz

001 = 125 kHz

000 = 31 kHz (LFINTOSC)

bit 3 **OSTS:** Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status bit⁽¹⁾

1 = Device is running from the external clock defined by FOSC<2:0> of the CONFIG register

0 = Device is running from the internal oscillator (HFINTOSC or LFINTOSC)

bit 2 **HTS:** HFINTOSC Status bit (High Frequency – 8 MHz to 125 kHz)

1 = HFINTOSC is stable

0 = HFINTOSC is not stable

bit 1 **LTS:** LFINTOSC Stable bit (Low Frequency – 31 kHz)

1 = LFINTOSC is stable

0 = LFINTOSC is not stable

bit 0 **SCS:** System Clock Select bit

1 = Internal oscillator is used for system clock

0 = Clock source defined by FOSC<2:0> of the CONFIG register

Note 1: Bit resets to '0' with Two-Speed Start-up and LP, XT or HS selected as the Oscillator mode or Fail-Safe mode is enabled.

3.3 Clock Source Modes

Clock Source modes can be classified as external or internal.

- External Clock modes rely on external circuitry for the clock source. Examples are: Oscillator modules (EC mode), quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators (LP, XT and HS modes) and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) mode circuits.
- Internal clock sources are contained internally within the Oscillator module. The Oscillator module has two internal oscillators: the 8 MHz High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC) and the 31 kHz Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC).

The system clock can be selected between external or internal clock sources via the System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register. See **Section 3.6 “Clock Switching”** for additional information.

3.4 External Clock Modes

3.4.1 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER (OST)

If the Oscillator module is configured for LP, XT or HS modes, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) counts 1024 oscillations from OSC1. This occurs following a Power-on Reset (POR) and when the Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired (if configured), or a wake-up from Sleep. During this time, the program counter does not increment and program execution is suspended. The OST ensures that the oscillator circuit, using a quartz crystal resonator or ceramic resonator, has started and is providing a stable system clock to the Oscillator module. When switching between clock sources, a delay is required to allow the new clock to stabilize. These oscillator delays are shown in Table 3-1.

In order to minimize latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution, the Two-Speed Clock Start-up mode can be selected (see **Section 3.7 “Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode”**).

TABLE 3-1: OSCILLATOR DELAY EXAMPLES

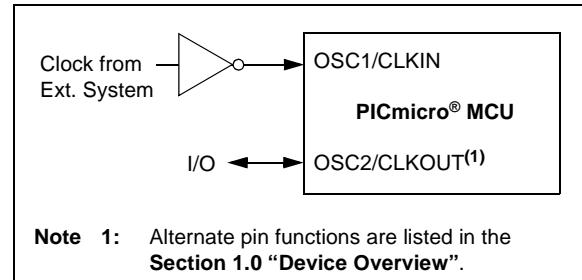
Switch From	Switch To	Frequency	Oscillator Delay
Sleep/POR	LFINTOSC HFINTOSC	31 kHz 125 kHz to 8 MHz	Oscillator Warm-up Delay (TWARM)
Sleep/POR	EC, RC	DC – 20 MHz	2 cycles
LFINTOSC (31 kHz)	EC, RC	DC – 20 MHz	1 cycle of each
Sleep/POR	LP, XT, HS	32 kHz to 20 MHz	1024 Clock Cycles (OST)
LFINTOSC (31 kHz)	HFINTOSC	125 kHz to 8 MHz	1 μ s (approx.)

3.4.2 EC MODE

The External Clock (EC) mode allows an externally generated logic level as the system clock source. When operating in this mode, an external clock source is connected to the OSC1 input and the OSC2 is available for general purpose I/O. Figure 3-2 shows the pin connections for EC mode.

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is disabled when EC mode is selected. Therefore, there is no delay in operation after a Power-on Reset (POR) or wake-up from Sleep. Because the PICmicro® MCU design is fully static, stopping the external clock input will have the effect of halting the device while leaving all data intact. Upon restarting the external clock, the device will resume operation as if no time had elapsed.

FIGURE 3-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK (EC) MODE OPERATION



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

3.4.3 LP, XT, HS MODES

The LP, XT and HS modes support the use of quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators connected to OSC1 and OSC2 (Figure 3-3). The mode selects a low, medium or high gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier to support various resonator types and speed.

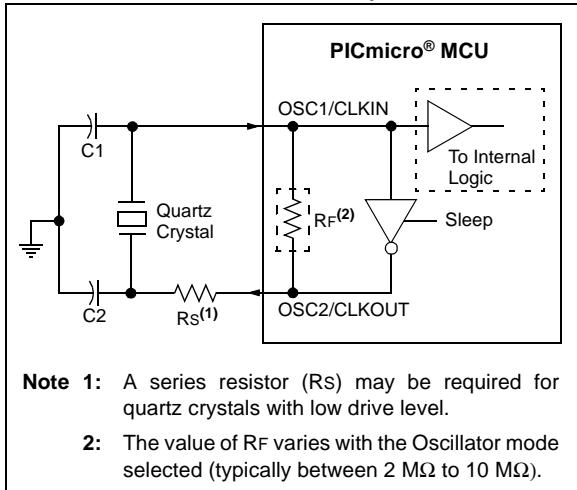
LP Oscillator mode selects the lowest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. LP mode current consumption is the least of the three modes. This mode is designed to drive only 32.768 kHz tuning-fork type crystals (watch crystals).

XT Oscillator mode selects the intermediate gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. XT mode current consumption is the medium of the three modes. This mode is best suited to drive resonators with a medium drive level specification.

HS Oscillator mode selects the highest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. HS mode current consumption is the highest of the three modes. This mode is best suited for resonators that require a high drive setting.

Figure 3-3 and Figure 3-4 show typical circuits for quartz crystal and ceramic resonators, respectively.

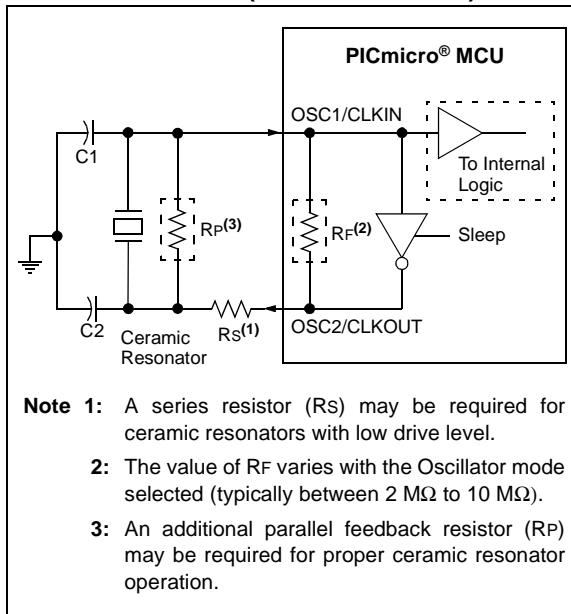
FIGURE 3-3: QUARTZ CRYSTAL OPERATION (LP, XT OR HS MODE)



Note 1: Quartz crystal characteristics vary according to type, package and manufacturer. The user should consult the manufacturer data sheets for specifications and recommended application.

- 2:** Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.
- 3:** For oscillator design assistance, reference the following Microchip Applications Notes:
 - AN826, "Crystal Oscillator Basics and Crystal Selection for rfPIC® and PICmicro® Devices" (DS00826)
 - AN849, "Basic PICmicro® Oscillator Design" (DS00849)
 - AN943, "Practical PICmicro® Oscillator Analysis and Design" (DS00943)
 - AN949, "Making Your Oscillator Work" (DS00949)

FIGURE 3-4: CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (XT OR HS MODE)

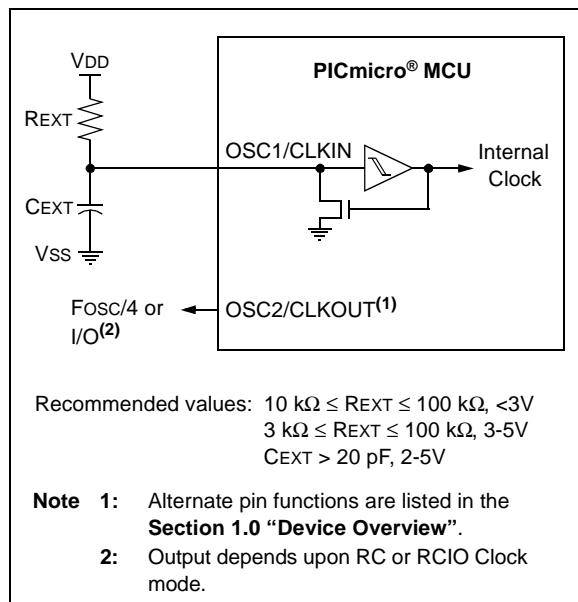


3.4.4 EXTERNAL RC MODES

The external Resistor-Capacitor (RC) modes support the use of an external RC circuit. This allows the designer maximum flexibility in frequency choice while keeping costs to a minimum when clock accuracy is not required. There are two modes: RC and RCIO.

In RC mode, the RC circuit connects to OSC1. OSC2/CLKOUT outputs the RC oscillator frequency divided by 4. This signal may be used to provide a clock for external circuitry, synchronization, calibration, test or other application requirements. Figure 3-5 shows the external RC mode connections.

FIGURE 3-5: EXTERNAL RC MODES



In RCIO mode, the RC circuit is connected to OSC1. OSC2 becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin.

The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT) values and the operating temperature. Other factors affecting the oscillator frequency are:

- threshold voltage variation
- component tolerances
- packaging variations in capacitance

The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external RC components used.

3.5 Internal Clock Modes

The Oscillator module has two independent, internal oscillators that can be configured or selected as the system clock source.

1. The **HFINTOSC** (High-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is factory calibrated and operates at 8 MHz. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be user-adjusted via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 3-2).
2. The **LFINTOSC** (Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is uncalibrated and operates at 31 kHz.

The system clock speed can be selected via software using the Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits IRCF<2:0> of the OSCCON register.

The system clock can be selected between external or internal clock sources via the System Clock Selection (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register. See **Section 3.6 “Clock Switching”** for more information.

3.5.1 INTOSC AND INTOSCI MODES

The INTOSC and INTOSCI modes configure the internal oscillators as the system clock source when the device is programmed using the oscillator selection or the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG).

In **INTOSC** mode, OSC1/CLKIN is available for general purpose I/O. OSC2/CLKOUT outputs the selected internal oscillator frequency divided by 4. The CLKOUT signal may be used to provide a clock for external circuitry, synchronization, calibration, test or other application requirements.

In **INTOSCI** mode, OSC1/CLKIN and OSC2/CLKOUT are available for general purpose I/O.

3.5.2 HFINTOSC

The High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC) is a factory calibrated 8 MHz internal clock source. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be altered via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 3-2).

The output of the HFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 3-1). One of seven frequencies can be selected via software using the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 3.5.4 “Frequency Select Bits (IRCF)”** for more information.

The HFINTOSC is enabled by selecting any frequency between 8 MHz and 125 kHz by setting the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register $\neq 000$. Then, set the System Clock Source (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register to ‘1’ or enable Two-Speed Start-up by setting the IESO bit in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG) to ‘1’.

The HF Internal Oscillator (HTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the HFINTOSC is stable or not.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

3.5.2.1 OSCTUNE Register

The HFINTOSC is factory calibrated but can be adjusted in software by writing to the OSCTUNE register (Register 3-2).

The default value of the OSCTUNE register is '0'. The value is a 5-bit two's complement number.

When the OSCTUNE register is modified, the HFINTOSC frequency will begin shifting to the new frequency. Code execution continues during this shift. There is no indication that the shift has occurred.

OSCTUNE does not affect the LFINTOSC frequency. Operation of features that depend on the LFINTOSC clock source frequency, such as the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT), Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) and peripherals, are *not* affected by the change in frequency.

REGISTER 3-2: OSCTUNE: OSCILLATOR TUNING REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **TUN<4:0>:** Frequency Tuning bits

01111 = Maximum frequency

01110 =

•

•

•

00001 =

00000 = Oscillator module is running at the calibrated frequency.

11111 =

•

•

•

10000 = Minimum frequency

3.5.3 LFINTOSC

The Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC) is an uncalibrated 31 kHz internal clock source.

The output of the LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 3-1). Select 31 kHz, via software, using the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 3.5.4 “Frequency Select Bits (IRCF)”** for more information. The LFINTOSC is also the frequency for the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT) and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM).

The LFINTOSC is enabled by selecting 31 kHz (IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register = 000) as the system clock source (SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 1), or when any of the following are enabled:

- Two-Speed Start-up IESO bit of the Configuration Word register = 1 and IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register = 000
- Power-up Timer (PWRT)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM)

The LF Internal Oscillator (LTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the LFINTOSC is stable or not.

3.5.4 FREQUENCY SELECT BITS (IRCF)

The output of the 8 MHz HFINTOSC and 31 kHz LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 3-1). The Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits IRCF<2:0> of the OSCCON register select the frequency output of the internal oscillators. One of eight frequencies can be selected via software:

- 8 MHz
- 4 MHz (Default after Reset)
- 2 MHz
- 1 MHz
- 500 kHz
- 250 kHz
- 125 kHz
- 31 kHz (LFINTOSC)

Note: Following any Reset, the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are set to ‘110’ and the frequency selection is set to 4 MHz. The user can modify the IRCF bits to select a different frequency.

3.5.5 HFINTOSC AND LFINTOSC CLOCK SWITCH TIMING

When switching between the LFINTOSC and the HFINTOSC, the new oscillator may already be shut down to save power (see Figure 3-6). If this is the case, there is a delay after the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified before the frequency selection takes place. The LTS and HTS bits of the OSCCON register will reflect the current active status of the LFINTOSC and HFINTOSC oscillators. The timing of a frequency selection is as follows:

1. IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified.
2. If the new clock is shut down, a clock start-up delay is started.
3. Clock switch circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock.
4. CLKOUT is held low and the clock switch circuitry waits for a rising edge in the new clock.
5. CLKOUT is now connected with the new clock. LTS and HTS bits of the OSCCON register are updated as required.
6. Clock switch is complete.

See Figure 3-1 for more details.

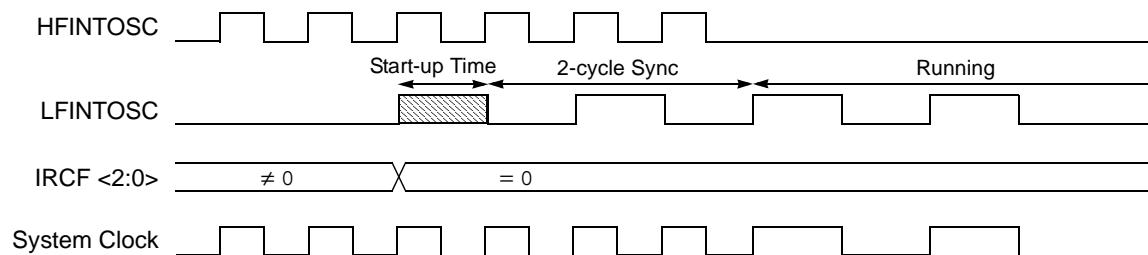
If the internal oscillator speed selected is between 8 MHz and 125 kHz, there is no start-up delay before the new frequency is selected. This is because the old and new frequencies are derived from the HFINTOSC via the postscaler and multiplexer.

Start-up delay specifications are located in the oscillator tables of **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

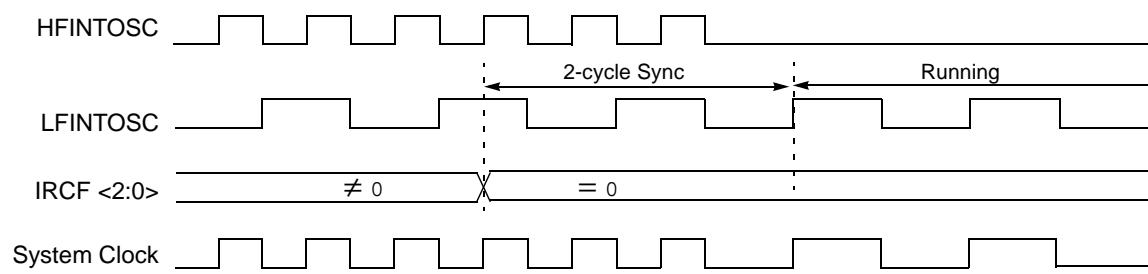
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 3-6: INTERNAL OSCILLATOR SWITCH TIMING

HFINTOSC → LFINTOSC (FSCM and WDT disabled)

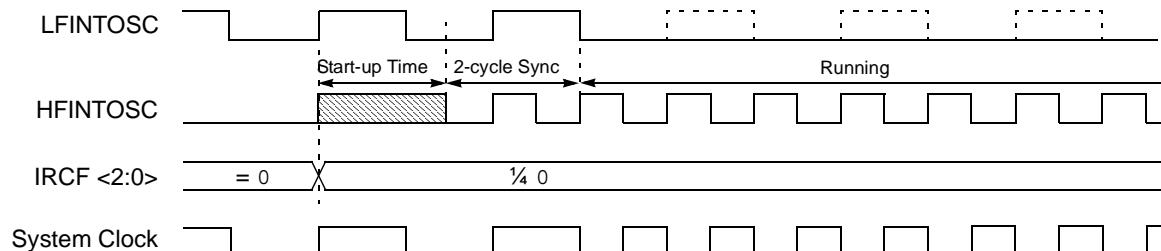


HFINTOSC → LFINTOSC (Either FSCM or WDT enabled)



LFINTOSC → HFINTOSC

LFINTOSC turns off unless WDT or FSCM is enabled



3.6 Clock Switching

The system clock source can be switched between external and internal clock sources via software using the System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register.

3.6.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SELECT (SCS) BIT

The System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register selects the system clock source that is used for the CPU and peripherals.

- When the SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 0, the system clock source is determined by configuration of the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG).
- When the SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 1, the system clock source is chosen by the internal oscillator frequency selected by the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. After a Reset, the SCS bit of the OSCCON register is always cleared.

Note: Any automatic clock switch, which may occur from Two-Speed Start-up or Fail-Safe Clock Monitor, does not update the SCS bit of the OSCCON register. The user can monitor the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to determine the current system clock source.

3.6.2 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIME-OUT STATUS (OSTS) BIT

The Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status (OSTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the system clock is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG), or from the internal clock source. In particular, OSTS indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has timed out for LP, XT or HS modes.

3.7 Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode

Two-Speed Start-up mode provides additional power savings by minimizing the latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution. In applications that make heavy use of the Sleep mode, Two-Speed Start-up will remove the external oscillator start-up time from the time spent awake and can reduce the overall power consumption of the device.

This mode allows the application to wake-up from Sleep, perform a few instructions using the INTOSC as the clock source and go back to Sleep without waiting for the primary oscillator to become stable.

Note: Executing a SLEEP instruction will abort the oscillator start-up time and will cause the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to remain clear.

When the Oscillator module is configured for LP, XT or HS modes, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is enabled (see **Section 3.4.1 “Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)”**). The OST will suspend program execution until 1024 oscillations are counted. Two-Speed Start-up mode minimizes the delay in code execution by operating from the internal oscillator as the OST is counting. When the OST count reaches 1024 and the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register is set, program execution switches to the external oscillator.

3.7.1 TWO-SPEED START-UP MODE CONFIGURATION

Two-Speed Start-up mode is configured by the following settings:

- IESO (of the Configuration Word register) = 1; Internal/External Switchover bit (Two-Speed Start-up mode enabled).
- SCS (of the OSCCON register) = 0.
- FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG) configured for LP, XT or HS mode.

Two-Speed Start-up mode is entered after:

- Power-on Reset (POR) and, if enabled, after Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired, or
- Wake-up from Sleep.

If the external clock oscillator is configured to be anything other than LP, XT or HS mode, then Two-speed Start-up is disabled. This is because the external clock oscillator does not require any stabilization time after POR or an exit from Sleep.

3.7.2 TWO-SPEED START-UP SEQUENCE

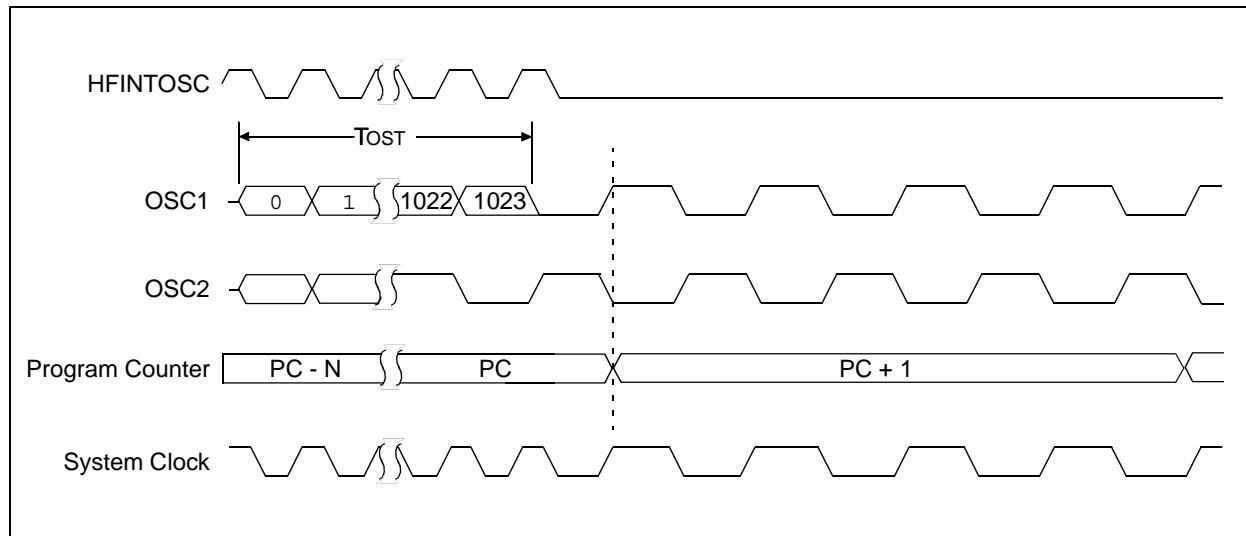
1. Wake-up from Power-on Reset or Sleep.
2. Instructions begin execution by the internal oscillator at the frequency set in the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register.
3. OST enabled to count 1024 clock cycles.
4. OST timed out, wait for falling edge of the internal oscillator.
5. OSTS is set.
6. System clock held low until the next falling edge of new clock (LP, XT or HS mode).
7. System clock is switched to external clock source.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

3.7.3 CHECKING TWO-SPEED CLOCK STATUS

Checking the state of the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register will confirm if the microcontroller is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG), or the internal oscillator.

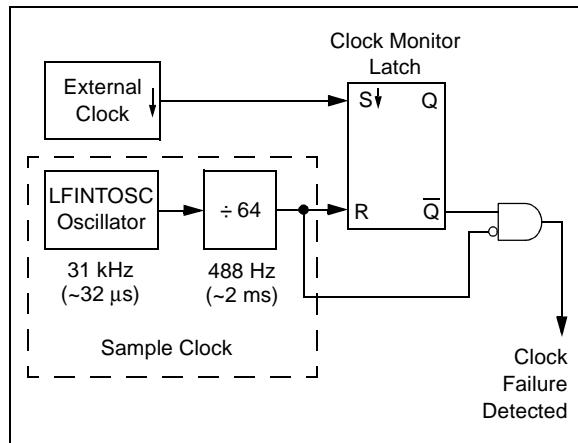
FIGURE 3-7: TWO-SPEED START-UP



3.8 Fail-Safe Clock Monitor

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) allows the device to continue operating should the external oscillator fail. The FSCM can detect oscillator failure any time after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The FSCM is enabled by setting the FCMEN bit in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG). The FSCM is applicable to all external Oscillator modes (LP, XT, HS, EC, RC and RCIO).

FIGURE 3-8: FSCM BLOCK DIAGRAM



3.8.1 FAIL-SAFE DETECTION

The FSCM module detects a failed oscillator by comparing the external oscillator to the FSCM sample clock. The sample clock is generated by dividing the LFINTOSC by 64. See Figure 3-8. Inside the fail detector block is a latch. The external clock sets the latch on each falling edge of the external clock. The sample clock clears the latch on each rising edge of the sample clock. A failure is detected when an entire half-cycle of the sample clock elapses before the primary clock goes low.

3.8.2 FAIL-SAFE OPERATION

When the external clock fails, the FSCM switches the device clock to an internal clock source and sets the bit flag OSFIF of the PIR2 register. Setting this flag will generate an interrupt if the OSFIE bit of the PIE2 register is also set. The device firmware can then take steps to mitigate the problems that may arise from a failed clock. The system clock will continue to be sourced from the internal clock source until the device firmware successfully restarts the external oscillator and switches back to external operation.

The internal clock source chosen by the FSCM is determined by the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. This allows the internal oscillator to be configured before a failure occurs.

3.8.3 FAIL-SAFE CONDITION CLEARING

The Fail-Safe condition is cleared after a Reset, executing a SLEEP instruction or toggling the SCS bit of the OSCCON register. When the SCS bit is toggled, the OST is restarted. While the OST is running, the device continues to operate from the INTOSC selected in OSCCON. When the OST times out, the Fail-Safe condition is cleared and the device will be operating from the external clock source. The Fail-Safe condition must be cleared before the OSFIF flag can be cleared.

3.8.4 RESET OR WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The FSCM is designed to detect an oscillator failure after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The OST is used after waking up from Sleep and after any type of Reset. The OST is not used with the EC or RC Clock modes so that the FSCM will be active as soon as the Reset or wake-up has completed. When the FSCM is enabled, the Two-Speed Start-up is also enabled. Therefore, the device will always be executing code while the OST is operating.

Note: Due to the wide range of oscillator start-up times, the Fail-Safe circuit is not active during oscillator start-up (i.e., after exiting Reset or Sleep). After an appropriate amount of time, the user should check the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to verify the oscillator start-up and that the system clock switchover has successfully completed.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 3-9: FSCM TIMING DIAGRAM

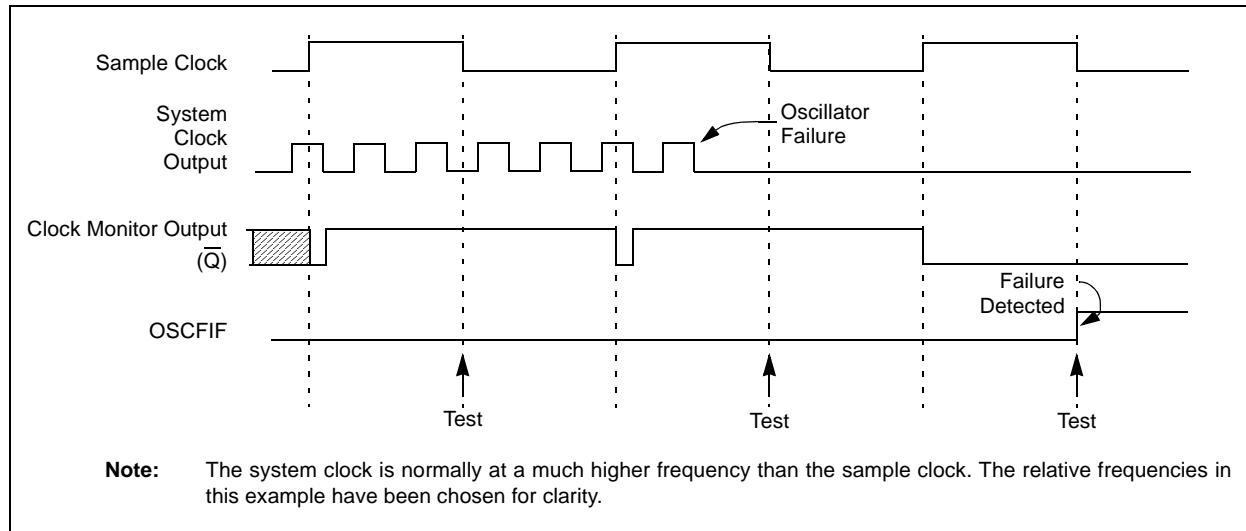


TABLE 3-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CLOCK SOURCES

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets ⁽¹⁾
CONFIG ⁽²⁾	CPD	CP	MCLRE	PWRTE	WDTE	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	—	—
OSCCON	—	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS	HTS	LTS	SCS	-110 x000	-110 x000
OSCTUNE	—	—	—	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by oscillators.

Note 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

2: See Configuration Word register (Register 14-1) for operation of all register bits.

4.0 I/O PORTS

There are as many as eighteen general purpose I/O pins available. Depending on which peripherals are enabled, some or all of the pins may not be available as general purpose I/O. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, the associated pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

4.1 PORTA and the TRISA Registers

PORTA is a 6-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA (Register 4-2). Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., disable the output driver). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., enables output driver and puts the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). The exception is RA3, which is input only and its TRIS bit will always read as '1'. Example 4-1 shows how to initialize PORTA.

Reading the PORTA register (Register 4-1) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the

port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch. RA3 reads '0' when MCLRE = 1.

The TRISA register controls the PORTA pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

Note: The ANSEL register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

EXAMPLE 4-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```

BCF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 0
BCF STATUS,RP1 ;
CLRF PORTA ;Init PORTA
BSF STATUS,RP1 ;Bank 2
CLRF ANSEL ;digital I/O
BSF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 1
BCF STATUS,RP1 ;
MOVLW 0Ch ;Set RA<3:2> as inputs
MOVWF TRISA ;and set RA<5:4,1:0>
                ;as outputs
BCF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 0

```

REGISTER 4-1: PORTA: PORTA REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **RA<5:0>:** PORTA I/O Pin bit

1 = Port pin is > VIH

0 = Port pin is < VIL

REGISTER 4-2: TRISA: PORTA TRI-STATE REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **TRISA<5:0>:** PORTA Tri-State Control bit

1 = PORTA pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTA pin configured as an output

Note 1: TRISA<3> always reads '1'.

2: TRISA<5:4> always reads '1' in XT, HS and LP Oscillator modes.

4.2 Additional Pin Functions

Every PORTA pin on this device family has an interrupt-on-change option and a weak pull-up option. RA0 also has an Ultra Low-Power Wake-up option. The next three sections describe these functions.

4.2.1 ANSEL AND ANSELH REGISTERS

The ANSEL and ANSELH registers are used to disable the input buffers of I/O pins, which allow analog voltages to be applied to those pins without causing excessive current. Setting the ANSx bit of a corresponding pin will cause all digital reads of that pin to return '0' and also permit analog functions of that pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSx bit has no effect on the digital output function of its corresponding pin. A pin with the TRISx bit clear and ANSx bit set will operate as a digital output, together with the analog input function of that pin. Pins with the ANSx bit set always read '0', which can cause unexpected behavior when executing read or write operations on the port due to the read-modify-write sequence of all such operations.

4.2.2 WEAK PULL-UPS

Each of the PORTA pins, except RA3, has an individually configurable internal weak pull-up. Control bits WPUAx enable or disable each pull-up. Refer to Register 4-4. Each weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset by the RABPU bit of the OPTION register. A weak pull-up is automatically enabled for RA3 when configured as MCLR and disabled when RA3 is an I/O. There is no software control of the MCLR pull-up.

4.2.3 INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

Each PORTA pin is individually configurable as an interrupt-on-change pin. Control bits IOCAx enable or disable the interrupt function for each pin. Refer to Register 4-6. The interrupt-on-change is disabled on a Power-on Reset.

For enabled interrupt-on-change pins, the values are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTA. The 'mismatch' outputs of the last read are OR'd together to set the PORTA Change Interrupt Flag bit (RABIF) in the INTCON register (Register 2-6).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, clears the interrupt by:

- a) Any read or write of PORTA. This will end the mismatch condition, then,
- b) Clear the flag bit RABIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RABIF. Reading PORTA will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RABIF to be cleared. The latch holding the last read value is not affected by a MCLR nor BOR Reset. After these Resets, the RABIF flag will continue to be set if a mismatch is present.

Note: If a change on the I/O pin should occur when the read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the RABIF interrupt flag may not get set.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 4-3: ANSEL: ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

| R/W-1 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ANS7 | ANS6 | ANS5 | ANS4 | ANS3 | ANS2 | ANS1 | ANS0 |
| bit 7 | | | | | | | bit 0 |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

ANS<7:0>: Analog Select bits

Analog select between analog or digital function on pins AN<7:0>, respectively.

1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input⁽¹⁾.

0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or special function.

Note 1: Setting a pin to an analog input automatically disables the digital input circuitry, weak pull-ups and interrupt-on-change if available. The corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

REGISTER 4-4: ANSELH: ANALOG SELECT HIGH REGISTER⁽²⁾

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	ANS11	ANS10	ANS9	ANS8
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4

Unimplemented: Read as '0'

bit 3-0

ANS<11:8>: Analog Select bits

Analog select between analog or digital function on pins AN<7:0>, respectively.

1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input⁽¹⁾.

0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or special function.

Note 1: Setting a pin to an analog input automatically disables the digital input circuitry, weak pull-ups and interrupt-on-change if available. The corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

2: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 4-5: WPUA: PORTA REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	WPUA5	WPUA4	—	WPUA2	WPUA1	WPUA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **WPUA<5:4>:** Weak Pull-up Register bit

1 = Pull-up enabled

0 = Pull-up disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **WPUA<2:0>:** Weak Pull-up Register bit

1 = Pull-up enabled

0 = Pull-up disabled

Note 1: Global RABPU bit of the OPTION register must be enabled for individual pull-ups to be enabled.

2: The weak pull-up device is automatically disabled if the pin is in Output mode (TRISA = 0).

3: The RA3 pull-up is enabled when configured as MCLR and disabled as an I/O in the Configuration Word.

4: WPUA<5:4> always reads '1' in XT, HS and LP Oscillator modes.

REGISTER 4-6: IOCA: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE PORTA REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	IOCA5	IOCA4	IOCA3	IOCA2	IOCA1	IOCA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **IOCA<5:0>:** Interrupt-on-change PORTA Control bit

1 = Interrupt-on-change enabled

0 = Interrupt-on-change disabled

Note 1: Global Interrupt Enable (GIE) must be enabled for individual interrupts to be recognized.

2: IOCA<5:4> always reads '1' in XT, HS and LP Oscillator modes.

4.2.4 ULTRA LOW-POWER WAKE-UP

The Ultra Low-Power Wake-up (ULPWU) on RA0 allows a slow falling voltage to generate an interrupt-on-change on RA0 without excess current consumption. The mode is selected by setting the ULPWUE bit of the PCON register. This enables a small current sink, which can be used to discharge a capacitor on RA0.

Follow these steps to use this feature:

- a) Charge the capacitor on RA0 by configuring the RA0 pin to output (= 1).
- b) Configure RA0 as an input.
- c) Enable interrupt-on-change for RA0.
- d) Set the ULPWUE bit of the PCON register to begin the capacitor discharge.
- e) Execute a SLEEP instruction.

When the voltage on RA0 drops below VIL, an interrupt will be generated which will cause the device to wake-up and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is set, the device will then call the interrupt vector (0004h). See **Section 4.4.2 “Interrupt-on-change”** and **Section 14.3.3 “PORTA/PORTB Interrupt”** for more information.

This feature provides a low-power technique for periodically waking up the device from Sleep. The time-out is dependent on the discharge time of the RC circuit on RA0. See Example 4-2 for initializing the Ultra Low-Power Wake-up module.

A series resistor between RA0 and the external capacitor provides overcurrent protection for the RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ULPWU pin and can allow for software calibration of the time-out (see Figure 4-1). A timer can be used to measure the charge time and discharge time of the capacitor. The charge time can then be adjusted to provide the desired interrupt delay. This technique will compensate for the affects of temperature, voltage and component accuracy. The Ultra Low-Power Wake-up peripheral can also be configured as a simple Programmable Low-Voltage Detect or temperature sensor.

Note: For more information, refer to Application Note AN879, “Using the Microchip Ultra Low-Power Wake-up Module” (DS00879).

EXAMPLE 4-2: ULTRA LOW-POWER WAKE-UP INITIALIZATION

```
BCF STATUS,RP0      ; Bank 0
BCF STATUS,RP1      ;
BSF PORTA,0         ; Set RA0 data latch
BSF STATUS,RP1      ; Bank 2
BCF ANSEL,0         ; RA0 to digital I/O
BSF STATUS,RP0      ; Bank 1
BCF STATUS,RP1      ;
BCF TRISA,0         ; Output high to
CALL CapDelay       ; charge capacitor
BSF PCON,ULPWUE    ; Enable ULP Wake-up
BSF IOCA,0          ; Select RA0 IOC
BSF TRISA,0         ; RA0 to input
MOVLW B'10001000'   ; Enable interrupt
MOVWF INTCON        ; and clear flag
BCF STATUS,RP0      ; Bank 0
SLEEP               ; Wait for IOC
```

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.2.5 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

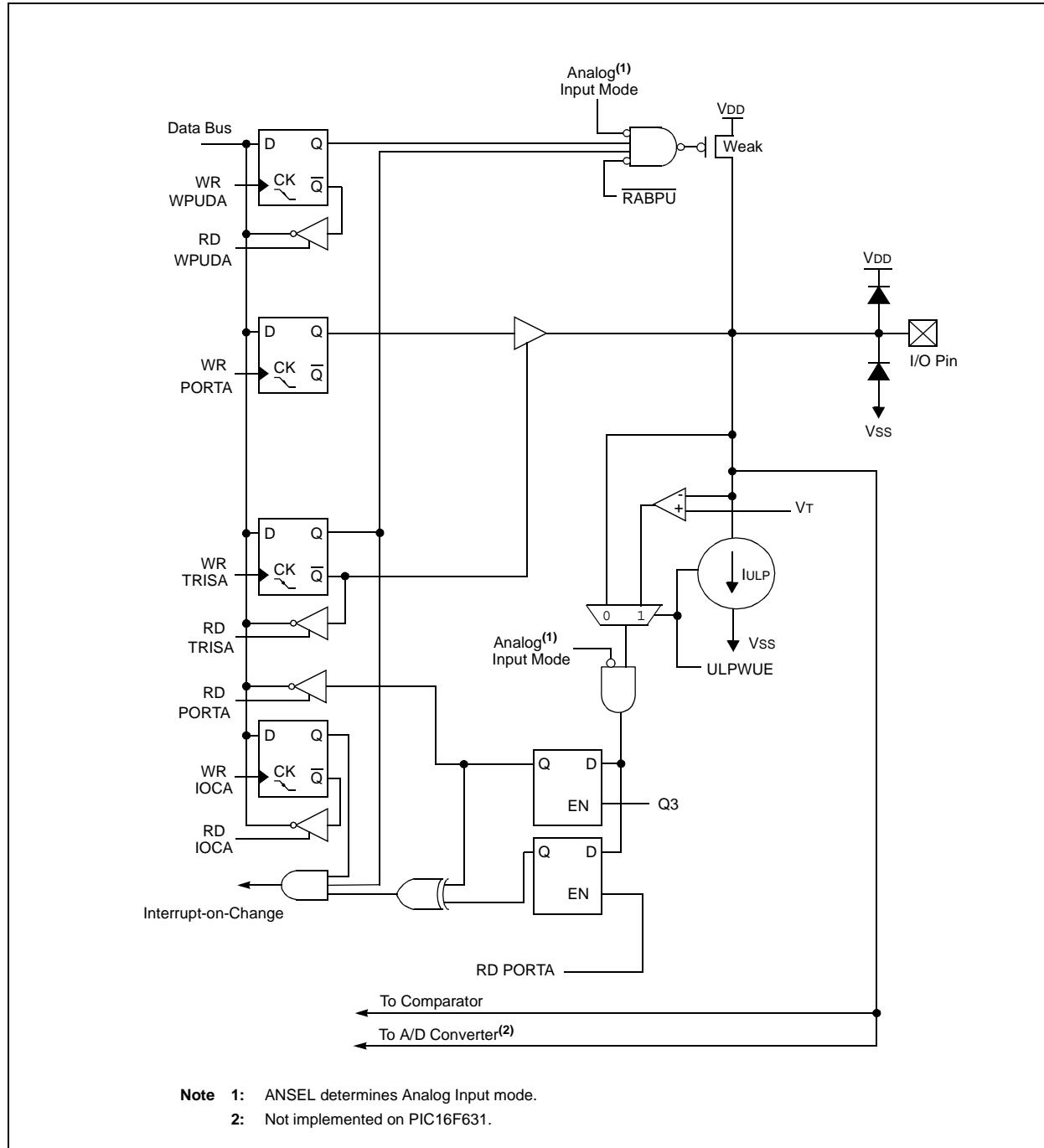
Each PORTA pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the comparator or the A/D Converter (ADC), refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

4.2.5.1 RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ULPWU

Figure 4-2 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ULPWU pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- an analog input to Comparator C1
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ data
- an analog input for the Ultra Low-Power Wake-up

FIGURE 4-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA0



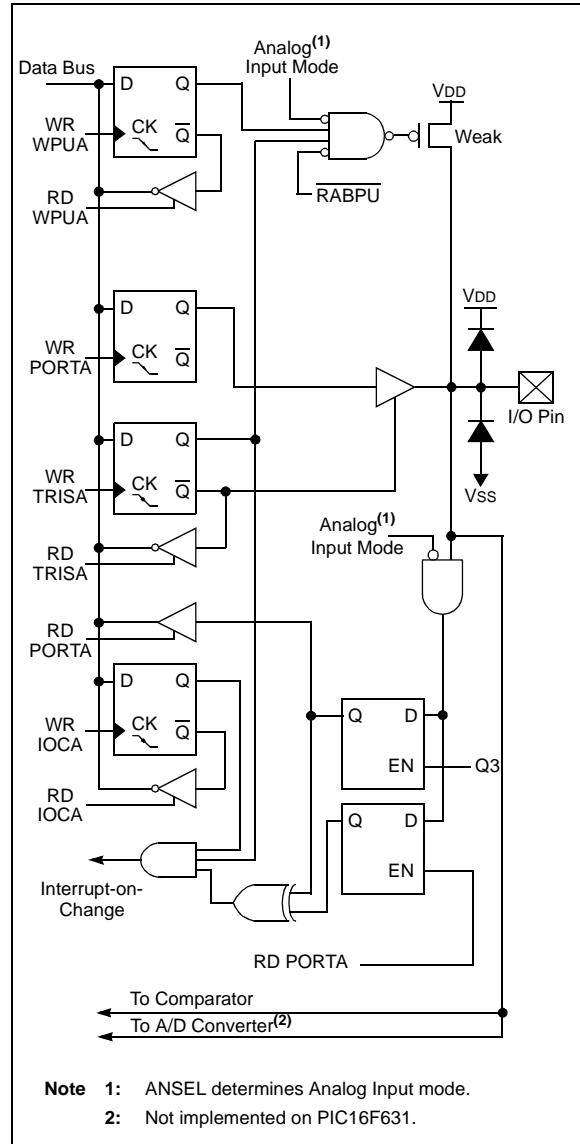
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.2.5.2 RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ICSPCLK

Figure 4-2 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA1/AN1/C12IN0-/VREF/ICSPCLK pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- an analog input to Comparator C1 or C2
- a voltage reference input for the ADC
- In-Circuit Serial Programming clock

FIGURE 4-2: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA1

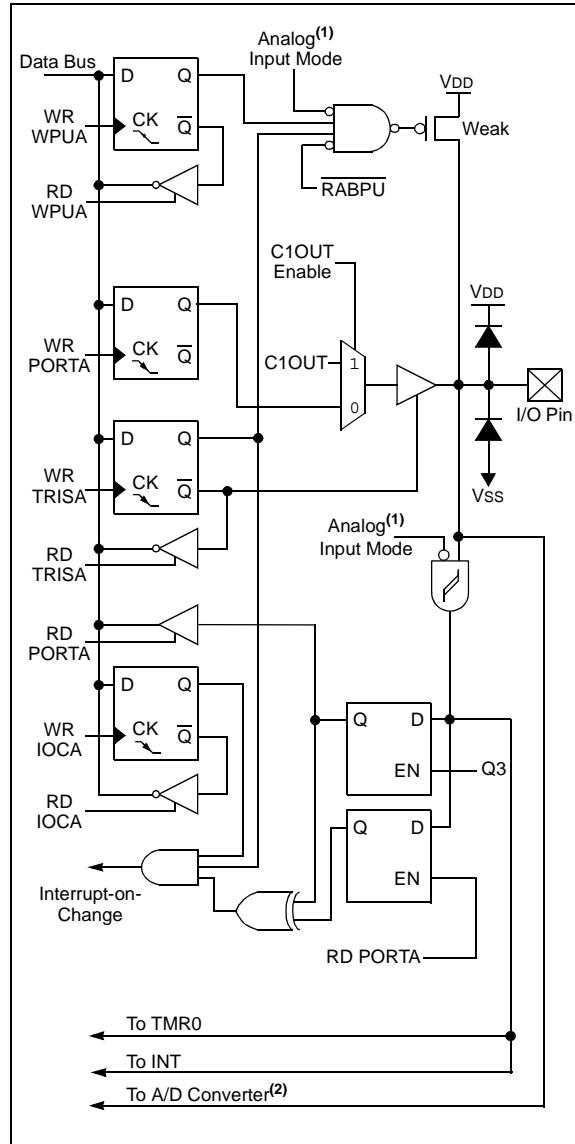


4.2.5.3 RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT

Figure 4-3 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA2/AN2/T0CKI/INT/C1OUT pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- the clock input for TMR0
- an external edge triggered interrupt
- a digital output from Comparator C1

FIGURE 4-3: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA2



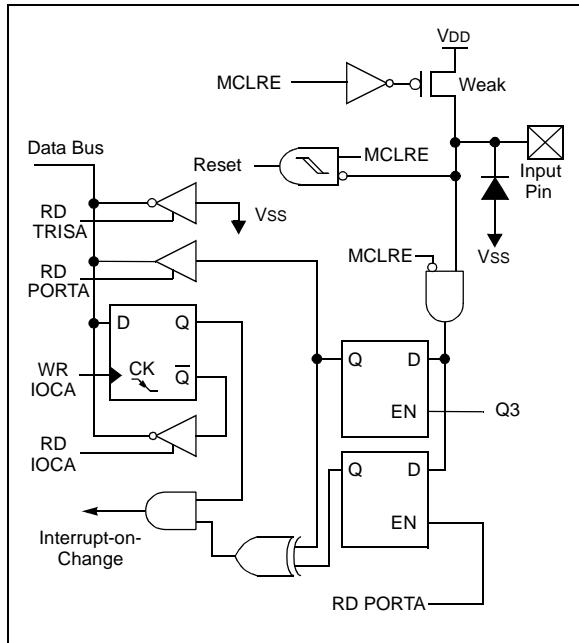
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.2.5.4 RA3/MCLR/VPP

Figure 4-4 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA3/MCLR/VPP pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose input
 - as Master Clear Reset with weak pull-up

FIGURE 4-4: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA3

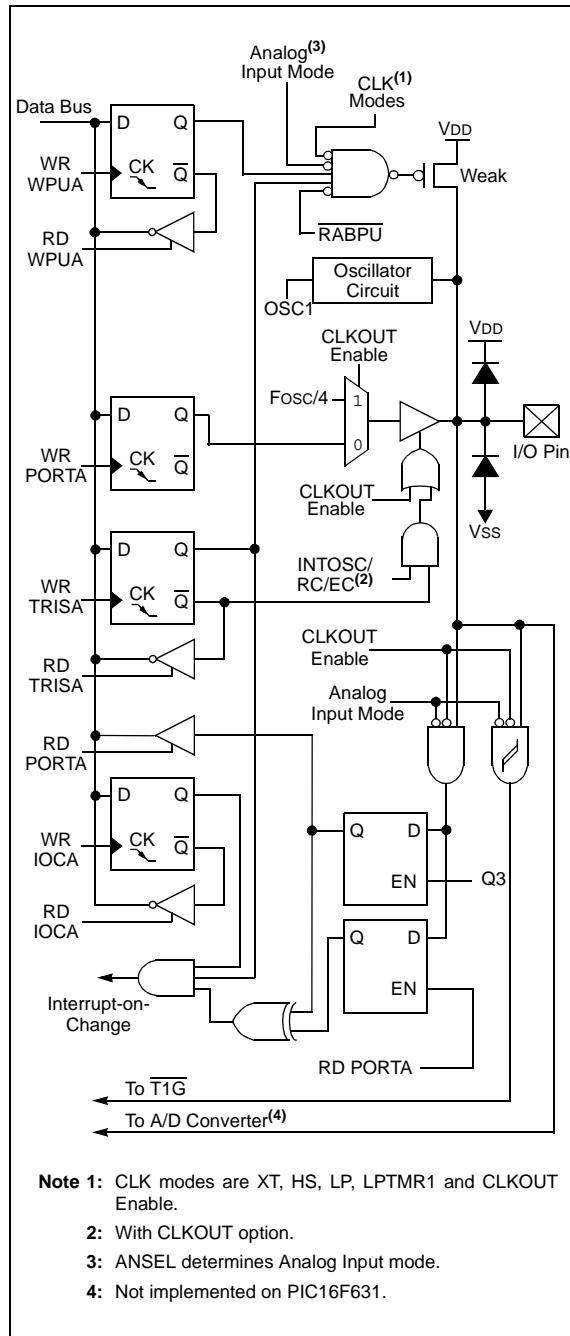


4.2.5.5 RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT

Figure 4-5 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA4/AN3/T1G/OSC2/CLKOUT pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
 - an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
 - a TMR1 gate input
 - a crystal/resonator connection
 - a clock output

FIGURE 4-5: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA4

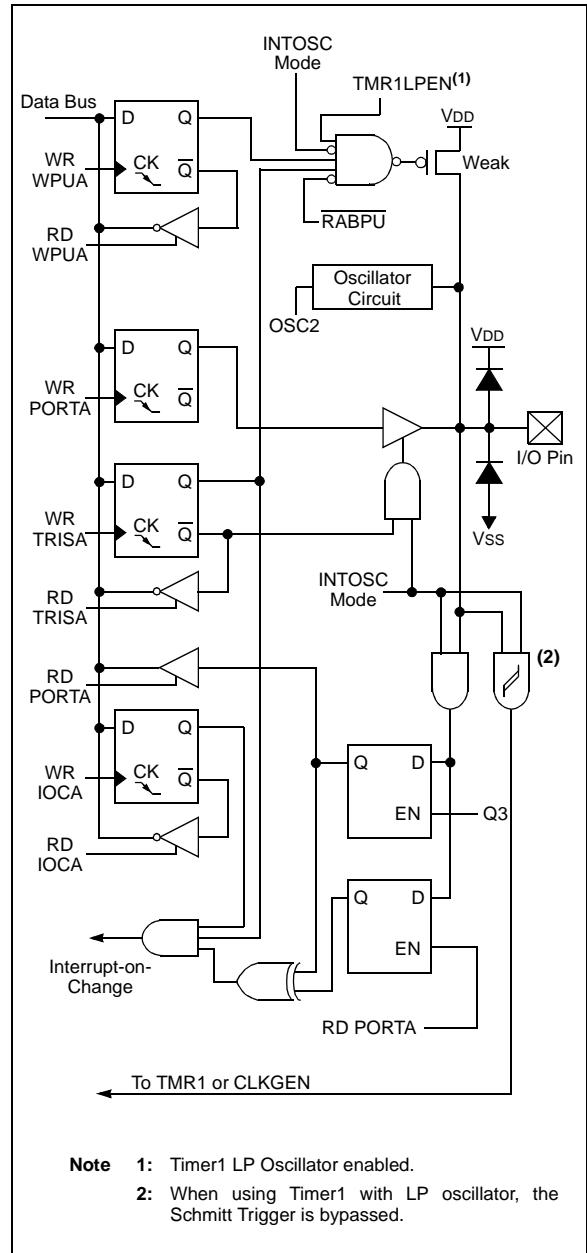


4.2.5.6 RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN

Figure 4-6 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA5/T1CKI/OSC1/CLKIN pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a TMR1 clock input
- a crystal/resonator connection
- a clock input

FIGURE 4-6: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA5



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 4-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
ADCON0	ADFM	VCFG	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/DONE	ADON	0000 0000	0000 0000
ANSEL	ANS7	ANS6	ANS5	ANS4	ANS3	ANS2	ANS1	ANS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1R	C1CH1	C1CH0	0000 -000	0000 -000
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
IOCA	—	—	IOCA5	IOCA4	IOCA3	IOCA2	IOCA1	IOCA0	--00 0000	--00 0000
OPTION_REG	RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTA	—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
T1CON	T1GINV	TMR1GE	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	--11 1111
WPUA	—	—	WPUA5	WPUA4	—	WPUA2	WPUA1	WPUA0	--11 -111	--11 -111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

4.3 PORTB and TRISB Registers

PORTB is a 4-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISB (Register 4-6). Setting a TRISB bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 4-3 shows how to initialize PORTB. Reading the PORTB register (Register 4-5) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch.

The TRISB register controls the PORTB pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISB register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

EXAMPLE 4-3: INITIALIZING PORTB

```

BCF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 0
BCF STATUS,RP1 ;
CLRF PORTB ;Init PORTB
BSF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 1
MOVLW FFh ;Set RB<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF TRISB ;
BCF STATUS,RP0 ;Bank 0

```

Note: The ANSELH register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

4.4 Additional PORTB Pin Functions

PORTB pins RB<7:4> on the device family device have an interrupt-on-change option and a weak pull-up option. The following three sections describe these PORTB pin functions.

REGISTER 4-7: PORTB: PORTB REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4

RB<7:4>: PORTB I/O Pin bit
1 = Port pin is > VIH
0 = Port pin is < VIL

bit 3-0

Unimplemented: Read as '0'

4.4.1 WEAK PULL-UPS

Each of the PORTB pins has an individually configurable internal weak pull-up. Control bits WPUB<7:4> enable or disable each pull-up (see Register 4-9). Each weak pull up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. All pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset by the RABPU bit of the OPTION register.

4.4.2 INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

Four of the PORTB pins are individually configurable as an interrupt-on-change pin. Control bits IOCB<7:4> enable or disable the interrupt function for each pin. Refer to Register 4-10. The interrupt-on-change feature is disabled on a Power-on Reset.

For enabled interrupt-on-change pins, the present value is compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB to determine which bits have changed or mismatch the old value. The 'mismatch' outputs are OR'd together to set the PORTB Change Interrupt flag bit (RABIF) in the INTCON register (Register 2-3).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, clears the interrupt by:

- a) Any read or write of PORTB. This will end the mismatch condition.
- b) Clear the flag bit RABIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RABIF. Reading or writing PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RABIF to be cleared. The latch holding the last read value is not affected by a MCLR nor Brown-out Reset. After these Resets, the RABIF flag will continue to be set if a mismatch is present.

Note: If a change on the I/O pin should occur when the read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the RABIF interrupt flag may not get set. Furthermore, since a read or write on a port affects all bits of that port, care must be taken when using multiple pins in Interrupt-on-Change mode. Changes on one pin may not be seen while servicing changes on another pin.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 4-8: TRISB: PORTB TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit
-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit
'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
'0' = Bit is cleared
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **TRISB<7:4>**: PORTB Tri-State Control bit
1 = PORTB pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
0 = PORTB pin configured as an output
bit 3-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

REGISTER 4-9: WPUB: WEAK PULL-UP PORTB REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit
-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit
'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
'0' = Bit is cleared
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **WPUB<7:4>**: Weak Pull-up Register bit
1 = Pull-up enabled
0 = Pull-up disabled
bit 3-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

- Note 1:** Global RABPU bit of the OPTION register must be enabled for individual pull-ups to be enabled.
2: The weak pull-up device is automatically disabled if the pin is in Output mode (TRISB<7:4> = 0).

REGISTER 4-10: IOCB: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE PORTB REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
IOCB7	IOCB6	IOCB5	IOCB4	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit
-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit
'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
'0' = Bit is cleared
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **IOCB<7:4>**: Interrupt-on-Change PORTB Control bit
1 = Interrupt-on-change enabled
0 = Interrupt-on-change disabled
bit 3-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

4.4.3 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTB pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the SSP, I²C™ or interrupts, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

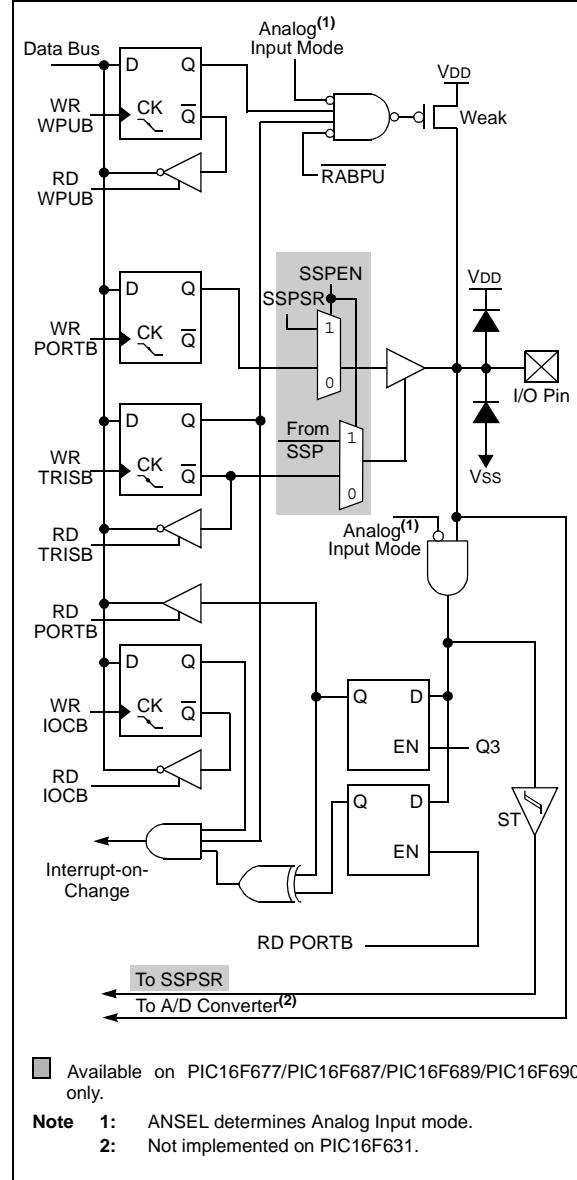
4.4.3.1 RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA

Figure 4-7 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA⁽¹⁾ pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- a SPI data I/O
- an I²C data I/O

Note 1: SDI and SDA are available on PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-7: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB4



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.4.3.2 RB5/AN11/RX/DT

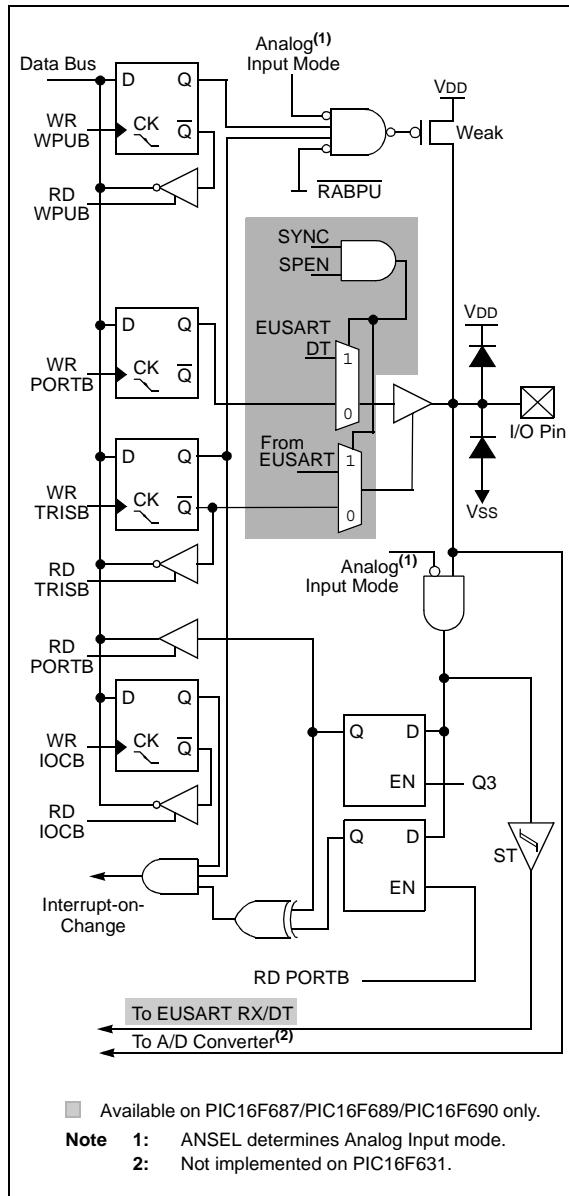
Figure 4-8 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB5/AN11/RX/DT^(1,2) pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- an asynchronous serial input
- a synchronous serial data I/O

Note 1: RX and DT are available on PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

2: AN11 is not implemented on PIC16F631.

FIGURE 4-8: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB5



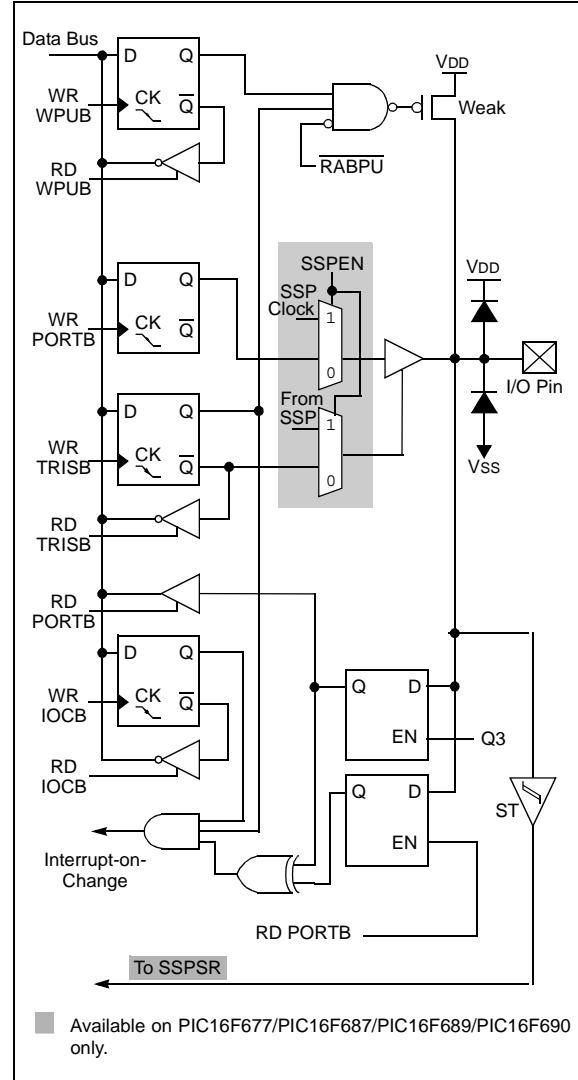
4.4.3.3 RB6/SCK/SCL

Figure 4-9 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB6/SCK/SCL⁽¹⁾ pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a SPI clock
- an I²CTM clock

Note 1: SCK and SCL are available on PIC16F677/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-9: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB6



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

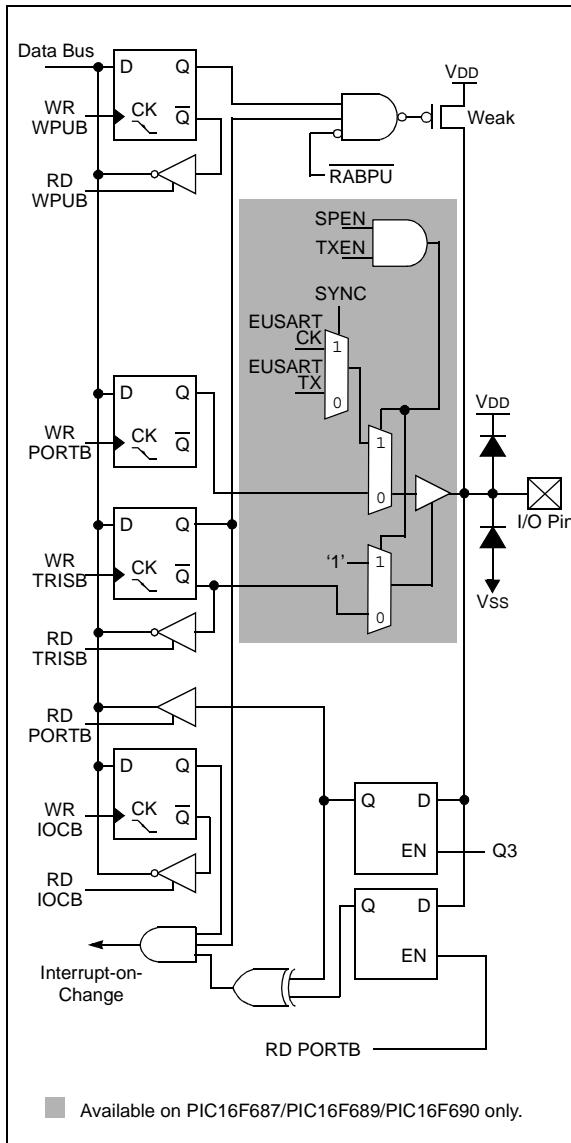
4.4.3.4 RB7/TX/CK

Figure 4-10 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB7/TX/CK⁽¹⁾ pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an asynchronous serial output
- a synchronous clock I/O

Note 1: TX and CK are available on PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-10: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB7



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 4-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
IOCB	IOCB7	IOCB6	IOCB5	IOCB4	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	—	—	—	—	xxxx ----	uuuu ----
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	1111 ----
WPUB	WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	1111 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.5 PORTC and TRISC Registers

PORTC is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISC (Register 4-10). Setting a TRISC bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 4-4 shows how to initialize PORTC. Reading the PORTC register (Register 4-9) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch.

The TRISC register controls the PORTC pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISC register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

Note: The ANSEL and ANSELH registers must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

EXAMPLE 4-4: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
BCF STATUS, RP0 ; Bank 0
BCF STATUS, RP1 ;
CLRF PORTC ; Init PORTC
BSF STATUS, RP1 ; Bank 2
CLRF ANSEL ; digital I/O
BSF STATUS, RP0 ; Bank 1
BCF STATUS, RP1 ;
MOVLW 0Ch ; Set RC<3:2> as inputs
MOVWF TRISC ; and set RC<5:4,1:0>
; as outputs
BCF STATUS, RP0 ; Bank 0
```

REGISTER 4-11: PORTC: PORTC REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-x						
RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **RC<7:0>**: PORTC General Purpose I/O Pin bit

1 = Port pin is > V_{IH}

0 = Port pin is < V_{IL}

REGISTER 4-12: TRISC: PORTC TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **TRISC<7:0>**: PORTC Tri-State Control bit

1 = PORTC pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTC pin configured as an output

4.5.1 RC0/AN4/C2IN+

The RC0 is configurable to function as one of the following:

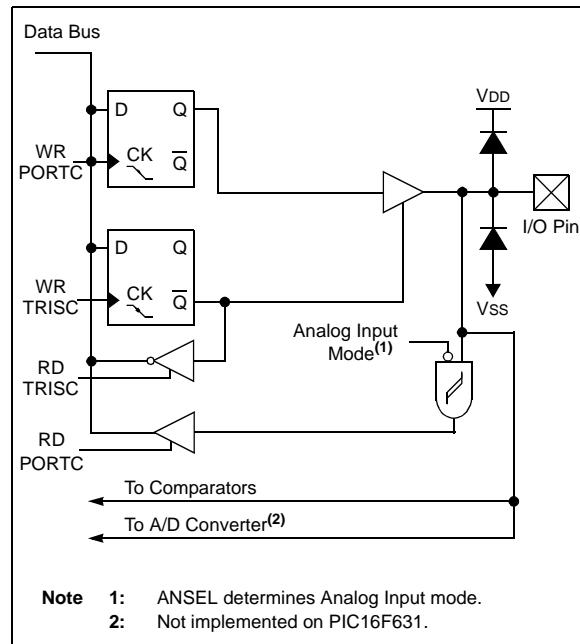
- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- an analog input to Comparator C2

4.5.2 RC1/AN5/C12IN1-

The RC1 is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog input to Comparator C1 or C2

FIGURE 4-11: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC0 AND RC1



4.5.3 RC2/AN6/C12IN2-/P1D

The RC2/AN6/P1D⁽¹⁾ is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- a PWM output
- an analog input to Comparator C1 or C2

Note 1: P1D is available on PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

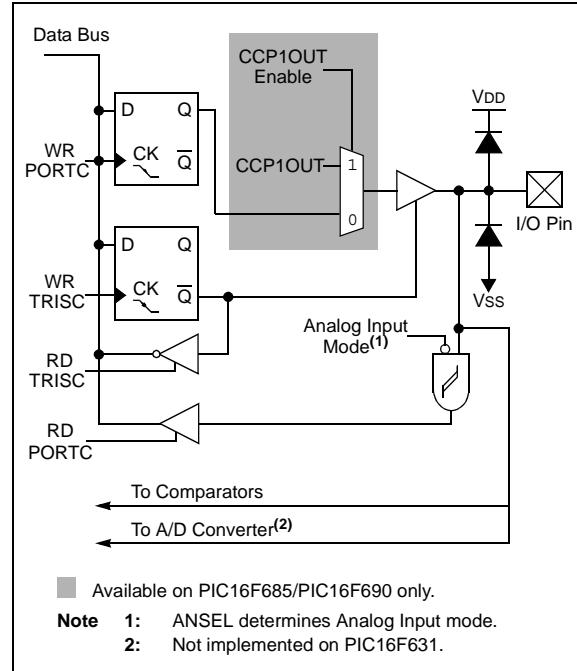
4.5.4 RC3/AN7/C12IN3-/P1C

The RC3/AN7/P1C⁽¹⁾ is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- a PWM output
- a PWM output
- an analog input to Comparator C1 or C2

Note 1: P1C is available on PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-12: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC2 AND RC3



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

4.5.5 RC4/C2OUT/P1B

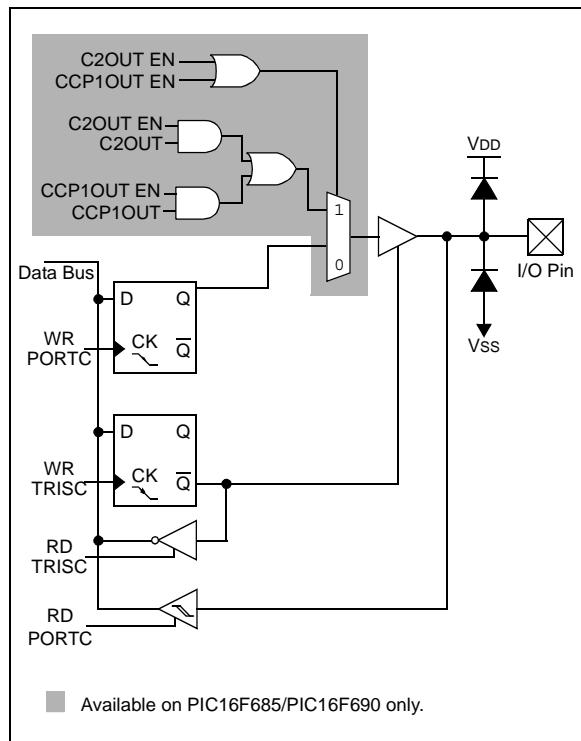
The RC4/C2OUT/P1B^(1, 2) is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a digital output from Comparator C2
- a PWM output

Note 1: Enabling both C2OUT and P1B will cause a conflict on RC4 and create unpredictable results. Therefore, if C2OUT is enabled, the ECCP+ can not be used in Half-Bridge or Full-Bridge mode and vice-versa.

2: P1B is available on PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-13: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC4



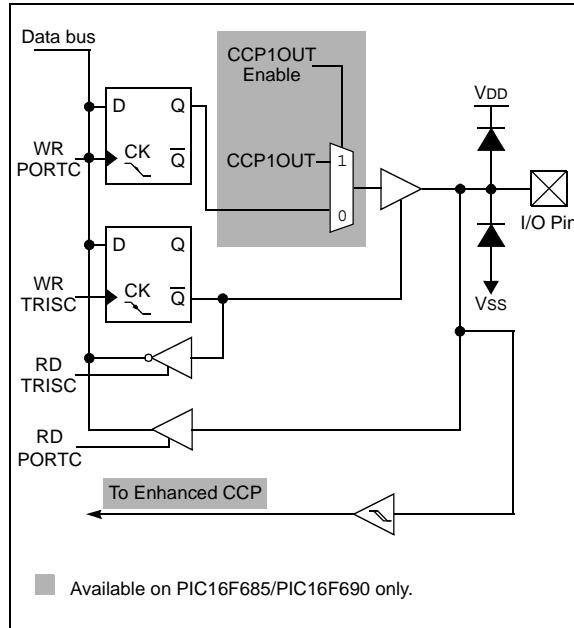
4.5.6 RC5/CCP1/P1A

The RC5/CCP1/P1A⁽¹⁾ is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a digital input/output for the Enhanced CCP
- a PWM output

Note 1: CCP1 and P1A are available on PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

FIGURE 4-14: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC5



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

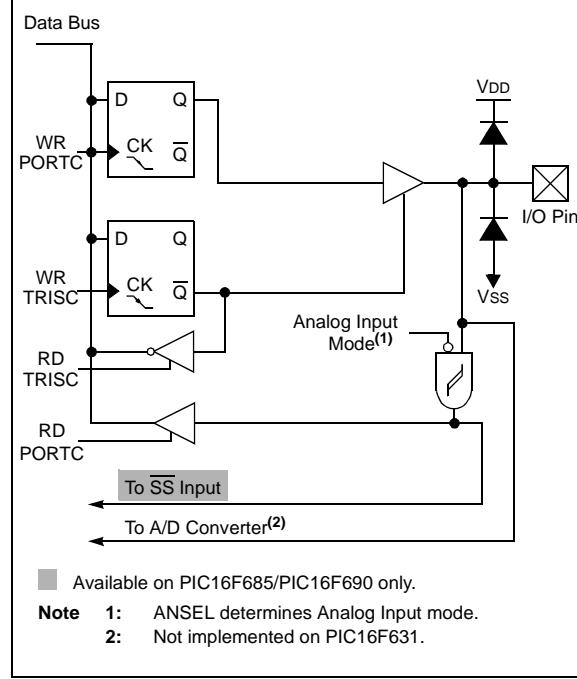
4.5.7 RC6/AN8/ \overline{SS}

The RC6/AN8/ \overline{SS} ^(1,2) is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- a slave select input

Note 1: SS is available on
PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.
2: AN8 is not implemented on PIC16F631.

FIGURE 4-15: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC6



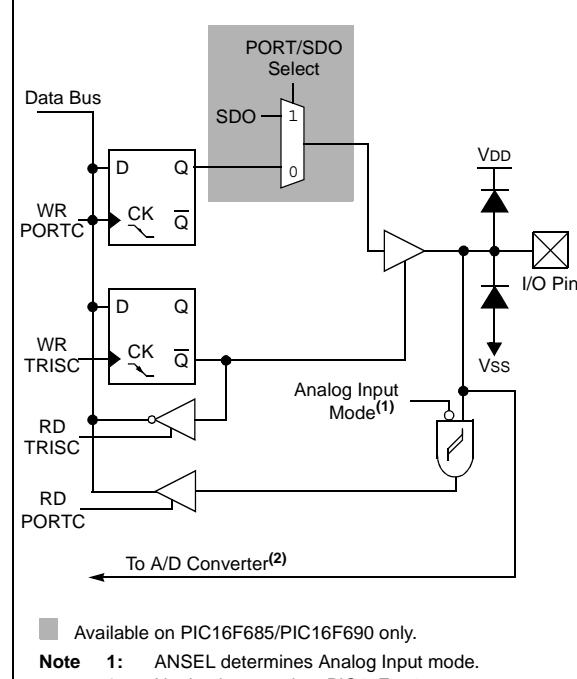
4.5.8 RC7/AN9/SDO

The RC7/AN9/SDO^(1,2) is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC (except PIC16F631)
- a serial data output

Note 1: SDO is available on PIC16F687/
PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.
2: AN9 is not implemented on PIC16F631.

FIGURE 4-16: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC7



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 4-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
ANSEL	ANS7	ANS6	ANS5	ANS4	ANS3	ANS2	ANS1	ANS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
ANSELH	—	—	—	—	ANS11	ANS10	ANS9	ANS8	---- 1111	---- 1111
CCP1CON ⁽²⁾	P1M1	P1M0	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2R	C2CH1	C2CH0	0000 -000	0000 -000
CM2CON1	MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC	00-- --10	00-- --10
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PSTRCON	—	—	—	STRSYNC	STRD	STRC	STRB	STRA	---0 0001	---0 0001
SRCON	SR1	SR0	C1SEN	C2REN	PULSS	PULSR	—	—	0000 00--	0000 00--
SSPCON ⁽¹⁾	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	1111 1111
VRCON	C1VREN	C2VREN	VRR	VP6EN	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTC.

Note 1: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

2: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

5.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module is an 8-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 8-bit timer/counter register (TMR0)
- 8-bit prescaler (shared with Watchdog Timer)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- Programmable external clock edge selection
- Interrupt on overflow

Figure 5-1 is a block diagram of the Timer0 module.

5.1 Timer0 Operation

When used as a timer, the Timer0 module can be used as either an 8-bit timer or an 8-bit counter.

5.1.1 8-BIT TIMER MODE

When used as a timer, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit of the OPTION register to '0'.

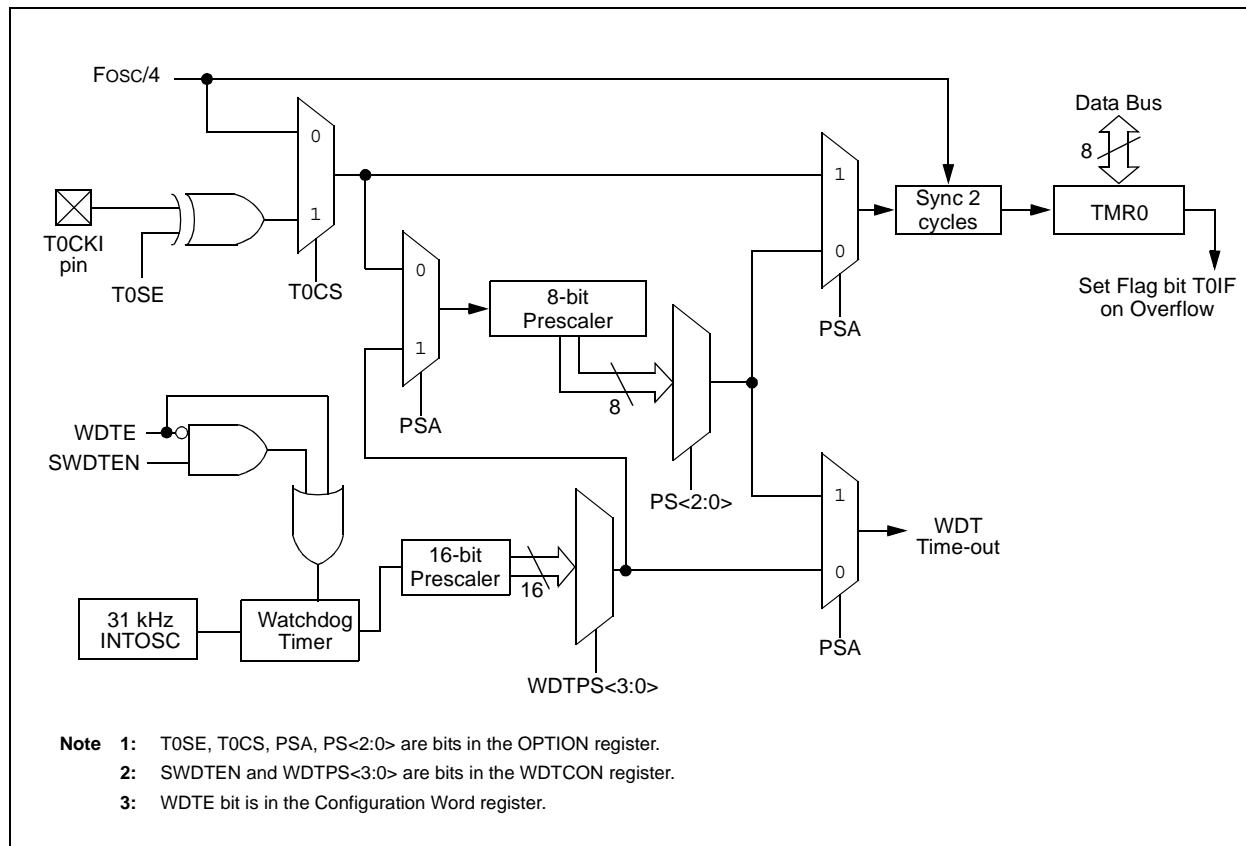
When TMR0 is written, the increment is inhibited for two instruction cycles immediately following the write.

Note: The value written to the TMR0 register can be adjusted, in order to account for the two instruction cycle delay when TMR0 is written.

5.1.2 8-BIT COUNTER MODE

When used as a counter, the Timer0 module will increment on every rising or falling edge of the T0CKI pin. The incrementing edge is determined by the T0SE bit of the OPTION register. Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit of the OPTION register to '1'.

FIGURE 5-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE TIMER0/WDT PRESCALER



5.1.3 SOFTWARE PROGRAMMABLE PRESCALER

A single software programmable prescaler is available for use with either Timer0 or the Watchdog Timer (WDT), but not both simultaneously. The prescaler assignment is controlled by the PSA bit of the OPTION register. To assign the prescaler to Timer0, the PSA bit must be cleared to a '0'.

There are 8 prescaler options for the Timer0 module ranging from 1:2 to 1:256. The prescale values are selectable via the PS<2:0> bits of the OPTION register. In order to have a 1:1 prescaler value for the Timer0 module, the prescaler must be assigned to the WDT module.

The prescaler is not readable or writable. When the prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register will clear the prescaler.

When the prescaler is assigned to WDT, a CLRWD_T instruction will clear the prescaler along with the WDT.

5.1.3.1 Switching Prescaler Between Timer0 and WDT Modules

As a result of having the prescaler assigned to either Timer0 or the WDT, it is possible to generate an unintended device Reset when switching prescaler values. When changing the prescaler assignment from Timer0 to the WDT module, the instruction sequence shown in Example 5-1, must be executed.

EXAMPLE 5-1: CHANGING PRESCALER (TIMER0 → WDT)

```
BANKSEL TMR0          ;  
CLRWDT           ;Clear WDT  
CLRF  TMR0          ;Clear TMR0 and  
                   ; prescaler  
BANKSEL OPTION_REG   ;  
BSF    OPTION_REG, PSA ;Select WDT  
CLRWDT           ;  
                   ;  
MOVLW b'11111000'   ;Mask prescaler  
ANDWF OPTION_REG,W   ; bits  
IORLW b'00000101'   ;Set WDT prescaler  
MOVWF OPTION_REG     ; to 1:32
```

When changing the prescaler assignment from the WDT to the Timer0 module, the following instruction sequence must be executed (see Example 5-2).

EXAMPLE 5-2: CHANGING PRESCALER (WDT → TIMER0)

```
CLRWDT           ;Clear WDT and  
                   ;prescaler  
BANKSEL OPTION_REG   ;  
MOVLW b'11110000'   ;Mask TMR0 select and  
ANDWF OPTION_REG,W   ; prescaler bits  
IORLW b'00000011'   ;Set prescale to 1:16  
MOVWF OPTION_REG     ;
```

5.1.4 TIMER0 INTERRUPT

Timer0 will generate an interrupt when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h. The T0IF interrupt flag bit of the INTCON register is set every time the TMR0 register overflows, regardless of whether or not the Timer0 interrupt is enabled. The T0IF bit must be cleared in software. The Timer0 interrupt enable is the T0IE bit of the INTCON register.

Note: The Timer0 interrupt cannot wake the processor from Sleep since the timer is frozen during Sleep.

5.1.5 USING TIMER0 WITH AN EXTERNAL CLOCK

When Timer0 is in Counter mode, the synchronization of the T0CKI input and the Timer0 register is accomplished by sampling the prescaler output on the Q2 and Q4 cycles of the internal phase clocks. Therefore, the high and low periods of the external clock source must meet the timing requirements as shown in **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 5-1: OPTION_REG: OPTION REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	RABPU: PORTA/PORPB Pull-up Enable bit 1 = PORTA/PORPB pull-ups are disabled 0 = PORTA/PORPB pull-ups are enabled by individual PORT latch values
bit 6	INTEDG: Interrupt Edge Select bit 1 = Interrupt on rising edge of INT pin 0 = Interrupt on falling edge of INT pin
bit 5	T0CS: TMR0 Clock Source Select bit 1 = Transition on T0CKI pin 0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (Fosc/4)
bit 4	T0SE: TMR0 Source Edge Select bit 1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin 0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin
bit 3	PSA: Prescaler Assignment bit 1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT 0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module
bit 2-0	PS<2:0>: Prescaler Rate Select bits

BIT VALUE	TMR0 RATE	WDT RATE
000	1 : 2	1 : 1
001	1 : 4	1 : 2
010	1 : 8	1 : 4
011	1 : 16	1 : 8
100	1 : 32	1 : 16
101	1 : 64	1 : 32
110	1 : 128	1 : 64
111	1 : 256	1 : 128

Note 1: A dedicated 16-bit WDT postscaler is available. See **Section 14.5 “Watchdog Timer (WDT)”** for more information.

TABLE 5-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TOIE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
OPTION_REG	RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	--11 1111

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer0 module.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

6.0 TIMER1 MODULE WITH GATE CONTROL

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- 3-bit prescaler
- Optional LP oscillator
- Synchronous or asynchronous operation
- Timer1 gate (count enable) via comparator or T1G pin
- Interrupt on overflow
- Wake-up on overflow (external clock, Asynchronous mode only)
- Time base for the Capture/Compare function (PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only)
- Special Event Trigger (with ECCP) (PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only)
- Comparator output synchronization to Timer1 clock

Figure 6-1 is a block diagram of the Timer1 module.

6.1 Timer1 Operation

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit incrementing counter which is accessed through the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. Writes to TMR1H or TMR1L directly update the counter.

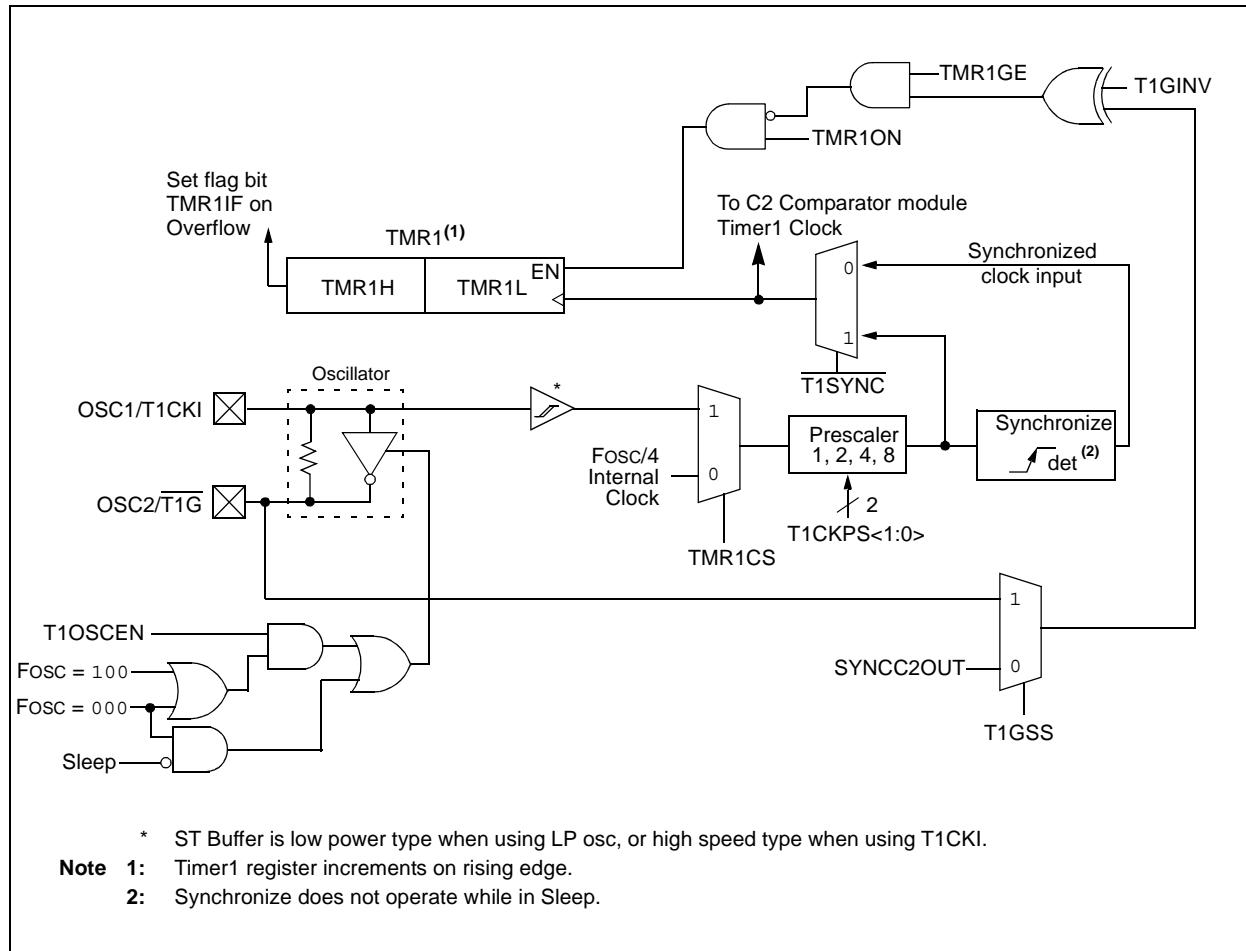
When used with an internal clock source, the module is a timer. When used with an external clock source, the module can be used as either a timer or counter.

6.2 Clock Source Selection

The TMR1CS bit of the T1CON register is used to select the clock source. When TMR1CS = 0, the clock source is Fosc/4. When TMR1CS = 1, the clock source is supplied externally.

Clock Source	T1OSCEN	FOSC Mode	TMR1CS
Fosc/4	x	xxx	0
T1CKI pin	0	xxx	1
T1LPOS C	1	LP or INTOSCIO	1

FIGURE 6-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



6.2.1 INTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the internal clock source is selected the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair will increment on multiples of Fosc as determined by the Timer1 prescaler.

6.2.2 EXTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the external clock source is selected, the Timer1 module may work as a timer or a counter.

When counting, Timer1 is incremented on the rising edge of the external clock input T1CKI. In addition, the Counter mode clock can be synchronized to the microcontroller system clock or run asynchronously.

If an external clock oscillator is needed (and the microcontroller is using the INTOSC without CLKOUT), Timer1 can use the LP oscillator as a clock source.

Note: In Counter mode, a falling edge must be registered by the counter prior to the first incrementing rising edge after any one or more of the following conditions:

- Timer1 enabled after POR reset
- Write to TMR1H or TMR1L
- Timer1 is disabled
- Timer1 is disabled (TMR1ON = 0) when T1CKI is high then Timer1 is enabled (TMR1ON=1) when T1CKI is low.

Note: See Figure 6-2

6.3 Timer1 Prescaler

Timer1 has four prescaler options allowing 1, 2, 4 or 8 divisions of the clock input. The T1CKPS bits of the T1CON register control the prescale counter. The prescale counter is not directly readable or writable; however, the prescaler counter is cleared upon a write to TMR1H or TMR1L.

6.4 Timer1 Oscillator

A low-power 32.768 kHz crystal oscillator is built-in between pins OSC1 (input) and OSC2 (amplifier output). The oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN control bit of the T1CON register. The oscillator will continue to run during Sleep.

The Timer1 oscillator is shared with the system LP oscillator. Thus, Timer1 can use this mode only when the primary system clock is derived from the internal oscillator or when the oscillator is in the LP mode. The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper oscillator start-up.

TRISA5 and TRISA4 bits are set when the Timer1 oscillator is enabled. RA5 and RA4 bits read as '0' and TRISA5 and TRISA4 bits read as '1'.

Note: The oscillator requires a start-up and stabilization time before use. Thus, T1OSCEN should be set and a suitable delay observed prior to enabling Timer1.

6.5 Timer1 Operation in Asynchronous Counter Mode

If control bit T1SYNC of the T1CON register is set, the external clock input is not synchronized. The timer increments asynchronously to the internal phase clocks. If external clock source is selected then the timer will continue to run during Sleep and can generate an interrupt on overflow, which will wake-up the processor. However, special precautions in software are needed to read/write the timer (see **Section 6.5.1 “Reading and Writing Timer1 in Asynchronous Counter Mode”**).

Note: When switching from synchronous to asynchronous operation, it is possible to skip an increment. When switching from asynchronous to synchronous operation, it is possible to produce an additional increment.

6.5.1 READING AND WRITING TIMER1 IN ASYNCHRONOUS COUNTER MODE

Reading TMR1H or TMR1L while the timer is running from an external asynchronous clock will ensure a valid read (taken care of in hardware). However, the user should keep in mind that reading the 16-bit timer in two 8-bit values itself, poses certain problems, since the timer may overflow between the reads.

For writes, it is recommended that the user simply stop the timer and write the desired values. A write contention may occur by writing to the timer registers, while the register is incrementing. This may produce an unpredictable value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair.

6.6 Timer1 Gate

Timer1 gate source is software configurable to be the T1G pin or the output of Comparator C2. This allows the device to directly time external events using T1G or analog events using Comparator C2. See the CM2CON1 register (Register 8-3) for selecting the Timer1 gate source. This feature can simplify the software for a Delta-Sigma A/D converter and many other applications. For more information on Delta-Sigma A/D converters, see the Microchip web site (www.microchip.com).

Note: TMR1GE bit of the T1CON register must be set to use either T1G or C2OUT as the Timer1 gate source. See the CM2CON1 register (Register 8-3) for more information on selecting the Timer1 gate source.

Timer1 gate can be inverted using the T1GINV bit of the T1CON register, whether it originates from the T1G pin or Comparator C2 output. This configures Timer1 to measure either the active-high or active-low time between events.

6.7 Timer1 Interrupt

The Timer1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. When Timer1 rolls over, the Timer1 interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set. To enable the interrupt on rollover, you must set these bits:

- TMR1ON bit of the T1CON register
- TMR1IE bit of the PIE1 register
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register
- GIE bit of the INTCON register

The interrupt is cleared by clearing the TMR1IF bit in the Interrupt Service Routine.

Note: The TMR1H:TMR1L register pair and the TMR1IF bit should be cleared before enabling interrupts.

6.8 Timer1 Operation During Sleep

Timer1 can only operate during Sleep when setup in Asynchronous Counter mode. In this mode, an external crystal or clock source can be used to increment the counter. To set up the timer to wake the device:

- TMR1ON bit of the T1CON register must be set
- TMR1IE bit of the PIE1 register must be set
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register must be set
- T1SYNC bit of the T1CON register must be set
- TMR1CS bit of the T1CON register must be set
- T1OSCEN bit of the T1CON register (can be set)

The device will wake-up on an overflow and execute the next instructions. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is set, the device will call the Interrupt Service Routine (0004h).

6.9 ECCP Capture/Compare Time Base

The ECCP module uses the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair as the time base when operating in Capture or Compare mode.

In Capture mode, the value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair is copied into the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair on a configured event.

In Compare mode, an event is triggered when the value CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair matches the value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. This event can be a Special Event Trigger.

For more information, see **Section 11.0 “Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM Module”**.

6.10 ECCP Special Event Trigger

When the ECCP is configured to trigger a special event, the trigger will clear the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. This special event does not cause a Timer1 interrupt. The ECCP module may still be configured to generate a ECCP interrupt.

In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair becomes the period register for Timer1.

Timer1 should be synchronized to the FOSC to utilize the Special Event Trigger. Asynchronous operation of Timer1 can cause a Special Event Trigger to be missed.

In the event that a write to TMR1H or TMR1L coincides with a Special Event Trigger from the ECCP, the write will take precedence.

For more information, see **Section 11.2.4 “Special Event Trigger”**.

6.11 Comparator Synchronization

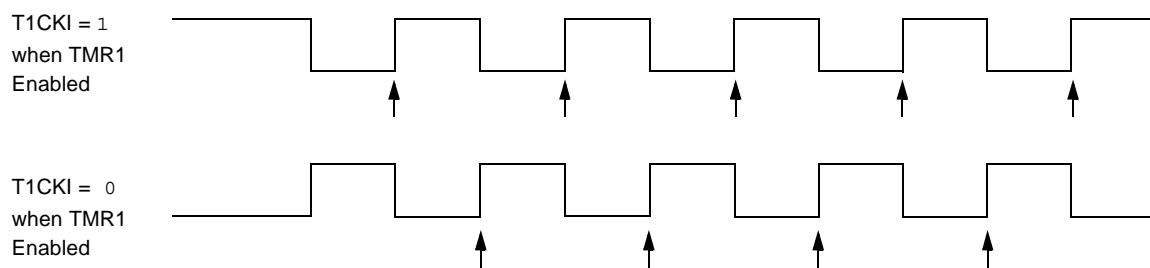
The same clock used to increment Timer1 can also be used to synchronize the comparator output. This feature is enabled in the Comparator module.

When using the comparator for Timer1 gate, the comparator output should be synchronized to Timer1. This ensures Timer1 does not miss an increment if the comparator changes.

For more information, see **Section 8.8.2 “Synchronizing Comparator C2 output to Timer1”**.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 6-2: TIMER1 INCREMENTING EDGE



Note 1: Arrows indicate counter increments.

2: In Counter mode, a falling edge must be registered by the counter prior to the first incrementing rising edge of the clock.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

6.12 Timer1 Control Register

The Timer1 Control register (T1CON), shown in Register 6-1, is used to control Timer1 and select the various features of the Timer1 module.

REGISTER 6-1: T1CON: TIMER 1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
T1GINV ⁽¹⁾	TMR1GE ⁽²⁾	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	<u>T1SYNC</u>	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7

T1GINV: Timer1 Gate Invert bit⁽¹⁾

1 = Timer1 gate is active high (Timer1 counts when gate is high)

0 = Timer1 gate is active low (Timer1 counts when gate is low)

bit 6

TMR1GE: Timer1 Gate Enable bit⁽²⁾

If TMR1ON = 0:

This bit is ignored

If TMR1ON = 1:

1 = Timer1 is on if Timer1 gate is not active

0 = Timer1 is on

bit 5-4

T1CKPS<1:0>: Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits

11 = 1:8 Prescale Value

10 = 1:4 Prescale Value

01 = 1:2 Prescale Value

00 = 1:1 Prescale Value

bit 3

T1OSCEN: LP Oscillator Enable Control bit

If INTOSC without CLKOUT oscillator is active:

1 = LP oscillator is enabled for Timer1 clock

0 = LP oscillator is off

Else:

This bit is ignored

bit 2

T1SYNC: Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit

TMR1CS = 1:

1 = Do not synchronize external clock input

0 = Synchronize external clock input

TMR1CS = 0:

This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock

bit 1

TMR1CS: Timer1 Clock Source Select bit

1 = External clock from T1CKI pin (on the rising edge)

0 = Internal clock (Fosc/4)

bit 0

TMR1ON: Timer1 On bit

1 = Enables Timer1

0 = Stops Timer1

Note 1: T1GINV bit inverts the Timer1 gate logic, regardless of source.

2: TMR1GE bit must be set to use either T1G pin or C2OUT, as selected by the T1GSS bit of the CM2CON1 register, as a Timer1 gate source.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 6-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
CM2CON1	MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC	---- --10	---- --10
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register							xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register							xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	
T1CON	T1GINV	TMR1GE	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

7.0 TIMER2 MODULE

The Timer2 module is an eight-bit timer with the following features:

- 8-bit timer register (TMR2)
- 8-bit period register (PR2)
- Interrupt on TMR2 match with PR2
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)

See Figure 7-1 for a block diagram of Timer2.

7.1 Timer2 Operation

The clock input to the Timer2 module is the system instruction clock ($\text{Fosc}/4$). The clock is fed into the Timer2 prescaler, which has prescale options of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16. The output of the prescaler is then used to increment the TMR2 register.

The values of TMR2 and PR2 are constantly compared to determine when they match. TMR2 will increment from 00h until it matches the value in PR2. When a match occurs, two things happen:

- TMR2 is reset to 00h on the next increment cycle.
- The Timer2 postscaler is incremented

The match output of the Timer2/PR2 comparator is fed into the Timer2 postscaler. The postscaler has postscale options of 1:1 to 1:16 inclusive. The output of the Timer2 postscaler is used to set the TMR2IF interrupt flag bit in the PIR1 register.

The TMR2 and PR2 registers are both fully readable and writable. On any Reset, the TMR2 register is set to 00h and the PR2 register is set to FFh.

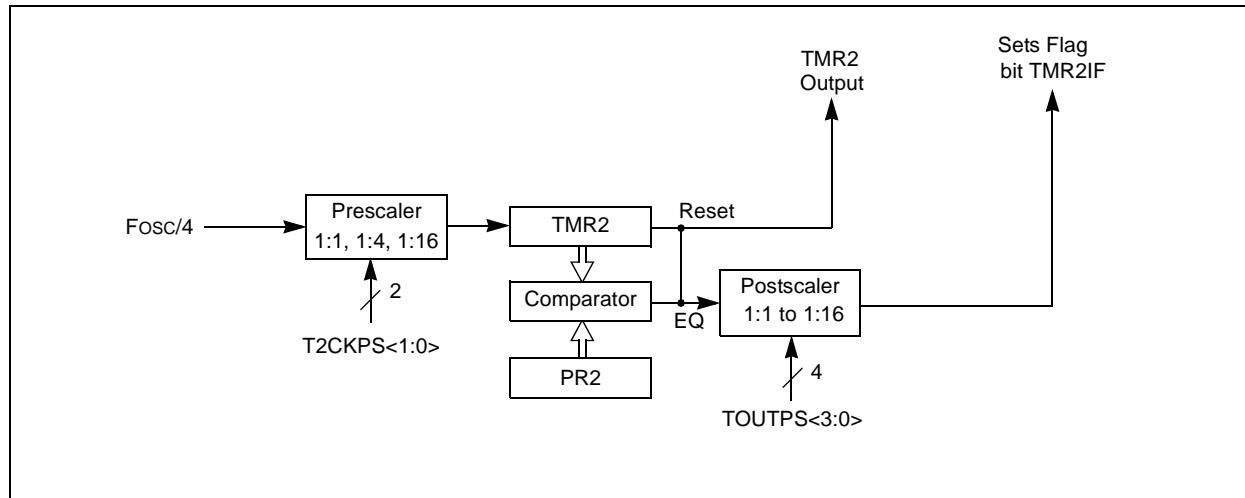
Timer2 is turned on by setting the TMR2ON bit in the T2CON register to a '1'. Timer2 is turned off by clearing the TMR2ON bit to a '0'.

The Timer2 prescaler is controlled by the T2CKPS bits in the T2CON register. The Timer2 postscaler is controlled by the TOUTPS bits in the T2CON register. The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when:

- A write to TMR2 occurs.
- A write to T2CON occurs.
- Any device Reset occurs (Power-on Reset, MCLR Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset or Brown-out Reset).

Note: TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

FIGURE 7-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 7-1: T2CON: TIMER 2 CONTROL REGISTER⁽¹⁾

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **TOUTPS<3:0>:** Timer2 Output Postscaler Select bits

0000 = 1:1 Postscaler

0001 = 1:2 Postscaler

0010 = 1:3 Postscaler

0011 = 1:4 Postscaler

0100 = 1:5 Postscaler

0101 = 1:6 Postscaler

0110 = 1:7 Postscaler

0111 = 1:8 Postscaler

1000 = 1:9 Postscaler

1001 = 1:10 Postscaler

1010 = 1:11 Postscaler

1011 = 1:12 Postscaler

1100 = 1:13 Postscaler

1101 = 1:14 Postscaler

1110 = 1:15 Postscaler

1111 = 1:16 Postscaler

bit 2 **TMR2ON:** Timer2 On bit

1 = Timer2 is on

0 = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS<1:0>:** Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits

00 = Prescaler is 1

01 = Prescaler is 4

1x = Prescaler is 16

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

TABLE 7-1: SUMMARY OF ASSOCIATED TIMER2⁽¹⁾ REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Module Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR2	Holding Register for the 8-bit TMR2 Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Timer2 module.

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only.

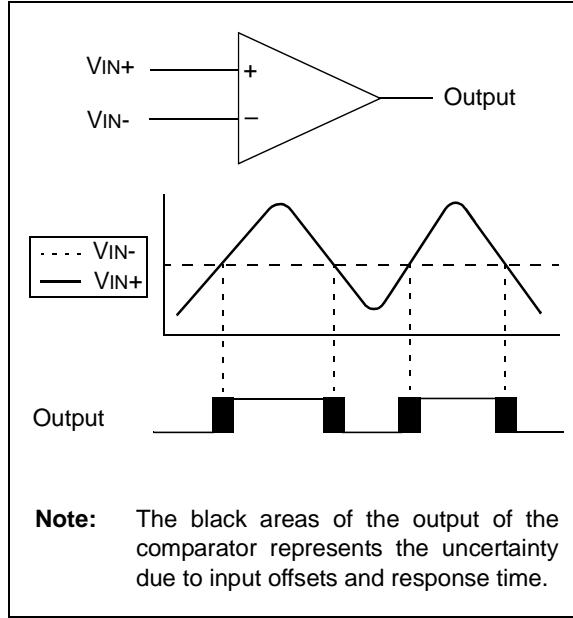
8.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

Comparators are used to interface analog circuits to a digital circuit by comparing two analog voltages and providing a digital indication of their relative magnitudes. The comparators are very useful mixed signal building blocks because they provide analog functionality independent of program execution. The Analog Comparator module includes the following features:

- Independent comparator control
- Programmable input selection
- Comparator output is available internally/externally
- Programmable output polarity
- Interrupt-on-change
- Wake-up from Sleep
- PWM shutdown
- Timer1 gate (count enable)
- Output synchronization to Timer1 clock input
- SR Latch
- Programmable and fixed voltage reference

Note: Only Comparator C2 can be linked to Timer1.

FIGURE 8-1: SINGLE COMPARATOR



8.1 Comparator Overview

A single comparator is shown in Figure 8-1 along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog voltage at V_{IN+} is less than the analog voltage at V_{IN-} , the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog voltage at V_{IN+} is greater than the analog voltage at V_{IN-} , the output of the comparator is a digital high level.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 8-2: COMPARATOR C1 SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM

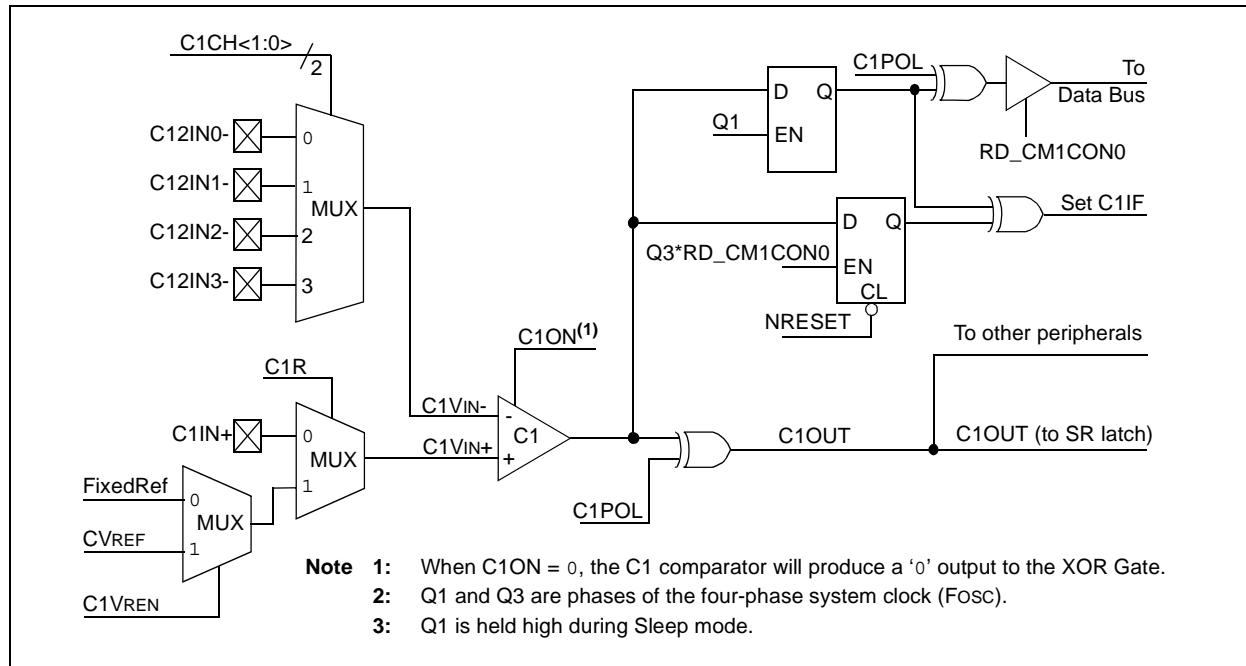
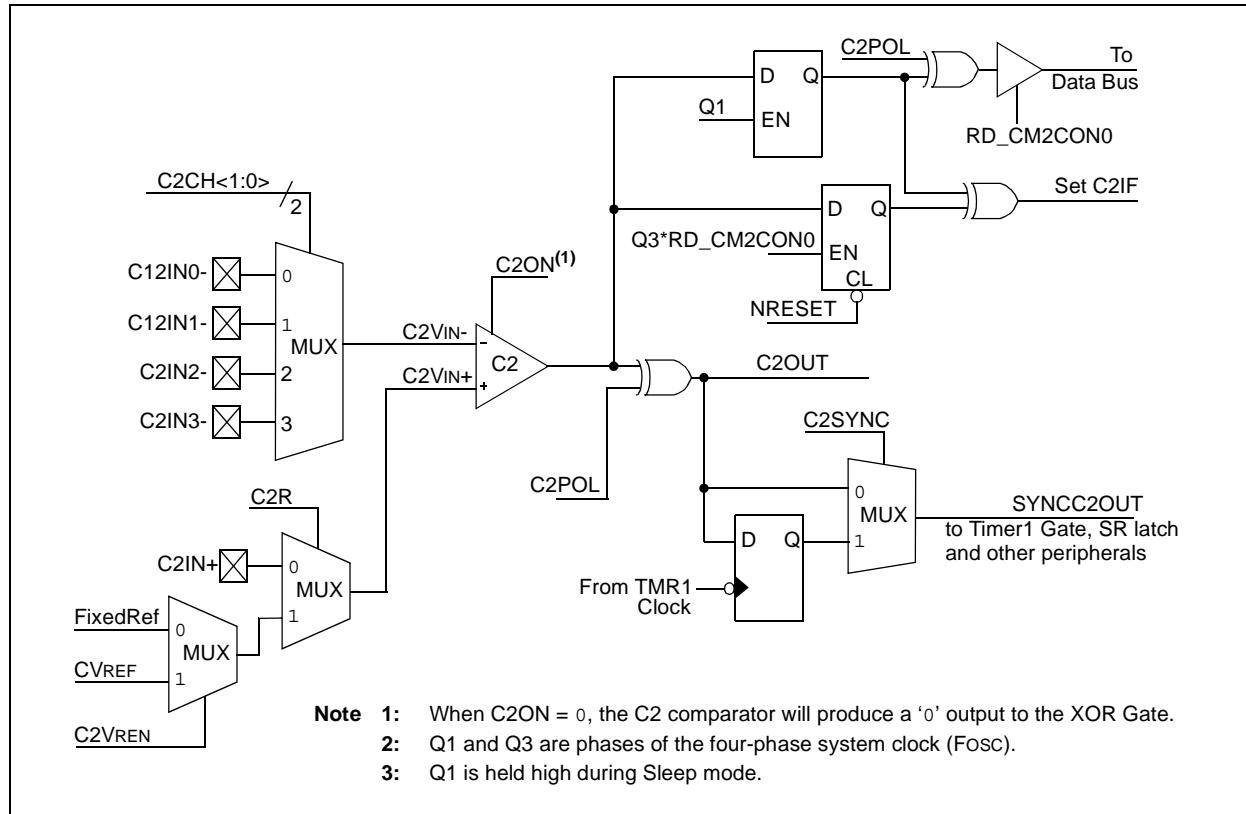


FIGURE 8-3: COMPARATOR C2 SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM



8.2 Comparator Control

Each comparator has a separate control and Configuration register: CM1CON0 for Comparator C1 and CM2CON0 for Comparator C2. In addition, Comparator C2 has a second control register, CM2CON1, for controlling the interaction with Timer1 and simultaneous reading of both comparator outputs.

The CM1CON0 and CM2CON0 registers (see Registers 8-1 and 8-2, respectively) contain the control and Status bits for the following:

- Enable
- Input selection
- Reference selection
- Output selection
- Output polarity

8.2.1 COMPARATOR ENABLE

Setting the CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register enables the comparator for operation. Clearing the CxON bit disables the comparator resulting in minimum current consumption.

8.2.2 COMPARATOR INPUT SELECTION

The CxCH<1:0> bits of the CMxCON0 register direct one of four analog input pins to the comparator inverting input.

Note: To use CxIN+ and C12INx- pins as analog inputs, the appropriate bits must be set in the ANSEL register and the corresponding TRIS bits must also be set to disable the output drivers.

8.2.3 COMPARATOR REFERENCE SELECTION

Setting the CxR bit of the CMxCON0 register directs an internal voltage reference or an analog input pin to the non-inverting input of the comparator. See **Section 8.9 “Comparator SR Latch”** for more information on the Internal Voltage Reference module.

8.2.4 COMPARATOR OUTPUT SELECTION

The output of the comparator can be monitored by reading either the CxOUT bit of the CMxCON0 register or the MCxOUT bit of the CM2CON1 register. In order to make the output available for an external connection, the following conditions must be true:

- CxOE bit of the CMxCON0 register must be set
- Corresponding TRIS bit must be cleared
- CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register must be set

Note 1: The CxOE bit overrides the PORT data latch. Setting the CxON has no impact on the port override.

2: The internal output of the comparator is latched with each instruction cycle. Unless otherwise specified, external outputs are not latched.

8.2.5 COMPARATOR OUTPUT POLARITY

Inverting the output of the comparator is functionally equivalent to swapping the comparator inputs. The polarity of the comparator output can be inverted by setting the CxPOL bit of the CMxCON0 register. Clearing the CxPOL bit results in a non-inverted output.

Table 8-1 shows the output state versus input conditions, including polarity control.

TABLE 8-1: COMPARATOR OUTPUT STATE VS. INPUT CONDITIONS

Input Condition	CxPOL	CxOUT
CxVIN- > CxVIN+	0	0
CxVIN- < CxVIN+	0	1
CxVIN- > CxVIN+	1	1
CxVIN- < CxVIN+	1	0

8.3 Comparator Response Time

The comparator output is indeterminate for a period of time after the change of an input source or the selection of a new reference voltage. This period is referred to as the response time. The response time of the comparator differs from the settling time of the voltage reference. Therefore, both of these times must be considered when determining the total response time to a comparator input change. See the Comparator and Voltage Reference Specifications in **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for more details.

8.4 Comparator Interrupt Operation

The comparator interrupt flag can be set whenever there is a change in the output value of the comparator. Changes are recognized by means of a mismatch circuit which consists of two latches and an exclusive-or gate (see Figure 8-2 and Figure 8-3). One latch is updated with the comparator output level when the CMxCON0 register is read. This latch retains the value until the next read of the CMxCON0 register or the occurrence of a Reset. The other latch of the mismatch circuit is updated on every Q1 system clock. A mismatch condition will occur when a comparator output change is clocked through the second latch on the Q1 clock cycle. At this point the two mismatch latches have opposite output levels which is detected by the exclusive-or gate and fed to the interrupt circuitry. The mismatch condition persists until either the CMxCON0 register is read or the comparator output returns to the previous state.

- Note 1:** A write operation to the CMxCON0 register will also clear the mismatch condition because all writes include a read operation at the beginning of the write cycle.
- 2:** Comparator interrupts will operate correctly regardless of the state of CxOE.

The comparator interrupt is set by the mismatch edge and not the mismatch level. This means that the interrupt flag can be reset without the additional step of reading or writing the CMxCON0 register to clear the mismatch registers. When the mismatch registers are cleared, an interrupt will occur upon the comparator's return to the previous state, otherwise no interrupt will be generated.

Software will need to maintain information about the status of the comparator output, as read from the CMxCON0 register, or CM2CON1 register, to determine the actual change that has occurred.

The CxIF bit of the PIR1 register is the comparator interrupt flag. This bit must be reset in software by clearing it to '0'. Since it is also possible to write a '1' to this register, an interrupt can be generated.

The CxIE bit of the PIE1 register and the PEIE and GIE bits of the INTCON register must all be set to enable comparator interrupts. If any of these bits are cleared, the interrupt is not enabled, although the CxIF bit of the PIR1 register will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

FIGURE 8-4: COMPARATOR INTERRUPT TIMING W/O CMxCON0 READ

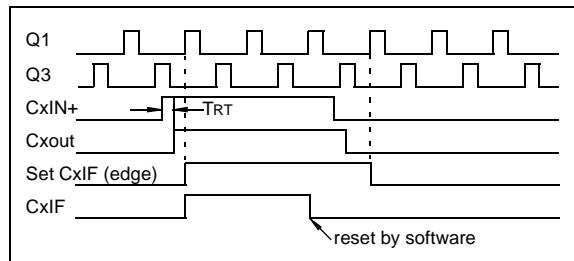
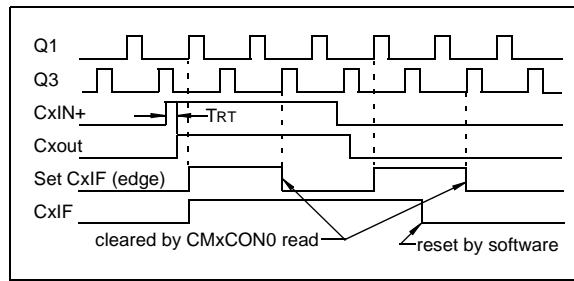


FIGURE 8-5: COMPARATOR INTERRUPT TIMING WITH CMxCON0 READ



- Note 1:** If a change in the CMxCON0 register (CxOUT) should occur when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CxIF of the PIR1 register interrupt flag may not get set.

- 2:** When either comparator is first enabled, bias circuitry in the Comparator module may cause an invalid output from the comparator until the bias circuitry is stable. Allow about 1 µs for bias settling then clear the mismatch condition and interrupt flags before enabling comparator interrupts.

8.5 Operation During Sleep

The comparator, if enabled before entering Sleep mode, remains active during Sleep. The additional current consumed by the comparator is shown separately in the **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**. If the comparator is not used to wake the device, power consumption can be minimized while in Sleep mode by turning off the comparator. Each comparator is turned off by clearing the CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register.

A change to the comparator output can wake-up the device from Sleep. To enable the comparator to wake the device from Sleep, the CxIE bit of the PIE1 register and the PEIE bit of the INTCON register must be set. The instruction following the Sleep instruction always executes following a wake from Sleep. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is also set, the device will then execute the Interrupt Service Routine.

8.6 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces the CMxCON0 and CM2CON1 registers to their Reset states. This forces both comparators and the voltage references to their OFF states.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 8-1: CM1CON0: COMPARATOR C1 CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1R	C1CH1	C1CH0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **C1ON:** Comparator C1 Enable bit

- 1 = Comparator C1 is enabled
- 0 = Comparator C1 is disabled

bit 6 **C1OUT:** Comparator C1 Output bitIf C1POL = 1 (inverted polarity):

- C1OUT = 0 when C1VIN+ > C1VIN-
- C1OUT = 1 when C1VIN+ < C1VIN-

If C1POL = 0 (non-inverted polarity):

- C1OUT = 1 when C1VIN+ > C1VIN-
- C1OUT = 0 when C1VIN+ < C1VIN-

bit 5 **C1OE:** Comparator C1 Output Enable bit

- 1 = C1OUT is present on the C1OUT pin⁽¹⁾
- 0 = C1OUT is internal only

bit 4 **C1POL:** Comparator C1 Output Polarity Select bit

- 1 = C1OUT logic is inverted
- 0 = C1OUT logic is not inverted

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'bit 2 **C1R:** Comparator C1 Reference Select bit (non-inverting input)

- 1 = C1VIN+ connects to C1VREF output
- 0 = C1VIN+ connects to C1IN+ pin

bit 1-0 **C1CH<1:0>:** Comparator C1 Channel Select bit

- 00 = C1VIN- of C1 connects to C12IN0- pin
- 01 = C1VIN- of C1 connects to C12IN1- pin
- 10 = C1VIN- of C1 connects to C12IN2- pin
- 11 = C1VIN- of C1 connects to C12IN3- pin

Note 1: Comparator output requires the following three conditions: C1OE = 1, C1ON = 1 and corresponding PORT TRIS bit = 0.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 8-2: CM2CON0: COMPARATOR C2 CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2R	C2CH1	C2CH0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	C2ON: Comparator C2 Enable bit 1 = Comparator C2 is enabled 0 = Comparator C2 is disabled
bit 6	C2OUT: Comparator C2 Output bit <u>If C2POL = 1 (inverted polarity):</u> C2OUT = 0 when C2VIN+ > C2VIN- C2OUT = 1 when C2VIN+ < C2VIN- <u>If C2POL = 0 (non-inverted polarity):</u> C2OUT = 1 when C2VIN+ > C2VIN- C2OUT = 0 when C2VIN+ < C2VIN-
bit 5	C2OE: Comparator C2 Output Enable bit 1 = C2OUT is present on C2OUT pin ⁽¹⁾ 0 = C2OUT is internal only
bit 4	C1POL: Comparator C1 Output Polarity Select bit 1 = C1OUT logic is inverted 0 = C1OUT logic is not inverted
bit 3	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 2	C2R: Comparator C2 Reference Select bits (non-inverting input) 1 = C2VIN+ connects to C2VREF 0 = C2VIN+ connects to C2IN+ pin
bit 1-0	C2CH<1:0>: Comparator C2 Channel Select bits 00 = C2VIN- of C2 connects to C12IN0- pin 01 = C2VIN- of C2 connects to C12IN1- pin 10 = C2VIN- of C2 connects to C12IN2- pin 11 = C2VIN- of C2 connects to C12IN3- pin

Note 1: Comparator output requires the following three conditions: C2OE = 1, C2ON = 1 and corresponding PORT TRIS bit = 0.

8.7 Analog Input Connection Considerations

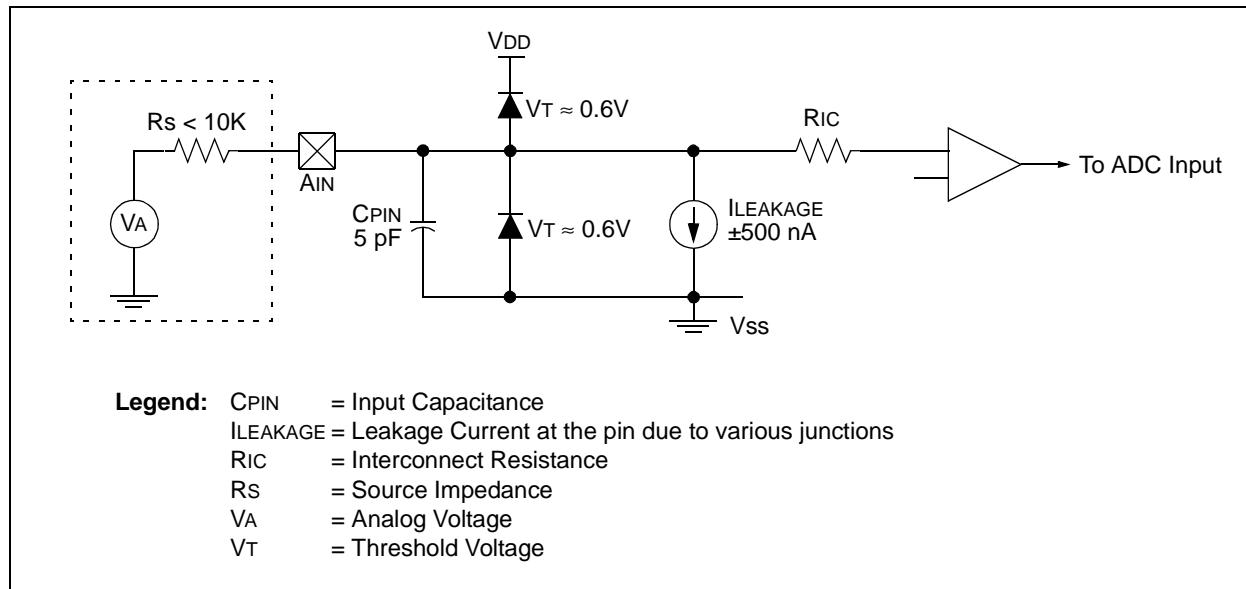
A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 8-6. Since the analog input pins share their connection with a digital input, they have reverse biased ESD protection diodes to VDD and Vss. The analog input, therefore, must be between Vss and VDD. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up may occur.

A maximum source impedance of $10\text{ k}\Omega$ is recommended for the analog sources. Also, any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current to minimize inaccuracies introduced.

Note 1: When reading a PORT register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a '0'. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert as an analog input, according to the input specification.

2: Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input, may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

FIGURE 8-6: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



8.8 Additional Comparator Features

There are three additional comparator features:

- Timer1 count enable (gate)
- Synchronizing output with Timer1
- Simultaneous read of comparator outputs

8.8.1 COMPARATOR C2 GATING TIMER1

This feature can be used to time the duration or interval of analog events. Clearing the T1GSS bit of the CM2CON1 register will enable Timer1 to increment based on the output of Comparator C2. This requires that Timer1 is on and gating is enabled. See **Section 6.0 “Timer1 Module with Gate Control”** for details.

It is recommended to synchronize the comparator with Timer1 by setting the C2SYNC bit when the comparator is used as the Timer1 gate source. This ensures Timer1 does not miss an increment if the comparator changes during an increment.

8.8.2 SYNCHRONIZING COMPARATOR C2 OUTPUT TO TIMER1

The Comparator C2 output can be synchronized with Timer1 by setting the C2SYNC bit of the CM2CON1 register. When enabled, the C2 output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 clock source. If a prescaler is used with Timer1, the comparator output is latched after the prescaling function. To prevent a race condition, the comparator output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 clock source and Timer1 increments on the rising edge of its clock source. See the Comparator Block Diagram (Figure 8-3) and the Timer1 Block Diagram (Figure 6-1) for more information.

8.8.3 SIMULTANEOUS COMPARATOR OUTPUT READ

The MC1OUT and MC2OUT bits of the CM2CON1 register are mirror copies of both comparator outputs. The ability to read both outputs simultaneously from a single register eliminates the timing skew of reading separate registers.

Note 1: Obtaining the status of C1OUT or C2OUT by reading CM2CON1 does not affect the comparator interrupt mismatch registers.

REGISTER 8-3: CM2CON1: COMPARATOR C2 CONTROL REGISTER 1

R-0	R-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-0
MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’

-n = Value at POR

‘1’ = Bit is set

‘0’ = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **MC1OUT:** Mirror Copy of C1OUT bit

bit 6 **MC2OUT:** Mirror Copy of C2OUT bit

bit 5-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **T1GSS:** Timer1 Gate Source Select bit⁽¹⁾

1 = Timer1 gate source is $\overline{T1G}$

0 = Timer1 gate source is SYNCC2OUT.

bit 0 **C2SYNC:** Comparator C2 Output Synchronization bit⁽²⁾

1 = Output is synchronous to falling edge of Timer1 clock

0 = Output is asynchronous

Note 1: Refer to **Section 6.6 “Timer1 Gate”**.

2: Refer to Figure 8-3.

8.9 Comparator SR Latch

The SR Latch module provides additional control of the comparator outputs. The module consists of a single SR latch and output multiplexers. The SR latch can be set, reset or toggled by the comparator outputs. The SR latch may also be set or reset, independent of comparator output, by control bits in the SRCON control register. The SR latch output multiplexers select whether the latch outputs or the comparator outputs are directed to the I/O port logic for eventual output to a pin.

8.9.1 LATCH OPERATION

The latch is a Set-Reset latch that does not depend on a clock source. Each of the Set and Reset inputs are active-high. Each latch input is connected to a comparator output and a software controlled pulse generator. The latch can be set by C1OUT or the PULSS bit of the SRCON register. The latch can be reset by C2OUT or the PULSR bit of the SRCON register. The latch is reset-dominant, therefore, if both Set and Reset inputs are high, the latch will go to the Reset state. Both the PULSS and PULSR bits are self resetting which means that a single write to either of the bits is all that is necessary to complete a latch set or reset operation.

8.9.2 LATCH OUTPUT

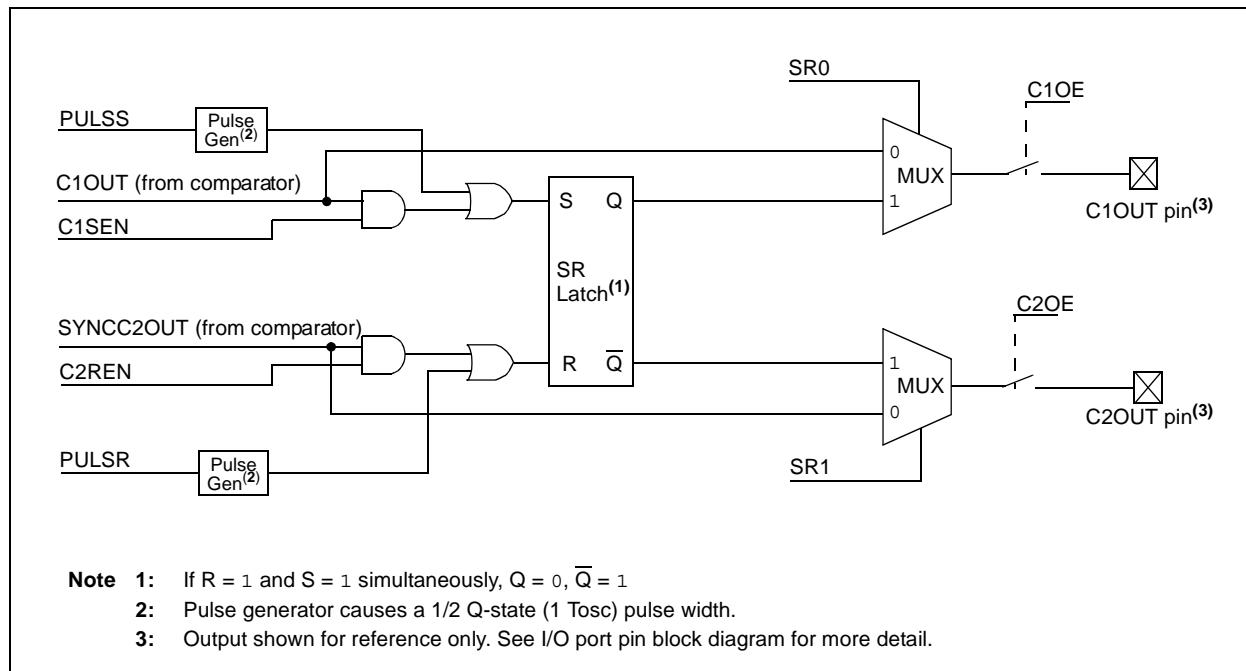
The SR<1:0> bits of the SRCON register control the latch output multiplexers and determine four possible output configurations. In these four configurations, the CxOUT I/O port logic is connected to:

- C1OUT and C2OUT
- C1OUT and SR latch \bar{Q}
- C2OUT and SR latch Q
- SR latch Q and \bar{Q}

After any Reset, the default output configuration is the unlatched C1OUT and C2OUT mode. This maintains compatibility with devices that do not have the SR latch feature.

The applicable TRIS bits of the corresponding ports must be cleared to enable the port pin output drivers. Additionally, the CxOE comparator output enable bits of the CMxCON0 registers must be set in order to make the comparator or latch outputs available on the output pins. The latch configuration enable states are completely independent of the enable states for the comparators.

FIGURE 8-7: SR LATCH SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 8-4: SRCON: SR LATCH CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0	U-0	U-0
SR1 ⁽²⁾	SR0 ⁽²⁾	C1SEN	C2REN	PULSS	PULSR	—	—
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:	S = Bit is set only		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	SR1: SR Latch Configuration bit ⁽²⁾ 1 = C2OUT pin is the latch \bar{Q} output 0 = C2OUT pin is the C2 comparator output
bit 6	SR0: SR Latch Configuration bits ⁽²⁾ 1 = C1OUT pin is the latch Q output 0 = C1OUT pin is the Comparator C1 output
bit 5	C1SEN: C1 Set Enable bit 1 = C1 comparator output sets SR latch 0 = C1 comparator output has no effect on SR latch
bit 4	C2REN: C2 Reset Enable bit 1 = C2 comparator output resets SR latch 0 = C2 comparator output has no effect on SR latch
bit 3	PULSS: Pulse the SET Input of the SR Latch bit 1 = Triggers pulse generator to set SR latch. Bit is immediately reset by hardware. 0 = Does not trigger pulse generator
bit 2	PULSR: Pulse the Reset Input of the SR Latch bit 1 = Triggers pulse generator to reset SR latch. Bit is immediately reset by hardware. 0 = Does not trigger pulse generator
bit 1-0	Unimplemented: Read as '0'

- Note 1:** The CxOUT bit in the CMxCON0 register will always reflect the actual comparator output (not the level on the pin), regardless of the SR latch operation.
- 2:** To enable an SR latch output to the pin, the appropriate CxOE and TRIS bits must be properly configured.

8.10 Comparator Voltage Reference

The comparator voltage reference module provides an internally generated voltage reference for the comparators. The following features are available:

- Independent from Comparator operation
- Two 16-level voltage ranges
- Output clamped to Vss
- Ratiometric with VDD
- Fixed Reference (0.6)

The VRCON register (Register 8-5) controls the Voltage Reference module shown in Figure 8-8.

8.10.1 INDEPENDENT OPERATION

The comparator voltage reference is independent of the comparator configuration. Setting the VREN bit of the VRCON register will enable the voltage reference.

8.10.2 OUTPUT VOLTAGE SELECTION

The CVREF voltage reference has 2 ranges with 16 voltage levels in each range. Range selection is controlled by the VRR bit of the VRCON register. The 16 levels are set with the VR<3:0> bits of the VRCON register.

The CVREF output voltage is determined by the following equations:

EQUATION 8-1: CVREF OUTPUT VOLTAGE

$$VRR = 1 \text{ (low range):}$$

$$CVREF = (VR<3:0>/24) \times VDD$$

$$VRR = 0 \text{ (high range):}$$

$$CVREF = (VDD/4) + (VR<3:0> \times VDD/32)$$

The full range of Vss to VDD cannot be realized due to the construction of the module. See Figure 8-8.

8.10.3 OUTPUT CLAMPED TO Vss

The CVREF output voltage can be set to Vss with no power consumption by configuring VRCON as follows:

- VREN = 0
- VRR = 1
- VR<3:0> = 0000

This allows the comparator to detect a zero-crossing while not consuming additional CVREF module current.

8.10.4 OUTPUT RATIO METRIC TO VDD

The comparator voltage reference is VDD derived and therefore, the CVREF output changes with fluctuations in VDD. The tested absolute accuracy of the Comparator Voltage Reference can be found in **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

8.10.5 FIXED VOLTAGE REFERENCE

The fixed voltage reference is independent of VDD, with a nominal output voltage of 0.6V. This reference can be enabled by setting the VP6EN bit of the VRCON register to '1'. This reference is always enabled when the HFINTOSC oscillator is active.

8.10.6 FIXED VOLTAGE REFERENCE STABILIZATION PERIOD

When the Fixed Voltage Reference module is enabled, it will require some time for the reference and its amplifier circuits to stabilize. The user program must include a small delay routine to allow the module to settle. See the electrical specifications section for the minimum delay requirement.

8.10.7 VOLTAGE REFERENCE SELECTION

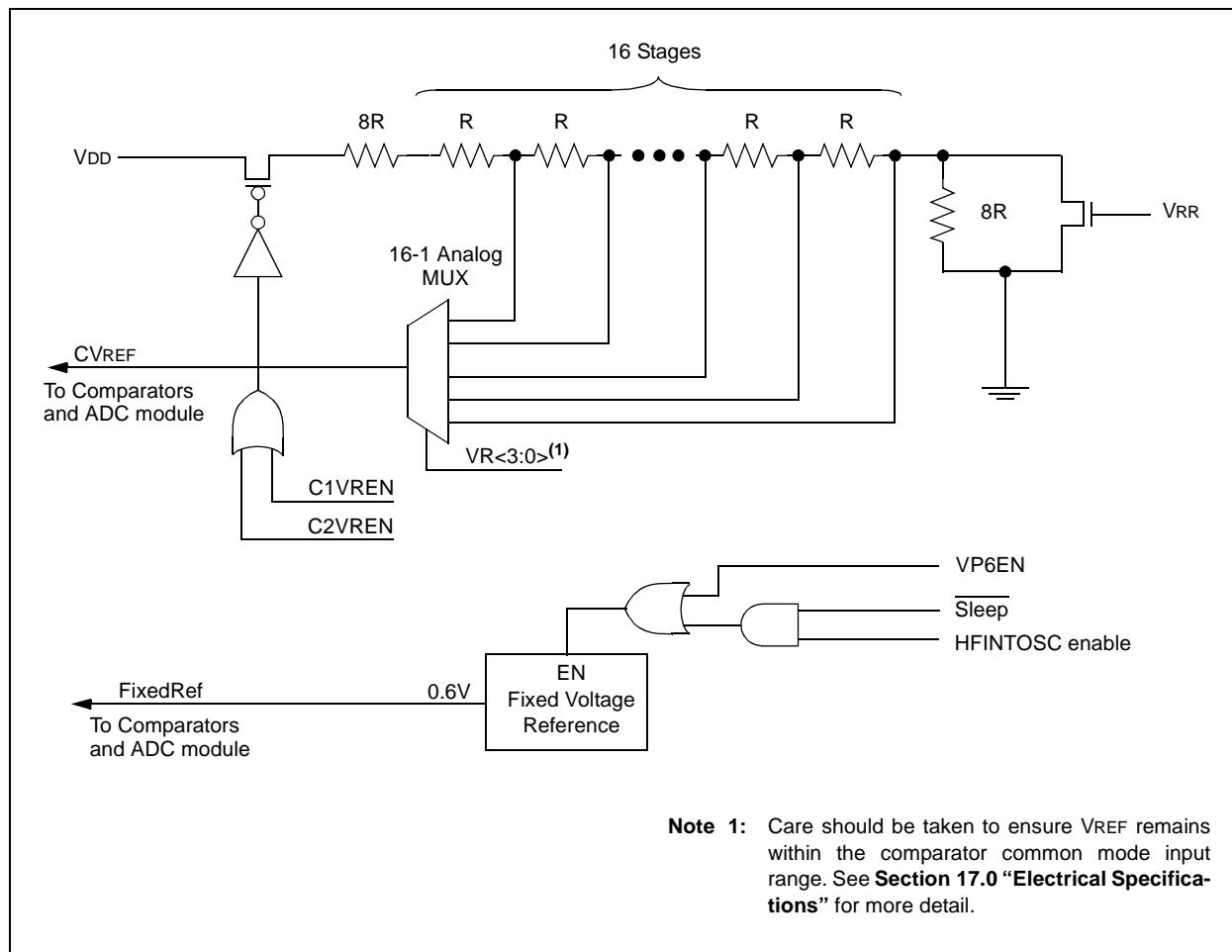
Multiplexers on the output of the Voltage Reference module enable selection of either the CVREF or fixed voltage reference for use by the comparators.

Setting the C1VREN bit of the VRCON register enables current to flow in the CVREF voltage divider and selects the CVREF voltage for use by C1. Clearing the C1VREN bit selects the fixed voltage for use by C1.

Setting the C2VREN bit of the VRCON register enables current to flow in the CVREF voltage divider and selects the CVREF voltage for use by C2. Clearing the C2VREN bit selects the fixed voltage for use by C2.

When both the C1VREN and C2VREN bits are cleared, current flow in the CVREF voltage divider is disabled minimizing the power drain of the voltage reference peripheral.

FIGURE 8-8: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 8-5: VRCON: VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0	U-0	U-0
C1VREN	C2VREN	VRR	VP6EN	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	S = Bit is set only		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	C1VREN: Comparator C1 Voltage Reference Enable bit 1 = CVREF circuit powered on and routed to C1VREF input of Comparator C1 0 = 0.6 Volt constant reference routed to C1VREF input of Comparator C1
bit 6	C2VREN: Comparator C2 Voltage Reference Enable bit 1 = CVREF circuit powered on and routed to C2VREF input of Comparator C2 0 = 0.6 Volt constant reference routed to C2VREF input of Comparator C2
bit 5	VRR: Comparator Voltage Reference CVREF Range Selection bit 1 = Low Range 0 = High Range
bit 4	VP6EN: 0.6V Reference Enable bit 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
bit 3-0	VR<3:0>: Comparator Voltage Reference CVREF Value Selection $0 \leq VR<3:0> \leq 15$ <u>When VRR = 1:</u> CVREF = $(VR<3:0>/24) * VDD$ <u>When VRR = 0:</u> CVREF = $VDD/4 + (VR<3:0>/32) * VDD$

TABLE 8-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE COMPARATOR AND VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULES

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
ANSEL	ANS7	ANS6	ANS5	ANS4	ANS3	ANS2	ANS1	ANS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1R	C1CH1	C1CH0	0000 -000	0000 0000
CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2R	C2CH1	C2CH0	0000 -000	0000 -000
CM2CON1	MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC	00-- --10	00-- --10	
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	—	—	—	—	0000----	0000----
PORTA	—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
REFCON	—	—	BGST	VRBB	VREN	VROE	CVROE	—	--00 000-	--00 000-
SRCON	SR1	SR0	C1SEN	C2REN	PULSS	PULSR	—	—	0000 00--	0000 00--
TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	--11 1111
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	1111 1111	1111 1111
VRCON	C1VREN	C2VREN	VRR	VP6EN	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for comparator.

9.0 ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (ADC) MODULE

The Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) allows conversion of an analog input signal to a 10-bit binary representation of that signal. This device uses analog inputs, which are multiplexed into a single sample and hold circuit. The output of the sample and hold is connected to the input of the converter. The converter generates a 10-bit binary result via successive approximation and stores the conversion result into the ADC result registers (ADRESL and ADRESH).

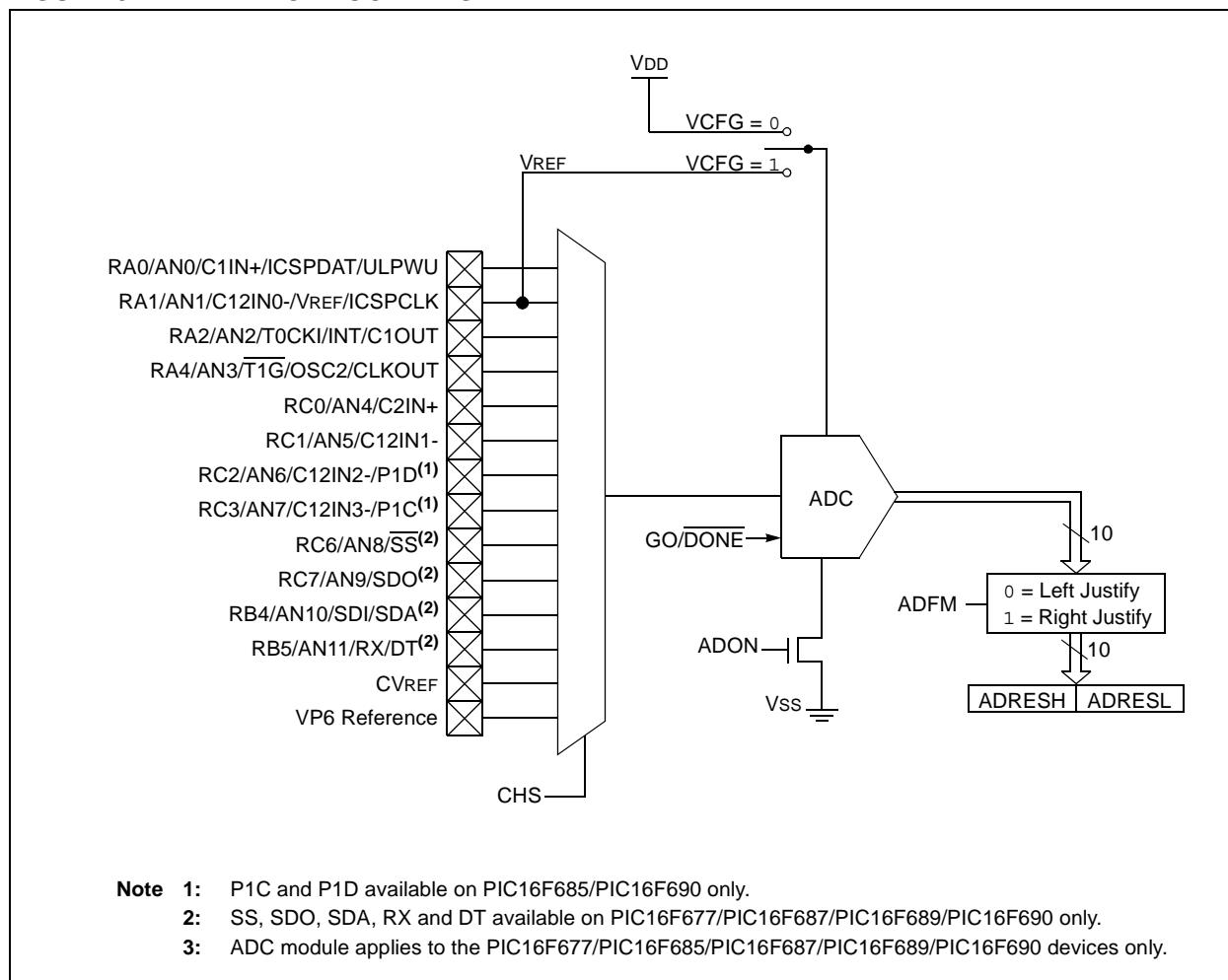
Note: The ADC module applies to PIC16F677/
PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/
PIC16F690 devices only.

The ADC voltage reference is software selectable to either VDD or a voltage applied to the external reference pins.

The ADC can generate an interrupt upon completion of a conversion. This interrupt can be used to wake-up the device from Sleep.

Figure 9-1 shows the block diagram of the ADC.

FIGURE 9-1: ADC BLOCK DIAGRAM



9.1 ADC Configuration

When configuring and using the ADC the following functions must be considered:

- Port configuration
- Channel selection
- ADC voltage reference selection
- ADC conversion clock source
- Interrupt control
- Results formatting

9.1.1 PORT CONFIGURATION

The ADC can be used to convert both analog and digital signals. When converting analog signals, the I/O pin should be configured for analog by setting the associated TRIS and ANSEL bits. See the corresponding port section for more information.

Note: Analog voltages on any pin that is defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to conduct excess current.

9.1.2 CHANNEL SELECTION

The CHS bits of the ADCON0 register determine which channel is connected to the sample and hold circuit.

When changing channels, a delay is required before starting the next conversion. Refer to **Section 9.2 “ADC Operation”** for more information.

9.1.3 ADC VOLTAGE REFERENCE

The VCFG bit of the ADCON0 register provides control of the positive voltage reference. The positive voltage reference can be either VDD or an external voltage source. The negative voltage reference is always connected to the ground reference.

9.1.4 CONVERSION CLOCK

The source of the conversion clock is software selectable via the ADCS bits of the ADCON1 register. There are seven possible clock options:

- Fosc/2
- Fosc/4
- Fosc/8
- Fosc/16
- Fosc/32
- Fosc/64
- FRC (dedicated internal oscillator)

The time to complete one bit conversion is defined as TAD. One full 10-bit conversion requires 11 TAD periods as shown in Figure 9-2.

For correct conversion, the appropriate TAD specification must be met. See A/D conversion requirements in **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for more information. Table 9-1 gives examples of appropriate ADC clock selections.

Note: Unless using the FRC, any changes in the system clock frequency will change the ADC clock frequency, which may adversely affect the ADC result.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 9-1: ADC CLOCK PERIOD (TAD) VS. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES ($V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$)

ADC Clock Period (TAD)		Device Frequency (Fosc)			
ADC Clock Source	ADCS<2:0>	20 MHz	8 MHz	4 MHz	1 MHz
Fosc/2	000	100 ns ⁽²⁾	250 ns ⁽²⁾	500 ns ⁽²⁾	2.0 μ s
Fosc/4	100	200 ns ⁽²⁾	500 ns ⁽²⁾	1.0 μ s ⁽²⁾	4.0 μ s
Fosc/8	001	400 ns ⁽²⁾	1.0 μ s ⁽²⁾	2.0 μ s	8.0 μ s ⁽³⁾
Fosc/16	101	800 ns ⁽²⁾	2.0 μ s	4.0 μ s	16.0 μ s ⁽³⁾
Fosc/32	010	1.6 μ s	4.0 μ s	8.0 μ s ⁽³⁾	32.0 μ s ⁽³⁾
Fosc/64	110	3.2 μ s	8.0 μ s ⁽³⁾	16.0 μ s ⁽³⁾	64.0 μ s ⁽³⁾
FRC	x11	2-6 μ s ^(1,4)			

Legend: Shaded cells are outside of recommended range.

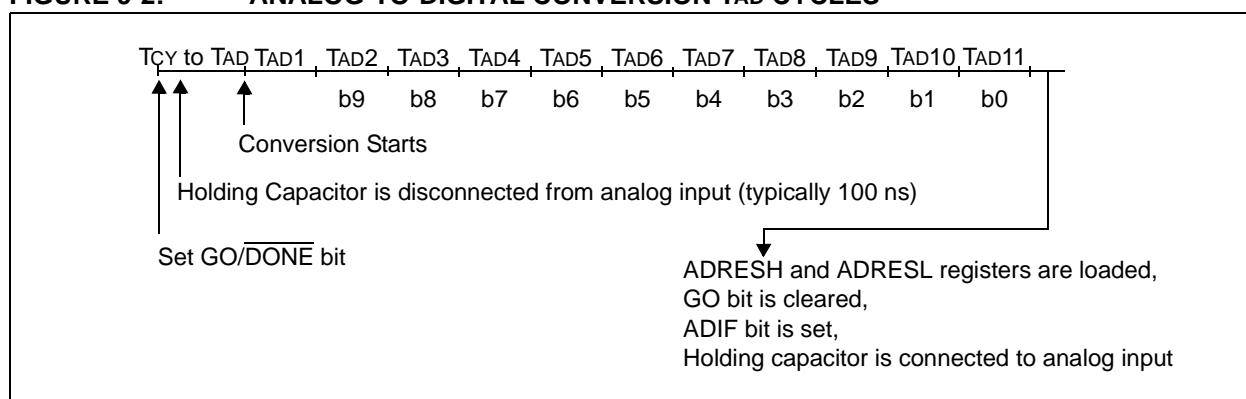
Note 1: The FRC source has a typical TAD time of 4 μ s for $V_{DD} > 3.0V$.

2: These values violate the minimum required TAD time.

3: For faster conversion times, the selection of another clock source is recommended.

4: When the device frequency is greater than 1 MHz, the FRC clock source is only recommended if the conversion will be performed during Sleep.

FIGURE 9-2: ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION TAD CYCLES



9.1.5 INTERRUPTS

The ADC module allows for the ability to generate an interrupt upon completion of an Analog-to-Digital conversion. The ADC interrupt flag is the ADIF bit in the PIR1 register. The ADC interrupt enable is the ADIE bit in the PIE1 register. The ADIF bit must be cleared in software.

Note: The ADIF bit is set at the completion of every conversion, regardless of whether or not the ADC interrupt is enabled.

This interrupt can be generated while the device is operating or while in Sleep. If the device is in Sleep, the interrupt will wake-up the device. Upon waking from Sleep, the next instruction following the SLEEP instruction is always executed. If the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution, the global interrupt must be disabled. If the global interrupt is enabled, execution will switch to the interrupt service routine.

Please see **Section 9.1.5 “Interrupts”** for more information.

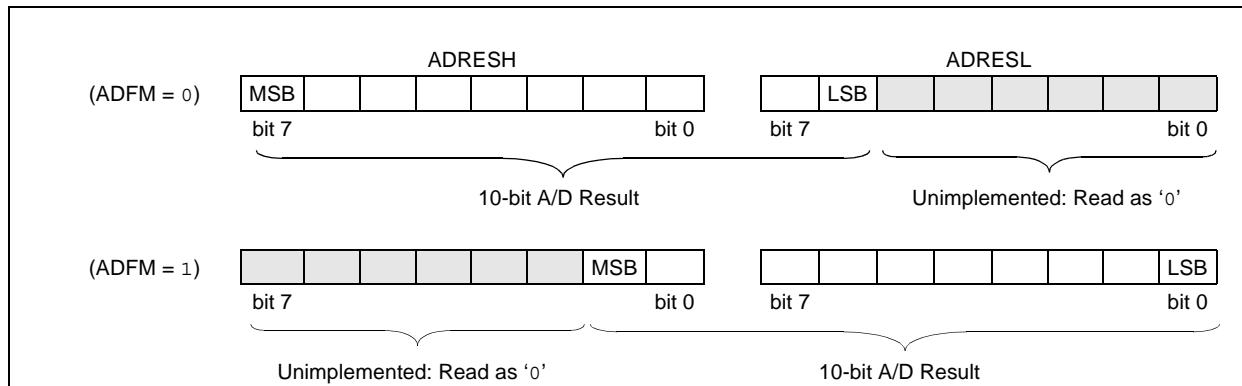
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

9.1.6 RESULT FORMATTING

The 10-bit A/D conversion result can be supplied in two formats, left justified or right justified. The ADFM bit of the ADCON0 register controls the output format.

Figure 9-3 shows the two output formats.

FIGURE 9-3: 10-BIT A/D CONVERSION RESULT FORMAT



9.2 ADC Operation

9.2.1 STARTING A CONVERSION

To enable the ADC module, the ADON bit of the ADCON0 register must be set to a '1'. Setting the GO/DONE bit of the ADCON0 register to a '1' will start the Analog-to-Digital conversion.

Note: The GO/DONE bit should not be set in the same instruction that turns on the ADC. Refer to **Section 9.2.6 "A/D Conversion Procedure"**.

9.2.2 COMPLETION OF A CONVERSION

When the conversion is complete, the ADC module will:

- Clear the GO/DONE bit
- Set the ADIF flag bit
- Update the ADRESH:ADRESL registers with new conversion result

9.2.3 TERMINATING A CONVERSION

If a conversion must be terminated before completion, the GO/DONE bit can be cleared in software. The ADRESH:ADRESL registers will not be updated with the partially complete Analog-to-Digital conversion sample. Instead, the ADRESH:ADRESL register pair will retain the value of the previous conversion. Additionally, a 2 TAD delay is required before another acquisition can be initiated. Following this delay, an input acquisition is automatically started on the selected channel.

Note: A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. Thus, the ADC module is turned off and any pending conversion is terminated.

9.2.4 ADC OPERATION DURING SLEEP

The ADC module can operate during Sleep. This requires the ADC clock source to be set to the FRC option. When the FRC clock source is selected, the ADC waits one additional instruction before starting the conversion. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed, which can reduce system noise during the conversion. If the ADC interrupt is enabled, the device will wake-up from Sleep when the conversion completes. If the ADC interrupt is disabled, the ADC module is turned off after the conversion completes, although the ADON bit remains set.

When the ADC clock source is something other than FRC, a SLEEP instruction causes the present conversion to be aborted and the ADC module is turned off, although the ADON bit remains set.

9.2.5 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

An ECCP Special Event Trigger allows periodic ADC measurements without software intervention. When this trigger occurs, the GO/DONE bit is set by hardware and the Timer1 counter resets to zero.

Using the Special Event Trigger does not assure proper ADC timing. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the ADC timing requirements are met.

See **Section 11.0 "Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM Module"** for more information.

9.2.6 A/D CONVERSION PROCEDURE

This is an example procedure for using the ADC to perform an Analog-to-Digital conversion:

1. Configure Port:
 - Disable pin output driver (See TRIS register)
 - Configure pin as analog
2. Configure the ADC module:
 - Select ADC conversion clock
 - Configure voltage reference
 - Select ADC input channel
 - Select result format
 - Turn on ADC module
3. Configure ADC interrupt (optional):
 - Clear ADC interrupt flag
 - Enable ADC interrupt
 - Enable peripheral interrupt
 - Enable global interrupt⁽¹⁾
4. Wait the required acquisition time⁽²⁾.
5. Start conversion by setting the GO/DONE bit.
6. Wait for ADC conversion to complete by one of the following:
 - Polling the GO/DONE bit
 - Waiting for the ADC interrupt (interrupts enabled)
7. Read ADC Result
8. Clear the ADC interrupt flag (required if interrupt is enabled).

Note 1: The global interrupt can be disabled if the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution.

2: See **Section 9.3 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"**.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

EXAMPLE 9-1: A/D CONVERSION

```
;This code block configures the ADC
;for polling, Vdd reference, Frc clock
;and AN0 input.
;
;Conversion start & polling for completion
; are included.
;
BANKSEL    ADCON1      ;
MOVLW     B'01110000' ;ADC Frc clock
MOVWF     ADCON1      ;
BANKSEL    TRISA       ;
BSF       TRISA,0     ;Set RA0 to input
BANKSEL    ANSEL       ;
BSF       ANSEL,0     ;Set RA0 to analog
BANKSEL    ADCON0      ;
MOVLW     B'10000001' ;Right justify,
MOVWF     ADCON0      ; Vdd Vref, AN0, On
CALL      SampleTime   ;Acquisition delay
BSF       ADCON0,GO   ;Start conversion
BTFSR    ADCON0,GO   ;Is conversion done?
GOTO     $-1          ;No, test again
BANKSEL    ADRESH      ;
MOVF     ADRESH,W    ;Read upper 2 bits
MOVWF    RESULTHI    ;store in GPR space
BANKSEL    ADRESL      ;
MOVF     ADRESL,W    ;Read lower 8 bits
MOVWF    RESULTLO    ;Store in GPR space
```

9.2.7 ADC REGISTER DEFINITIONS

The following registers are used to control the operation of the ADC.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 9-1: ADCON0: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0	R/W-0						
ADFM	VCFG	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/DONE	ADON
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **ADFM**: A/D Conversion Result Format Select bit

- 1 = Right justified
- 0 = Left justified

bit 6 **VCFG**: Voltage Reference bit

- 1 = VREF pin
- 0 = VDD

bit 5-2 **CHS<3:0>**: Analog Channel Select bits

- 0000 = AN0
- 0001 = AN1
- 0010 = AN2
- 0011 = AN3
- 0100 = AN4
- 0101 = AN5
- 0110 = AN6
- 0111 = AN7
- 1000 = AN8
- 1001 = AN9
- 1010 = AN10
- 1011 = AN11
- 1100 = CVREF
- 1101 = 0.6V Reference
- 1110 = Reserved. Do not use.
- 1111 = Reserved. Do not use.

bit 1 **GO/DONE**: A/D Conversion Status bit

- 1 = A/D conversion cycle in progress. Setting this bit starts an A/D conversion cycle.
This bit is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion has completed.
- 0 = A/D conversion completed/not in progress

bit 0 **ADON**: ADC Enable bit

- 1 = ADC is enabled
- 0 = ADC is disabled and consumes no operating current

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 9-2: ADCON1: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	—	—	—	—
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'bit 6-4 **ADCS<2:0>:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits

000 = Fosc/2

001 = Fosc/8

010 = Fosc/32

x11 = FRC (clock derived from a dedicated internal oscillator = 500 kHz max)

100 = Fosc/4

101 = Fosc/16

110 = Fosc/64

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 9-3: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 0

| R/W-x |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ADRES9 | ADRES8 | ADRES7 | ADRES6 | ADRES5 | ADRES4 | ADRES3 | ADRES2 |
| bit 7 | | | | | | | bit 0 |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **ADRES<9:2>**: ADC Result Register bits
Upper 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result

REGISTER 9-4: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 0

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
ADRES1	ADRES0	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **ADRES<1:0>**: ADC Result Register bits
Lower 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

bit 5-0 **Reserved**: Do not use.

REGISTER 9-5: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 1

R/W-x	R/W-x						
—	—	—	—	—	—	ADRES9	ADRES8
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-2 **Reserved**: Do not use.

bit 1-0 **ADRES<9:8>**: ADC Result Register bits
Upper 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

REGISTER 9-6: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 1

| R/W-x |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ADRES7 | ADRES6 | ADRES5 | ADRES4 | ADRES3 | ADRES2 | ADRES1 | ADRES0 |
| bit 7 | | | | | | | bit 0 |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **ADRES<7:0>**: ADC Result Register bits
Lower 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result

9.3 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the ADC to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (C_{HOLD}) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The Analog Input model is shown in Figure 9-4. The source impedance (R_s) and the internal sampling switch (R_{ss}) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor C_{HOLD} . The sampling switch (R_{ss}) impedance varies over the device voltage (V_{DD}), see Figure 9-4. **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 k Ω .** As the source impedance is decreased, the acquisition time may be decreased. After the analog input channel is selected (or changed),

an A/D acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started. To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 9-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSB error is used (1024 steps for the ADC). The 1/2 LSB error is the maximum error allowed for the ADC to meet its specified resolution.

EQUATION 9-1: ACQUISITION TIME EXAMPLE

Assumptions: Temperature = 50°C and external impedance of 10 k Ω 5.0V V_{DD}

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Hold Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient} \\ &= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF} \\ &= 5\mu s + T_C + [(Temperature - 25^\circ C)(0.05\mu s/\text{ }^\circ C)] \end{aligned}$$

The value for T_C can be approximated with the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} V_{APPLIED} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2047} \right) &= V_{CHOLD} && ;[1] V_{CHOLD} \text{ charged to within 1/2 lsb} \\ V_{APPLIED} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{T_C}{RC}} \right) &= V_{CHOLD} && ;[2] V_{CHOLD} \text{ charge response to } V_{APPLIED} \\ V_{APPLIED} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{T_C}{RC}} \right) &= V_{APPLIED} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2047} \right) && ;\text{combining [1] and [2]} \end{aligned}$$

Solving for T_C :

$$\begin{aligned} T_C &= -C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_s) \ln(1/2047) \\ &= -10pF(1k\Omega + 7k\Omega + 10k\Omega) \ln(0.0004885) \\ &= 1.37\mu s \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= 5\mu s + 1.37\mu s + [(50^\circ C - 25^\circ C)(0.05\mu s/\text{ }^\circ C)] \\ &= 7.67\mu s \end{aligned}$$

Note 1: The reference voltage (V_{REF}) has no effect on the equation, since it cancels itself out.

- 2:** The charge holding capacitor (C_{HOLD}) is not discharged after each conversion.
- 3:** The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 k Ω . This is required to meet the pin leakage specification.

FIGURE 9-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL

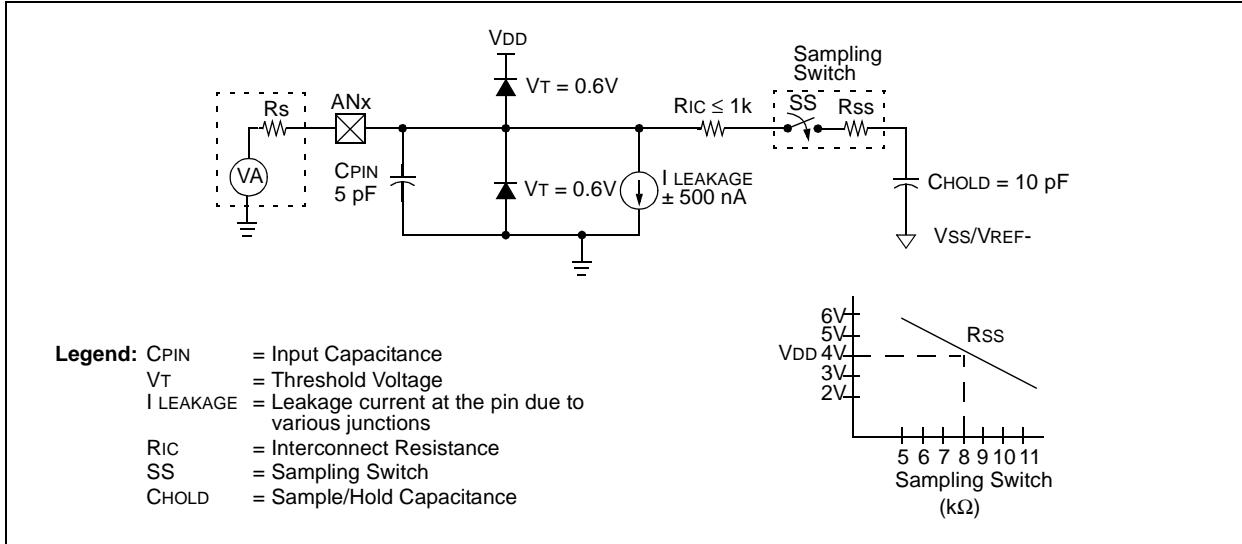
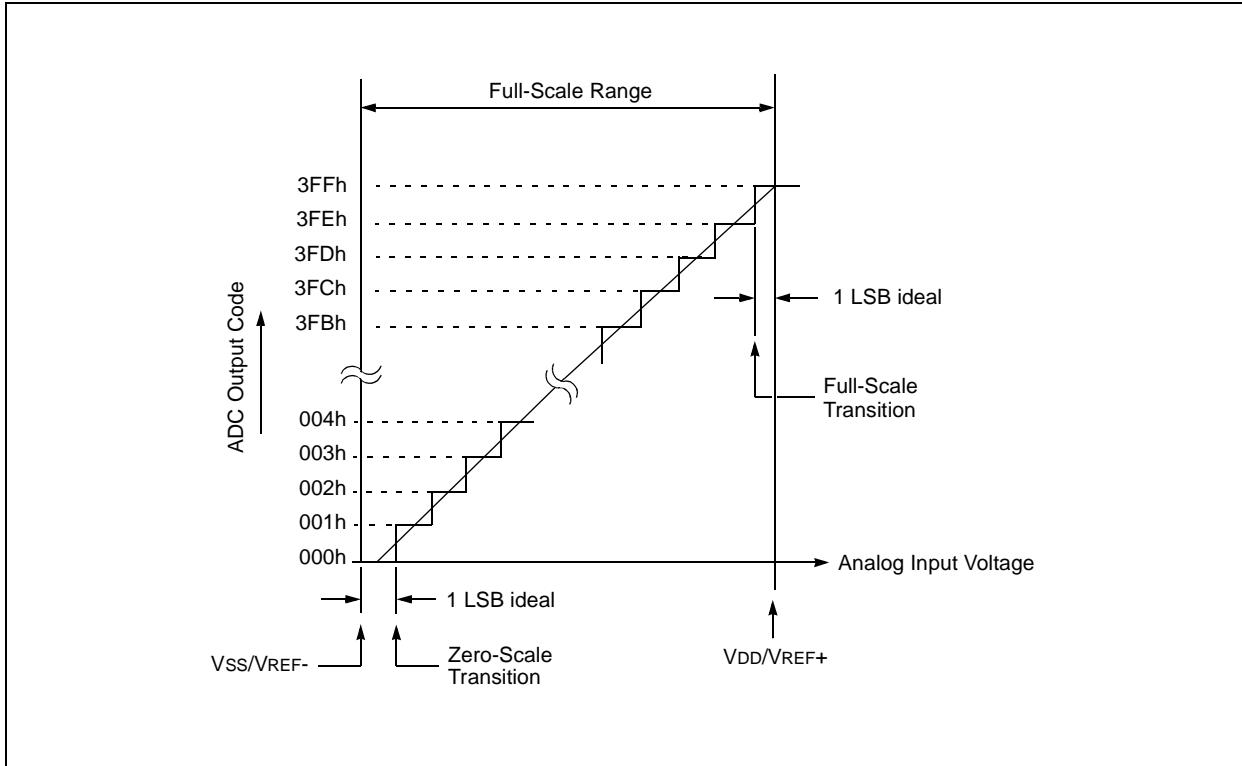


FIGURE 9-5: ADC TRANSFER FUNCTION



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 9-2: SUMMARY OF ASSOCIATED ADC REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
ADCON0	ADFM	VCFG	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/DONE	ADON	0000 0000	0000 0000
ADCON1	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	—	—	—	—	-000 ----	-000 ----
ANSEL	ANS7	ANS6	ANS5	ANS4	ANS3	ANS2	ANS1	ANS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
ANSELH	—	—	—	—	ANS11	ANS10	ANS9	ANS8	---- 1111	---- 1111
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
PORTA	—	—	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	—	—	—	—	xxxx ----	uuuu ----
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISA	—	—	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	--11 1111	--11 1111
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	1111 ----
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for ADC module.

10.0 DATA EEPROM AND FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY CONTROL

Data EEPROM memory is readable and writable and the Flash program memory (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only) is readable during normal operation (full VDD range). These memories are not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, they are indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers (SFRs). There are six SFRs used to access these memories:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDAT
- EEDATH (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only)
- EEADR
- EEADRH (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only)

When interfacing the data memory block, EEDAT holds the 8-bit data for read/write, and EEADR holds the address of the EEDAT location being accessed. These devices, except for the PIC16F631, have 256 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 0h to 0FFh. The PIC16F631 has 128 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 0h to 07Fh.

When accessing the program memory block of the PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 devices, the EEDAT and EEDATH registers form a 2-byte word that holds the 14-bit data for read/write, and the EEADR and EEADRH registers form a 2-byte word that holds the 12-bit address of the EEPROM location being read. These devices (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690) have 4K words of program EEPROM with an address range from 0h to 0FFFh. The program memory allows one-word reads.

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. A byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase before write).

The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump rated to operate over the voltage range of the device for byte or word operations.

When the device is code-protected, the CPU may continue to read and write the data EEPROM memory and read the program memory. When code-protected, the device programmer can no longer access data or program memory.

10.1 EEADR and EEADRH Registers

The EEADR and EEADRH registers can address up to a maximum of 256 bytes of data EEPROM or up to a maximum of 4K words of program EEPROM.

When selecting a program address value, the MSB of the address is written to the EEADRH register and the LSB is written to the EEADR register. When selecting a data address value, only the LSB of the address is written to the EEADR register.

10.1.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

EECON1 is the control register for EE memory accesses.

Control bit EEPGD (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690) determines if the access will be a program or data memory access. When clear, as it is when reset, any subsequent operations will operate on the data memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory. Program memory can only be read.

Control bits RD and WR initiate read and write, respectively. These bits cannot be cleared, only set, in software. They are cleared in hardware at completion of the read or write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental, premature termination of a write operation.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation to data EEPROM. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a MCLR or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, following Reset, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location.

Interrupt flag bit EIF of the PIR2 register is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in the software.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the data EEPROM write sequence.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 10-1: EEDAT: EEPROM DATA REGISTER

| R/W-0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| EEDAT7 | EEDAT6 | EEDAT5 | EEDAT4 | EEDAT3 | EEDAT2 | EEDAT1 | EEDAT0 |
| bit 7 | bit 0 | | | | | | |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **EEDAT<7:0>**: 8 Least Significant Address bits to Write to or Read from data EEPROM or Read from program memory

REGISTER 10-2: EEADR: EEPROM ADDRESS REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
EEADR7 ⁽¹⁾	EEADR6	EEADR5	EEADR4	EEADR3	EEADR2	EEADR1	EEADR0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **EEADR<7:0>**: 8 Least Significant Address bits for EEPROM Read/Write Operation⁽¹⁾ or Read from program memory**Note 1:** PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

REGISTER 10-3: EEDATH: EEPROM DATA HIGH BYTE REGISTER⁽¹⁾

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	EEDATH5	EEDATH4	EEDATH3	EEDATH2	EEDATH1	EEDATH0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'bit 5-0 **EEDATH<5:0>**: 6 Most Significant Data bits from program memory**Note 1:** PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

REGISTER 10-4: EEADRH: EEPROM ADDRESS HIGH BYTE REGISTER⁽¹⁾

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	—	EEADRH3	EEADRH2	EEADRH1	EEADRH0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'bit 3-0 **EEADRH<3:0>**: Specifies the 4 Most Significant Address bits or high bits for program memory reads**Note 1:** PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 10-5: EECON1: EEPROM CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-x	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD ⁽¹⁾	—	—	—	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

S = Bit can only be set

R = Readable bit

-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit

'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **EEPGD:** Program/Data EEPROM Select bit⁽¹⁾
1 = Accesses program memory
0 = Accesses data memory
- bit 6-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3 **WRERR:** EEPROM Error Flag bit
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any MCLR Reset, any WDT Reset during normal operation or BOR Reset)
0 = The write operation completed
- bit 2 **WREN:** EEPROM Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles
0 = Inhibits write to the data EEPROM
- bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
EEPGD = 1:
This bit is ignored
EEPGD = 0:
1 = Initiates a write cycle (The bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set, not cleared, in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the data EEPROM is complete
- bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates a memory read (the RD is cleared in hardware and can only be set, not cleared, in software.)
0 = Does not initiate a memory read

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

10.1.2 READING THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADR register, clear the EEPGD control bit of the EECON1 register, and then set control bit RD. The data is available at the very next cycle, in the EEDAT register; therefore, it can be read in the next instruction. EEDAT will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

EXAMPLE 10-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
BANKSEL EEADR      ;  
MOVF  DATA_EE_ADDR, W;  
MOVWF EEADR      ;Data Memory  
                  ;Address to read  
BANKSEL EECON1      ;  
BCF   EECON1, EEPGD ;Point to DATA memory  
BSF   EECON1, RD    ;EE Read  
BANKSEL EEDAT      ;  
MOVF  EEDAT, W      ;W = EEDAT  
BCF   STATUS, RP1    ;Bank 0
```

10.1.3 WRITING TO THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To write an EEPROM data location, the user must first write the address to the EEADR register and the data to the EEDAT register. Then the user must follow a specific sequence to initiate the write for each byte.

The write will not initiate if the above sequence is not followed exactly (write 55h to EECON2, write AAh to EECON2, then set WR bit) for each byte. Interrupts should be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable write. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to errant (unexpected) code execution (i.e., lost programs). The user should keep the WREN bit clear at all times, except when updating EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware.

After a write sequence has been initiated, clearing the WREN bit will not affect this write cycle. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EE Write Complete Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user can either enable this interrupt or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

EXAMPLE 10-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
BANKSEL EEADR      ;  
MOVF  DATA_EE_ADDR, W;  
MOVWF EEADR      ;Data Memory Address to write  
MOVF  DATA_EE_DATA, W;  
MOVWF EEDAT      ;Data Memory Value to write  
BANKSEL EECON1      ;  
BCF   EECON1, EEPGD ;Point to DATA memory  
BSF   EECON1, WREN  ;Enable writes  
  
BCF   INTCON, GIE    ;Disable INTs.  
BTFS C INTCON, GIE    ;SEE AN576  
GOTO $-2  
MOVLW 55h      ;  
MOVWF EECON2      ;Write 55h  
MOVLW AAh       ;  
MOVWF EECON2      ;Write AAh  
BSF   EECON1, WR    ;Set WR bit to begin write  
BSF   INTCON, GIE    ;Enable INTs.  
  
SLEEP          ;Wait for interrupt to signal write complete (optional)  
BCF   EECON1, WREN  ;Disable writes  
BANKSEL 0x00      ;Bank 0
```

Required Sequence

10.1.4 READING THE FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY (PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690)

To read a program memory location, the user must write the Least and Most Significant address bits to the EEADR and EEADRH registers, set the EEPGD control bit of the EECON1 register, and then set control bit RD. Once the read control bit is set, the program memory Flash controller will use the second instruction cycle to read the data. This causes the second instruction immediately following the “BSF EECON1, RD” instruction to be ignored. The data is available in the very next cycle, in the EEDAT and EEDATH registers; therefore, it can be read as two bytes in the following instructions.

EEDAT and EEDATH registers will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user.

Note 1: The two instructions following a program memory read are required to be NOPs. This prevents the user from executing a two-cycle instruction on the next instruction after the RD bit is set.

2: If the WR bit is set when EEPGD = 1, it will be immediately reset to ‘0’ and no operation will take place.

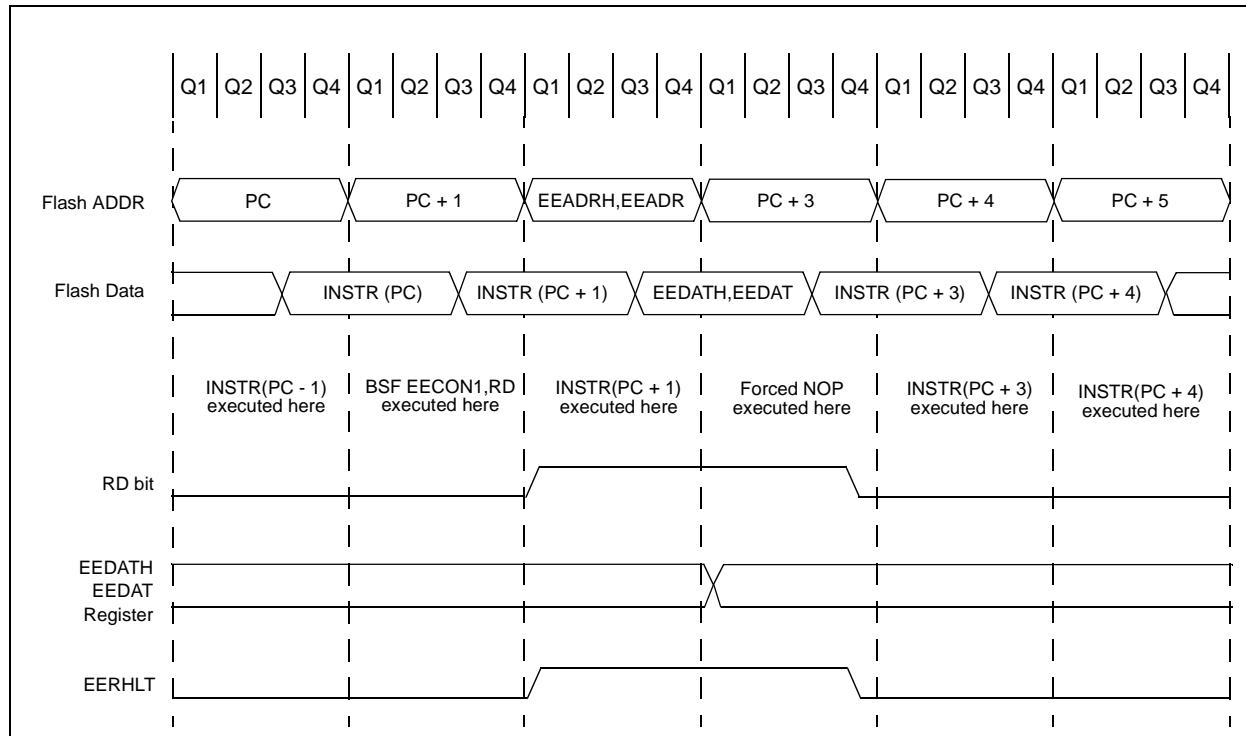
EXAMPLE 10-3: FLASH PROGRAM READ

```
BANKSEL EEADR ;  
MOVF MS_PROG_EE_ADDR, W ;  
MOVWF EEADRH ;MS Byte of Program Address to read  
MOVF LS_PROG_EE_ADDR, W ;  
MOVWF EEADR ;LS Byte of Program Address to read  
BANKSEL EECON1 ;  
BSF EECON1, EEPGD ;Point to PROGRAM memory  
BSF EECON1, RD ;EE Read  
  
NOP ;First instruction after BSF EECON1, RD executes normally  
  
NOP ;Any instructions here are ignored as program  
;memory is read in second cycle after BSF EECON1, RD  
;  
BANKSEL EEDAT ;  
MOVF EEDAT, W ;W = LS Byte of Program Memory  
MOVWF LOWPMBYTE ;  
MOVF EEDATH, W ;W = MS Byte of Program EEDAT  
MOVWF HIGHPMBYTE ;  
BANKSEL 0x00 ;Bank 0
```

Required Sequence

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 10-1: FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY READ CYCLE EXECUTION



10.2 Write Verify

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the data EEPROM should be verified (see Example 10-4) to the desired value to be written.

EXAMPLE 10-4: WRITE VERIFY

```
BANKSEL EEDAT          ;
MOVF   EEDAT, W        ;EEDAT not changed
                      ;from previous write
BANKSEL EECON1          ;
BSF    EECON1, RD      ;YES, Read the
                      ;value written
BANKSEL EEDAT          ;
XORWF EEDAT, W        ;
BTFS  STATUS, Z        ;Is data the same
GOTO  WRITE_ERR         ;No, handle error
:                  ;Yes, continue
BANKSEL 0x00           ;Bank 0
```

When the data memory is code-protected, only the CPU is able to read and write data to the data EEPROM. It is recommended to code-protect the program memory when code-protecting data memory. This prevents anyone from programming zeroes over the existing code (which will execute as NOOPS) to reach an added routine, programmed in unused program memory, which outputs the contents of data memory. Programming unused locations in program memory to '0' will also help prevent data memory code protection from becoming breached.

10.2.1 USING THE DATA EEPROM

The data EEPROM is a high-endurance, byte addressable array that has been optimized for the storage of frequently changing information (e.g., program variables or other data that are updated often). When variables in one section change frequently, while variables in another section do not change, it is possible to exceed the total number of write cycles to the EEPROM (specification D124) without exceeding the total number of write cycles to a single byte (specifications D120 and D120A). If this is the case, then a refresh of the array must be performed. For this reason, variables that change infrequently (such as constants, IDs, calibration, etc.) should be stored in Flash program memory.

10.3 Protection Against Spurious Write

There are conditions when the user may not want to write to the data EEPROM memory. To protect against spurious EEPROM writes, various mechanisms have been built in. On power-up, WREN is cleared. Also, the Power-up Timer (64 ms duration) prevents EEPROM write.

The write initiate sequence and the WREN bit together help prevent an accidental write during:

- Brown-out
- Power Glitch
- Software Malfunction

10.4 Data EEPROM Operation During Code-Protect

Data memory can be code-protected by programming the CPD bit in the Configuration Word register (Register 14-1) to '0'.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 10-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH DATA EEPROM

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
EECON1	EEPGD ⁽¹⁾	—	—	—	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	x--- x000	0--- q000
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								-----	-----
EEADR	EEADR7 ⁽²⁾	EEADR6	EEADR5	EEADR4	EEADR3	EEADR2	EEADR1	EEADRO	0000 0000	0000 0000
EEADR ⁽¹⁾	—	—	—	—	EEADRH3	EEADRH2	EEADRH1	EEADRHO	---- 0000	---- 0000
EEDAT	EEDAT7	EEDAT6	EEDAT5	EEDAT4	EEDAT3	EEDAT2	EEDAT1	EEDATO	0000 0000	0000 0000
EEDATH ⁽¹⁾	—	—	EEDATH5	EEDATH4	EEDATH3	EEDATH2	EEDATH1	EEDATHO	--00 0000	--00 0000
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as '0', q = value depends upon condition.

Shaded cells are not used by data EEPROM module.

Note 1: PIC16F685/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

2: PIC16F677/PIC16F685/PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

11.0 ENHANCED CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM MODULE

The Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM module is a peripheral which allows the user to time and control different events. In Capture mode, the peripheral allows the timing of the duration of an event. The Compare mode allows the user to trigger an external event when a predetermined amount of time has expired. The PWM mode can generate a Pulse-Width Modulated signal of varying frequency and duty cycle.

Table 11-1 shows the timer resources required by the ECCP module.

TABLE 11-1: ECCP MODE – TIMER RESOURCES REQUIRED

ECCP Mode	Timer Resource
Capture	Timer1
Compare	Timer1
PWM	Timer2

REGISTER 11-1: CCP1CON: ENHANCED CCP1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
P1M1	P1M0	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6	P1M<1:0>: PWM Output Configuration bits <u>If CCP1M<3:2> = 00, 01, 10:</u> xx = P1A assigned as Capture/Compare input; P1B, P1C, P1D assigned as port pins <u>If CCP1M<3:2> = 11:</u> 00 = Single output; P1A modulated; P1B, P1C, P1D assigned as port pins 01 = Full-Bridge output forward; P1D modulated; P1A active; P1B, P1C inactive 10 = Half-Bridge output; P1A, P1B modulated with dead-band control; P1C, P1D assigned as port pins 11 = Full-Bridge output reverse; P1B modulated; P1C active; P1A, P1D inactive
bit 5-4	DC1B<1:0>: PWM Duty Cycle Least Significant bits <u>Capture mode:</u> Unused. <u>Compare mode:</u> Unused. <u>PWM mode:</u> These bits are the two LSbs of the PWM duty cycle. The eight MSbs are found in CCPR1L.
bit 3-0	CCP1M<3:0>: ECCP Mode Select bits 0000 = Capture/Compare/PWM off (resets ECCP module) 0001 = Unused (reserved) 0010 = Compare mode, toggle output on match (CCP1IF bit is set) 0011 = Unused (reserved) 0100 = Capture mode, every falling edge 0101 = Capture mode, every rising edge 0110 = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge 0111 = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge 1000 = Compare mode, set output on match (CCP1IF bit is set) 1001 = Compare mode, clear output on match (CCP1IF bit is set) 1010 = Compare mode, generate software interrupt on match (CCP1IF bit is set, CCP1 pin is unaffected) 1011 = Compare mode, trigger special event (CCP1IF bit is set; CCP1 resets TMR1 or TMR2, and starts an A/D conversion, if the ADC module is enabled) 1100 = PWM mode; P1A, P1C active-high; P1B, P1D active-high 1101 = PWM mode; P1A, P1C active-high; P1B, P1D active-low 1110 = PWM mode; P1A, P1C active-low; P1B, P1D active-high 1111 = PWM mode; P1A, P1C active-low; P1B, P1D active-low

11.1 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCP1H:CCP1L captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 register when an event occurs on pin CCP1. An event is defined as one of the following and is configured by the CCP1M<3:0> bits of the CCP1CON register:

- Every falling edge
- Every rising edge
- Every 4th rising edge
- Every 16th rising edge

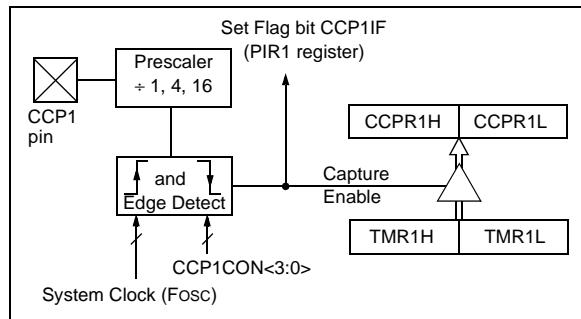
When a capture is made, the Interrupt Request Flag bit CCP1IF of the PIR1 register is set. The interrupt flag must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in the CCP1H, CCP1L register pair is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value (see Figure 11-1).

11.1.1 CCP1 PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the CCP1 pin should be configured as an input by setting the associated TRIS control bit.

Note: If the CCP1 pin is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

FIGURE 11-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



11.1.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode for the CCP module to use the capture feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work.

11.1.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep the CCP1IE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register clear to avoid false interrupts. Additionally, the user should clear the CCP1IF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register following any change in operating mode.

11.1.4 CCP PRESCALER

There are four prescaler settings specified by the CCP1M<3:0> bits of the CCP1CON register. Whenever the CCP module is turned off, or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. Any Reset will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another does not clear the prescaler and may generate a false interrupt. To avoid this unexpected operation, turn the module off by clearing the CCP1CON register before changing the prescaler (see Example 11-1).

EXAMPLE 11-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```

BANKSEL CCP1CON      ; Set Bank bits to point
                      ; to CCP1CON
CLRF   CCP1CON       ; Turn CCP module off
MOVLW  NEW_CAPT_PS  ; Load the W reg with
                      ; the new prescaler
                      ; move value and CCP ON
MOVWF CCP1CON        ; Load CCP1CON with this
                      ; value

```

11.2 Compare Mode

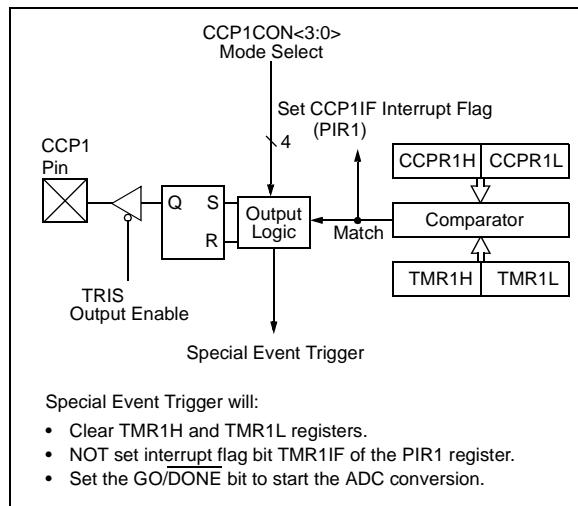
In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPR1 register value is constantly compared against the TMR1 register pair value. When a match occurs, the CCP module may:

- Toggle the CCP1 output
- Set the CCP1 output
- Clear the CCP1 output
- Generate a Special Event Trigger
- Generate a Software Interrupt

The action on the pin is based on the value of the CCP1M<3:0> control bits of the CCP1CON register.

All Compare modes can generate an interrupt.

FIGURE 11-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



11.2.1 CCP1 PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCP1 pin as an output by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

Note: Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the CCP1 compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the port I/O data latch.

11.2.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

In Compare mode, Timer1 must be running in either Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode. The compare operation may not work in Asynchronous Counter mode.

11.2.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When Generate Software Interrupt mode is chosen (CCP1M<3:0> = 1010), the CCP module does not assert control of the CCP1 pin (see the CCP1CON register).

11.2.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

When Special Event Trigger mode is chosen (CCP1M<3:0> = 1011), the CCP module does the following:

- Resets Timer1
- Starts an ADC conversion if ADC is enabled

The CCP module does not assert control of the CCP1 pin in this mode (see the CCP1CON register).

The Special Event Trigger output of the CCP occurs immediately upon a match between the TMR1H, TMR1L register pair and the CCPR1H, CCPR1L register pair. The TMR1H, TMR1L register pair is not reset until the next rising edge of the Timer1 clock. This allows the CCPR1H, CCPR1L register pair to effectively provide a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

Note 1: The Special Event Trigger from the CCP module does not set interrupt flag bit TMR1IF of the PIR1 register.

2: Removing the match condition by changing the contents of the CCPR1H and CCPR1L register pair, between the clock edge that generates the Special Event Trigger and the clock edge that generates the Timer1 Reset, will preclude the Reset from occurring.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

11.3 PWM Mode

The PWM mode generates a Pulse-Width Modulated signal on the CCP1 pin. The duty cycle, period and resolution are determined by the following registers:

- PR2
- T2CON
- CCPR1L
- CCP1CON

In Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) mode, the CCP module produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output on the CCP1 pin. Since the CCP1 pin is multiplexed with the PORT data latch, the TRIS for that pin must be cleared to enable the CCP1 pin output driver.

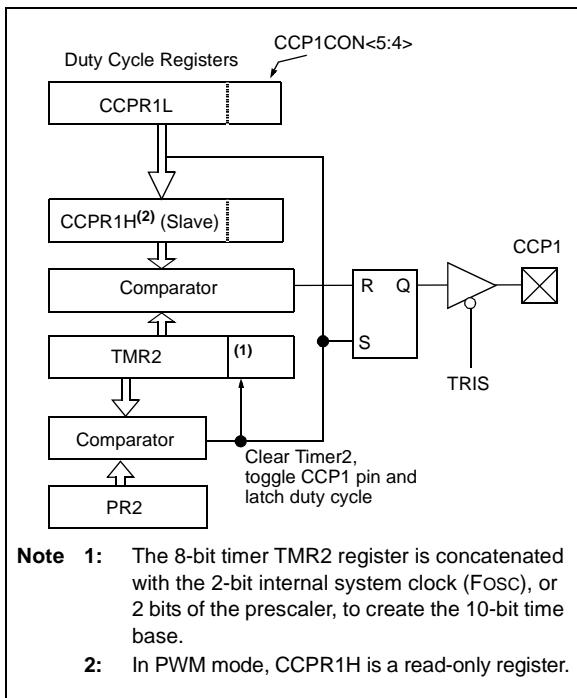
Note: Clearing the CCP1CON register will relinquish CCP1 control of the CCP1 pin.

Figure 11-3 shows a simplified block diagram of PWM operation.

Figure 11-4 shows a typical waveform of the PWM signal.

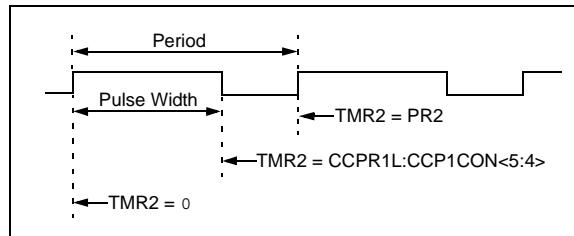
For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see **Section 11.3.7 “Setup for PWM Operation”**.

FIGURE 11-3: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



The PWM output (Figure 11-4) has a time base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle).

FIGURE 11-4: CCP PWM OUTPUT



11.3.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by the PR2 register of Timer2. The PWM period can be calculated using the formula of Equation 11-1.

EQUATION 11-1: PWM PERIOD

$$\text{PWM Period} = [(PR2) + 1] \cdot 4 \cdot TOSC \cdot (TMR2 \text{ Prescale Value})$$

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCP1 pin is set. (Exception: If the PWM duty cycle = 0%, the pin will not be set.)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPR1L into CCPR1H.

Note: The Timer2 postscaler (see **Section 7.1 “Timer2 Operation”**) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency.

11.3.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing a 10-bit value to multiple registers: CCPR1L register and DC1B<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register. The CCPR1L contains the eight MSbs and the DC1B<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register contain the two LSbs. CCPR1L and DC1B<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register can be written to at any time. The duty cycle value is not latched into CCPR1H until after the period completes (i.e., a match between PR2 and TMR2 registers occurs). While using the PWM, the CCPR1H register is read-only.

Equation 11-2 is used to calculate the PWM pulse width.

Equation 11-3 is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle ratio.

EQUATION 11-2: PULSE WIDTH

$$\text{Pulse Width} = (CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>) \cdot TOSC \cdot (TMR2 \text{ Prescale Value})$$

EQUATION 11-3: DUTY CYCLE RATIO

$$\text{Duty Cycle Ratio} = \frac{(CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>)}{4(PR2 + 1)}$$

The CCPR1H register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

The 8-bit timer TMR2 register is concatenated with either the 2-bit internal system clock (Fosc), or 2 bits of the prescaler, to create the 10-bit time base. The system clock is used if the Timer2 prescaler is set to 1:1.

When the 10-bit time base matches the CCPR1H and 2-bit latch, then the CCP1 pin is cleared (see Figure 11-3).

11.3.3 PWM RESOLUTION

The resolution determines the number of available duty cycles for a given period. For example, a 10-bit resolution will result in 1024 discrete duty cycles, whereas an 8-bit resolution will result in 256 discrete duty cycles.

The maximum PWM resolution is 10 bits when PR2 is 255. The resolution is a function of the PR2 register value as shown by Equation 11-4.

EQUATION 11-4: PWM RESOLUTION

$$\text{Resolution} = \frac{\log[4(PR2 + 1)]}{\log(2)} \text{ bits}$$

Note: If the pulse width value is greater than the period the assigned PWM pin(s) will remain unchanged.

TABLE 11-2: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 20 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.22 kHz	4.88 kHz	19.53 kHz	78.12 kHz	156.3 kHz	208.3 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PR2 Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	10	10	10	8	7	6.6

TABLE 11-3: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 8 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.22 kHz	4.90 kHz	19.61 kHz	76.92 kHz	153.85 kHz	200.0 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PR2 Value	0x65	0x65	0x65	0x19	0x0C	0x09
Maximum Resolution (bits)	8	8	8	6	5	5

11.3.4 OPERATION IN SLEEP MODE

In Sleep mode, the TMR2 register will not increment and the state of the module will not change. If the CCP1 pin is driving a value, it will continue to drive that value. When the device wakes up, TMR2 will continue from its previous state.

11.3.5 CHANGES IN SYSTEM CLOCK FREQUENCY

The PWM frequency is derived from the system clock frequency. Any changes in the system clock frequency will result in changes to the PWM frequency. See **Section 3.0 “Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)”** for additional details.

11.3.6 EFFECTS OF RESET

Any Reset will force all ports to Input mode and the CCP registers to their Reset states.

11.3.7 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Disable the PWM pin (CCP1) output driver by setting the associated TRIS bit.
2. Set the PWM period by loading the PR2 register.
3. Configure the CCP module for the PWM mode by loading the CCP1CON register with the appropriate values.
4. Set the PWM duty cycle by loading the CCPR1L register and DC1B<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register.
5. Configure and start Timer2:
 - Clear the TMR2IF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register.
 - Set the Timer2 prescale value by loading the T2CKPS bits of the T2CON register.
 - Enable Timer2 by setting the TMR2ON bit of the T2CON register.
6. Enable PWM output after a new PWM cycle has started:
 - Wait until Timer2 overflows (TMR2IF bit of the PIR1 register is set).
 - Enable the CCP1 pin output driver by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

11.4 PWM (Enhanced Mode)

The Enhanced PWM Mode can generate a PWM signal on up to four different output pins with up to 10-bits of resolution. It can do this through four different PWM Output modes:

- Single PWM
- Half-Bridge PWM
- Full-Bridge PWM, Forward mode
- Full-Bridge PWM, Reverse mode

To select an Enhanced PWM mode, the P1M bits of the CCP1CON register must be set appropriately.

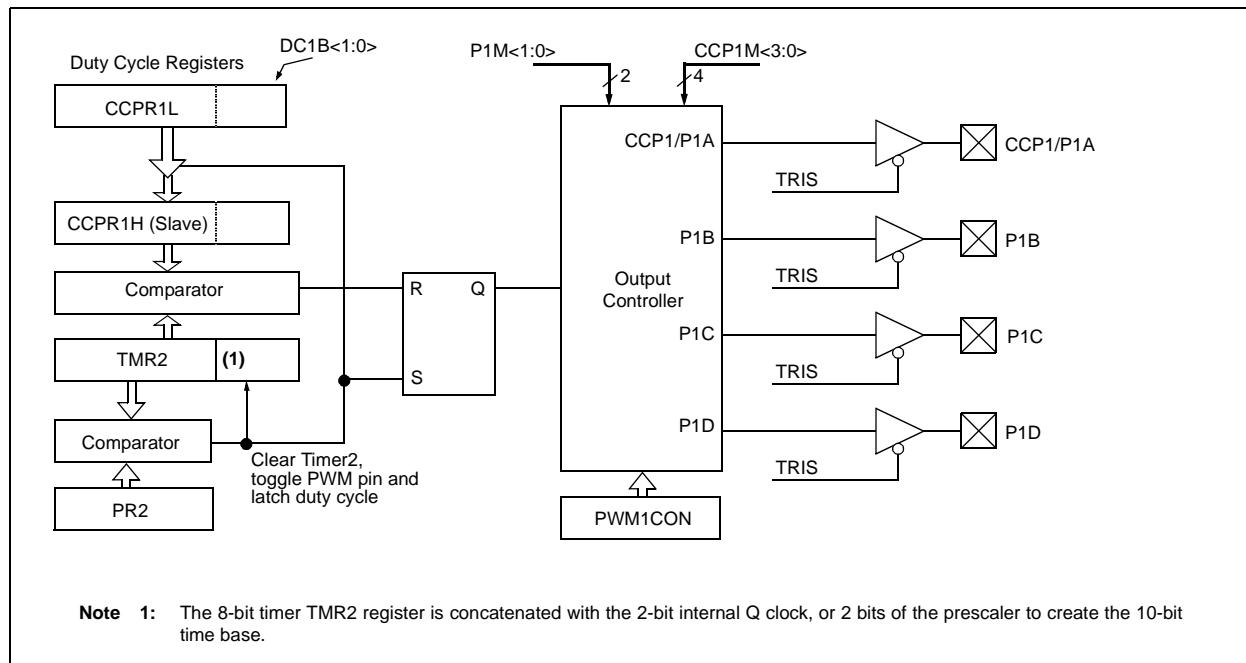
The PWM outputs are multiplexed with I/O pins and are designated P1A, P1B, P1C and P1D. The polarity of the PWM pins is configurable and is selected by setting the CCP1M bits in the CCP1CON register appropriately.

Table 11-4 shows the pin assignments for each Enhanced PWM mode.

Figure 11-5 shows an example of a simplified block diagram of the Enhanced PWM module.

Note: To prevent the generation of an incomplete waveform when the PWM is first enabled, the ECCP module waits until the start of a new PWM period before generating a PWM signal.

FIGURE 11-5: EXAMPLE SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE ENHANCED PWM MODE



Note 1: The TRIS register value for each PWM output must be configured appropriately.

2: Clearing the CCP1CON register will relinquish ECCP control of all PWM output pins.

3: Any pin not used by an Enhanced PWM mode is available for alternate pin functions

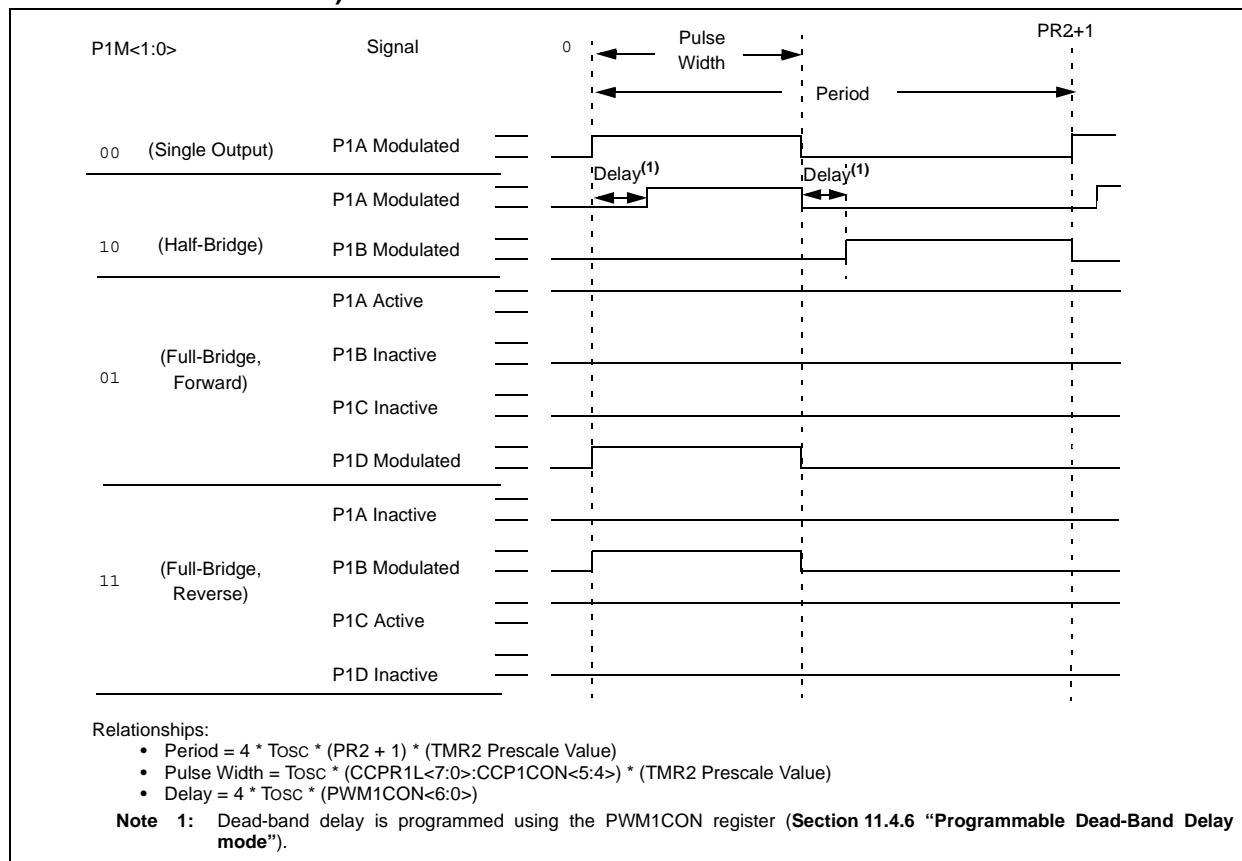
TABLE 11-4: EXAMPLE PIN ASSIGNMENTS FOR VARIOUS PWM ENHANCED MODES

ECCP Mode	P1M<1:0>	CCP1/P1A	P1B	P1C	P1D
Single	00	Yes ⁽¹⁾	Yes ⁽¹⁾	Yes ⁽¹⁾	Yes ⁽¹⁾
Half-Bridge	10	Yes	Yes	No	No
Full-Bridge, Forward	01	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Full-Bridge, Reverse	11	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note 1: Pulse Steering enables outputs in Single mode.

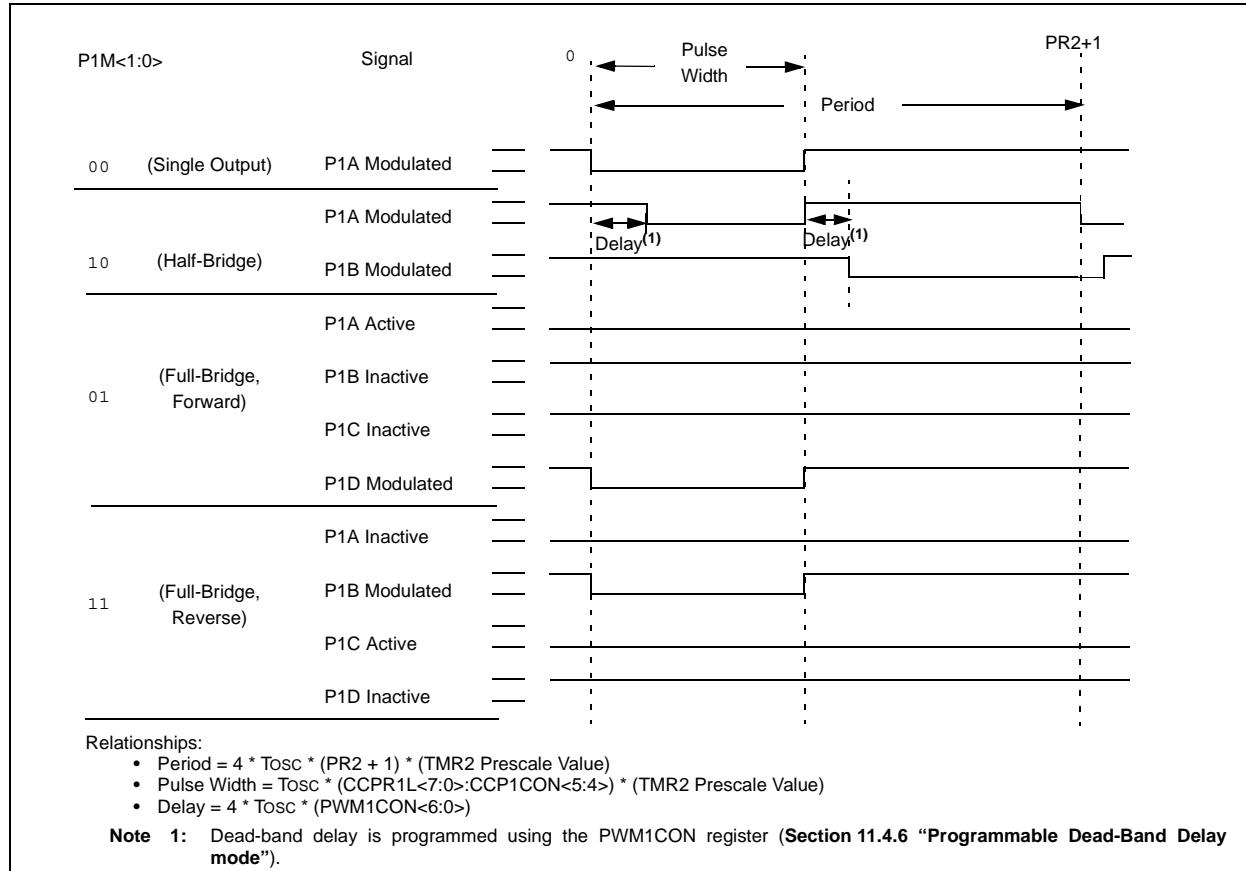
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 11-6: EXAMPLE PWM (ENHANCED MODE) OUTPUT RELATIONSHIPS (ACTIVE-HIGH STATE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 11-7: EXAMPLE ENHANCED PWM OUTPUT RELATIONSHIPS (ACTIVE-LOW STATE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

11.4.1 HALF-BRIDGE MODE

In Half-Bridge mode, two pins are used as outputs to drive push-pull loads. The PWM output signal is output on the CCP1/P1A pin, while the complementary PWM output signal is output on the P1B pin (see Figure 11-6). This mode can be used for Half-Bridge applications, as shown in Figure 11-9, or for Full-Bridge applications, where four power switches are being modulated with two PWM signals.

In Half-Bridge mode, the programmable dead-band delay can be used to prevent shoot-through current in Half-Bridge power devices. The value of the PDC<6:0> bits of the PWM1CON register sets the number of instruction cycles before the output is driven active. If the value is greater than the duty cycle, the corresponding output remains inactive during the entire cycle. See **Section 11.4.6 “Programmable Dead-Band Delay mode”** for more details of the dead-band delay operations.

Since the P1A and P1B outputs are multiplexed with the PORT data latches, the associated TRIS bits must be cleared to configure P1A and P1B as outputs.

FIGURE 11-8: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT

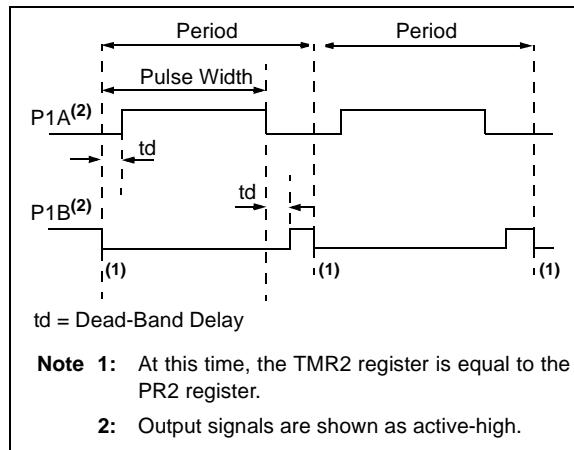
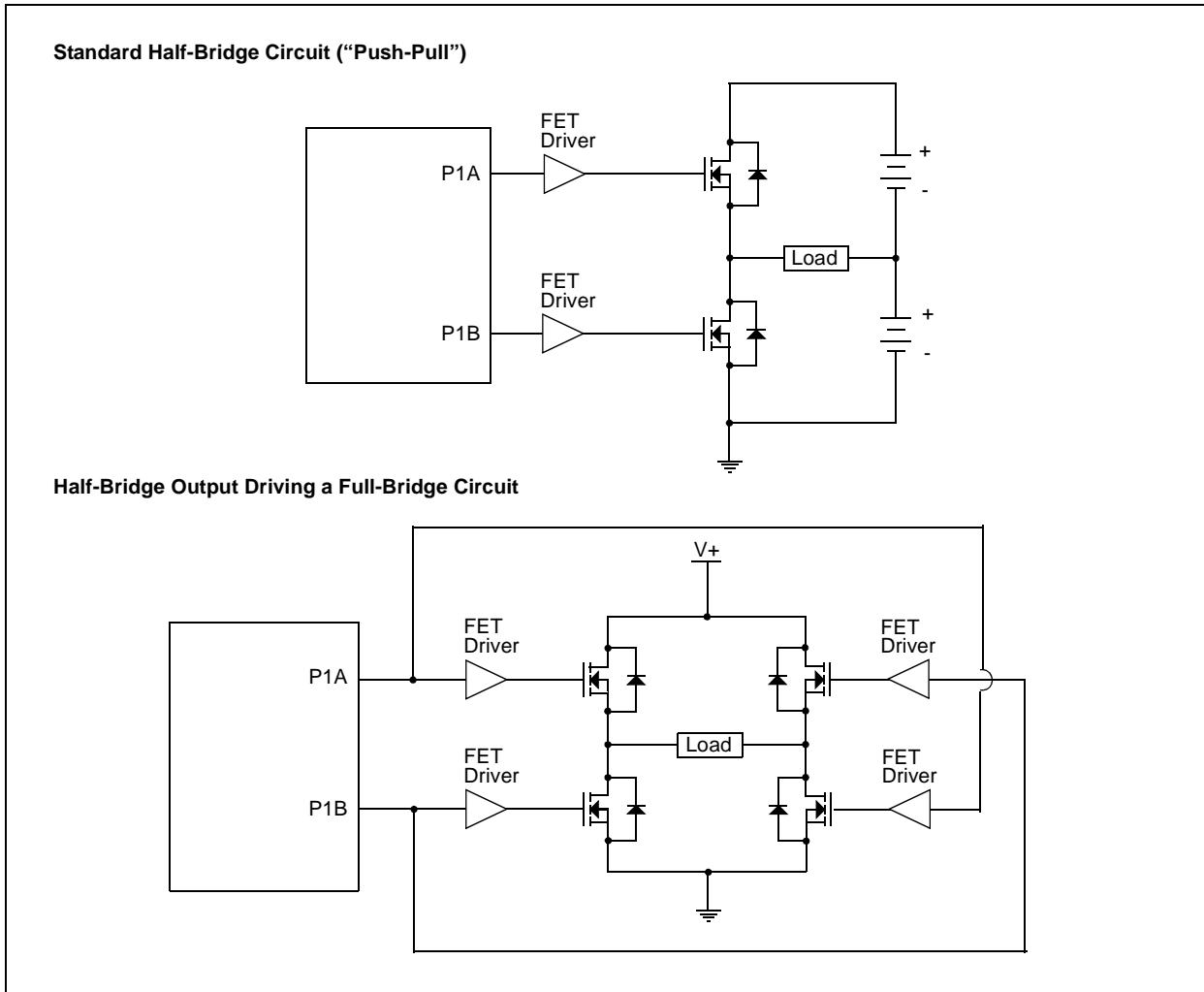


FIGURE 11-9: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE APPLICATIONS



11.4.2 FULL-BRIDGE MODE

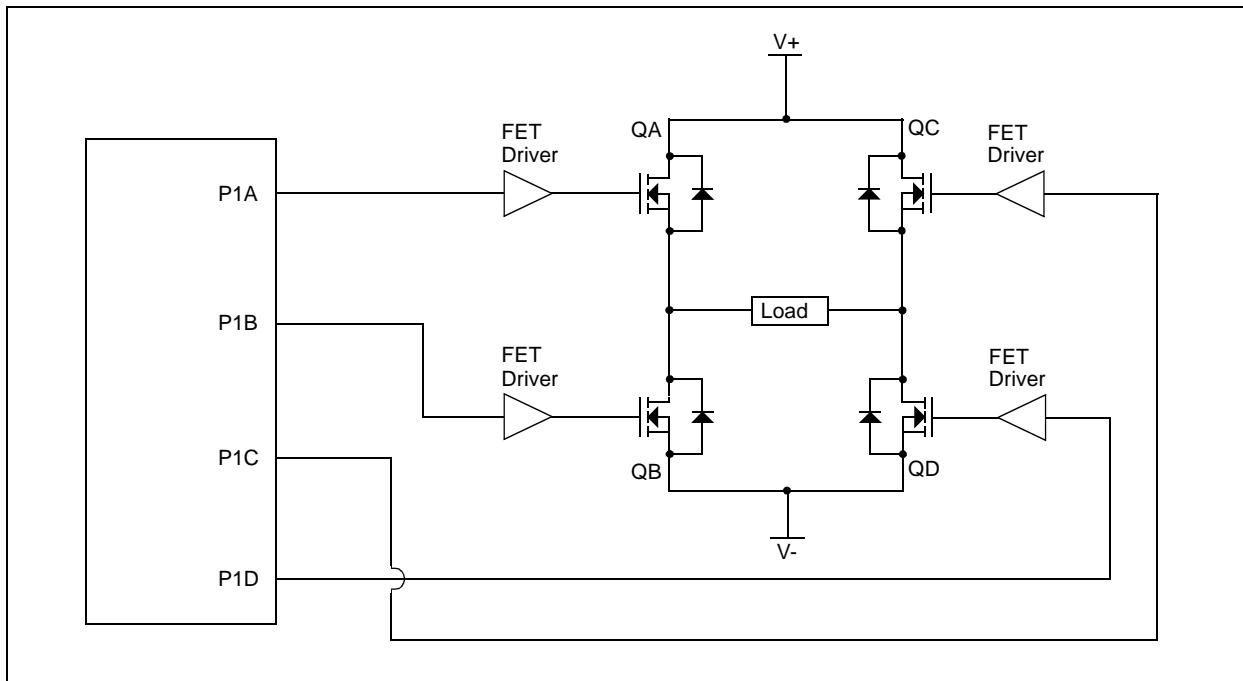
In Full-Bridge mode, all four pins are used as outputs. An example of Full-Bridge application is shown in Figure 11-10.

In the Forward mode, pin CCP1/P1A is driven to its active state, pin P1D is modulated, while P1B and P1C will be driven to their inactive state as shown in Figure 11-11.

In the Reverse mode, P1C is driven to its active state, pin P1B is modulated, while P1A and P1D will be driven to their inactive state as shown Figure 11-11.

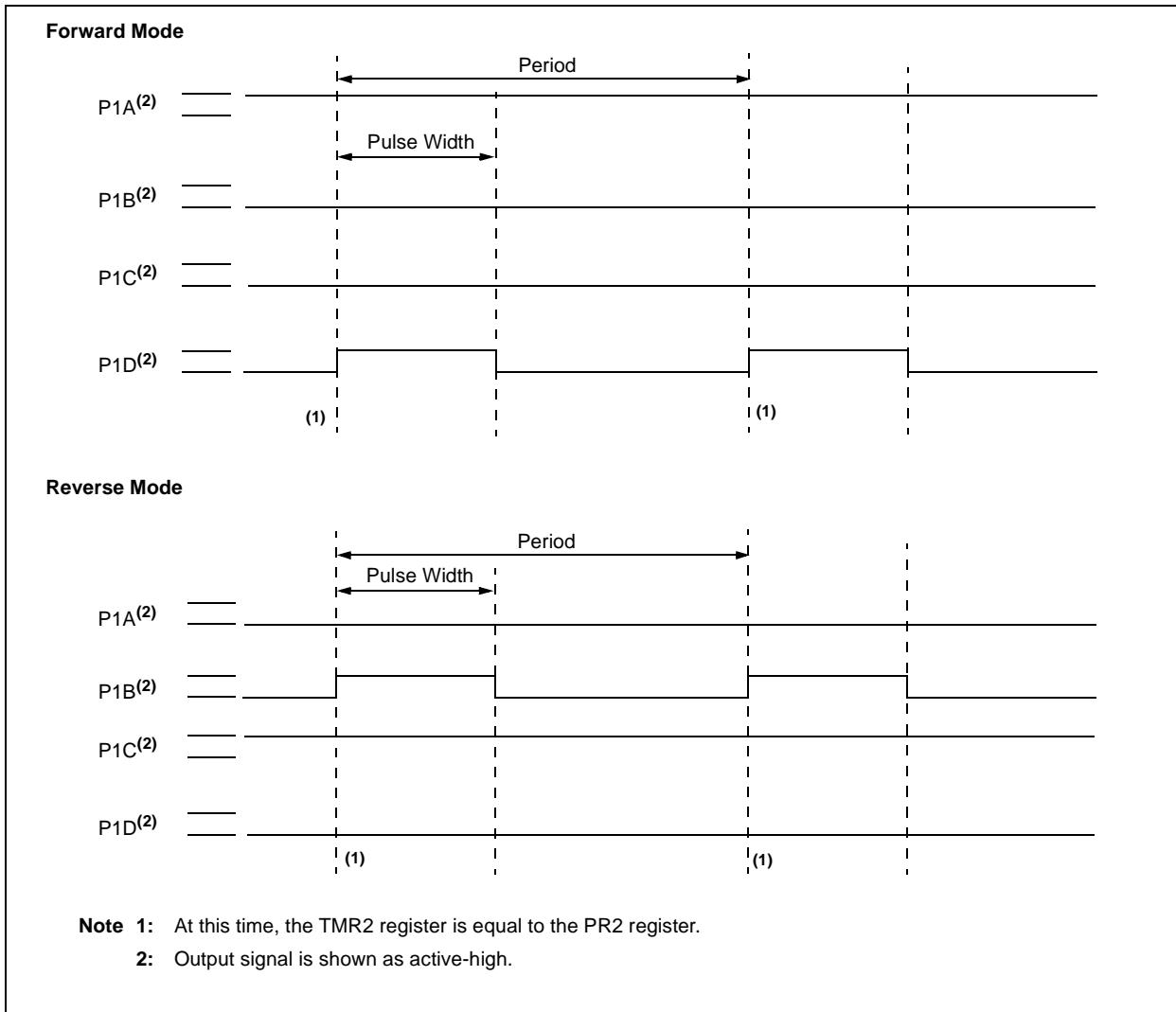
P1A, P1B, P1C and P1D outputs are multiplexed with the PORT data latches. The associated TRIS bits must be cleared to configure the P1A, P1B, P1C and P1D pins as outputs.

FIGURE 11-10: EXAMPLE OF FULL-BRIDGE APPLICATION



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 11-11: EXAMPLE OF FULL-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT



11.4.2.1 Direction Change in Full-Bridge Mode

In the Full-Bridge mode, the P1M1 bit in the CCP1CON register allows users to control the forward/reverse direction. When the application firmware changes this direction control bit, the module will change to the new direction on the next PWM cycle.

A direction change is initiated in software by changing the P1M1 bit of the CCP1CON register. The following sequence occurs four Timer2 cycles prior to the end of the current PWM period:

- The modulated outputs (P1B and P1D) are placed in their inactive state.
- The associated unmodulated outputs (P1A and P1C) are switched to drive in the opposite direction.
- PWM modulation resumes at the beginning of the next period.

See Figure 11-12 for an illustration of this sequence.

The Full-Bridge mode does not provide dead-band delay. As one output is modulated at a time, dead-band delay is generally not required. There is a situation where dead-band delay is required. This situation occurs when both of the following conditions are true:

1. The direction of the PWM output changes when the duty cycle of the output is at or near 100%.
2. The turn off time of the power switch, including the power device and driver circuit, is greater than the turn on time.

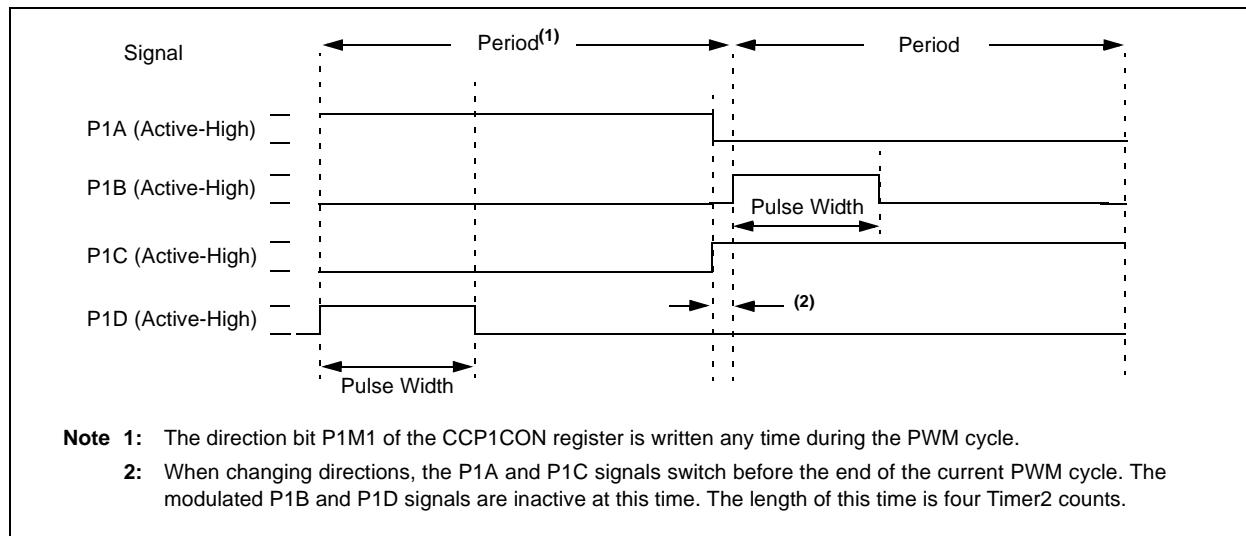
Figure 11-13 shows an example of the PWM direction changing from forward to reverse, at a near 100% duty cycle. In this example, at time t_1 , the output P1A and P1D become inactive, while output P1C becomes active. Since the turn off time of the power devices is longer than the turn on time, a shoot-through current will flow through power devices QC and QD (see Figure 11-10) for the duration of ' t '. The same phenomenon will occur to power devices QA and QB for PWM direction change from reverse to forward.

If changing PWM direction at high duty cycle is required for an application, two possible solutions for eliminating the shoot-through current are:

1. Reduce PWM duty cycle for one PWM period before changing directions.
2. Use switch drivers that can drive the switches off faster than they can drive them on.

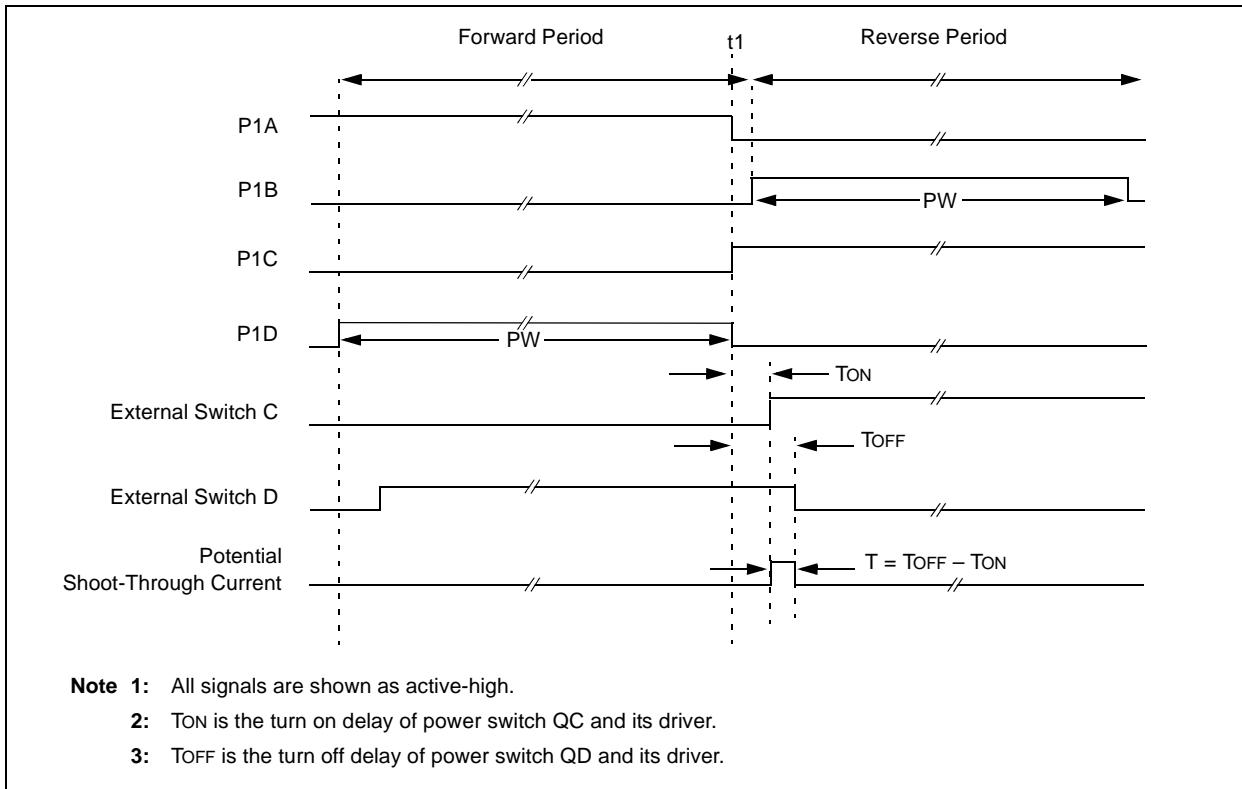
Other options to prevent shoot-through current may exist.

FIGURE 11-12: EXAMPLE OF PWM DIRECTION CHANGE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 11-13: EXAMPLE OF PWM DIRECTION CHANGE AT NEAR 100% DUTY CYCLE



11.4.3 START-UP CONSIDERATIONS

When any PWM mode is used, the application hardware must use the proper external pull-up and/or pull-down resistors on the PWM output pins.

Note: When the microcontroller is released from Reset, all of the I/O pins are in the high-impedance state. The external circuits must keep the power switch devices in the OFF state until the microcontroller drives the I/O pins with the proper signal levels or activates the PWM output(s).

The CCP1M<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register allow the user to choose whether the PWM output signals are active-high or active-low for each pair of PWM output pins (P1A/P1C and P1B/P1D). The PWM output polarities must be selected before the PWM pin output drivers are enabled. Changing the polarity configuration while the PWM pin output drivers are enabled is not recommended since it may result in damage to the application circuits.

The P1A, P1B, P1C and P1D output latches may not be in the proper states when the PWM module is initialized. Enabling the PWM pin output drivers at the same time as the Enhanced PWM modes may cause damage to the application circuit. The Enhanced PWM modes must be enabled in the proper Output mode and complete a full PWM cycle before enabling the PWM pin output drivers. The completion of a full PWM cycle is indicated by the TMR2IF bit of the PIR1 register being set as the second PWM period begins.

11.4.4 ENHANCED PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN MODE

The PWM mode supports an Auto-Shutdown mode that will disable the PWM outputs when an external shutdown event occurs. Auto-Shutdown mode places the PWM output pins into a predetermined state. This mode is used to help prevent the PWM from damaging the application.

The auto-shutdown sources are selected using the ECCPAS_x bits of the ECCPAS register. A shutdown event may be generated by:

- A logic '0' on the INT pin
- Comparator C1
- Comparator C2
- Setting the ECCPASE bit in firmware

A shutdown condition is indicated by the ECCPASE (Auto-Shutdown Event Status) bit of the ECCPAS register. If the bit is a '0', the PWM pins are operating normally. If the bit is a '1', the PWM outputs are in the shutdown state.

When a shutdown event occurs, two things happen:

The ECCPASE bit is set to '1'. The ECCPASE will remain set until cleared in firmware or an auto-restart occurs (see **Section 11.4.5 "Auto-Restart Mode"**).

The enabled PWM pins are asynchronously placed in their shutdown states. The PWM output pins are grouped into pairs [P1A/P1C] and [P1B/P1D]. The state of each pin pair is determined by the PSSAC and PSSBD bits of the ECCPAS register. Each pin pair may be placed into one of three states:

- Drive logic '1'
- Drive logic '0'
- Tri-state (high-impedance)

REGISTER 11-2: ECCPAS: ENHANCED CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ECCPASE	ECCPAS2	ECCPAS1	ECCPAS0	PSSAC1	PSSAC0	PSSBD1	PSSBD0
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

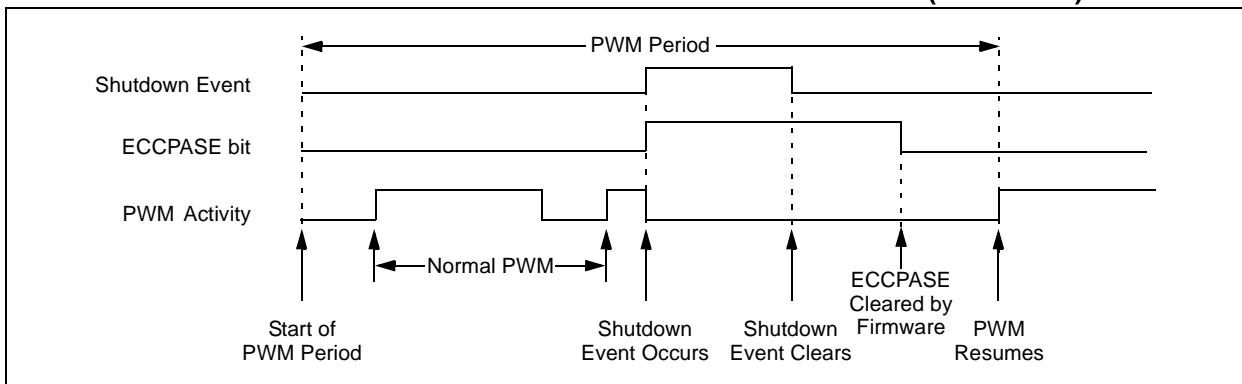
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	ECCPASE: ECCP Auto-Shutdown Event Status bit 1 = A shutdown event has occurred; ECCP outputs are in shutdown state 0 = ECCP outputs are operating
bit 6-4	ECCPAS<2:0>: ECCP Auto-shutdown Source Select bits 000 = Auto-Shutdown is disabled 001 = Comparator C1 output change 010 = Comparator C2 output change ⁽¹⁾ 011 = Either Comparator C1 or C2 change 100 = VIL on INT pin 101 = VIL on INT pin or Comparator C1 change 110 = VIL on INT pin or Comparator C2 change 111 = VIL on INT pin or Comparator C1 or C2 change
bit 3-2	PSSAC_n: Pins P1A and P1C Shutdown State Control bits 00 = Drive pins P1A and P1C to '0' 01 = Drive pins P1A and P1C to '1' 1x = Pins P1A and P1C tri-state
bit 1-0	PSSBD_n: Pins P1B and P1D Shutdown State Control bits 00 = Drive pins P1B and P1D to '0' 01 = Drive pins P1B and P1D to '1' 1x = Pins P1B and P1D tri-state

Note 1: If C2SYNC is enabled, the shutdown will be delayed by Timer1.

- Note 1:** The auto-shutdown condition is a level-based signal, not an edge-based signal. As long as the level is present, the auto-shutdown will persist.
- 2:** Writing to the ECCPASE bit is disabled while an auto-shutdown condition persists.
- 3:** Once the auto-shutdown condition has been removed and the PWM restarted (either through firmware or auto-restart) the PWM signal will always restart at the beginning of the next PWM period.

FIGURE 11-14: PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN WITH FIRMWARE RESTART (PRSEN = 0)

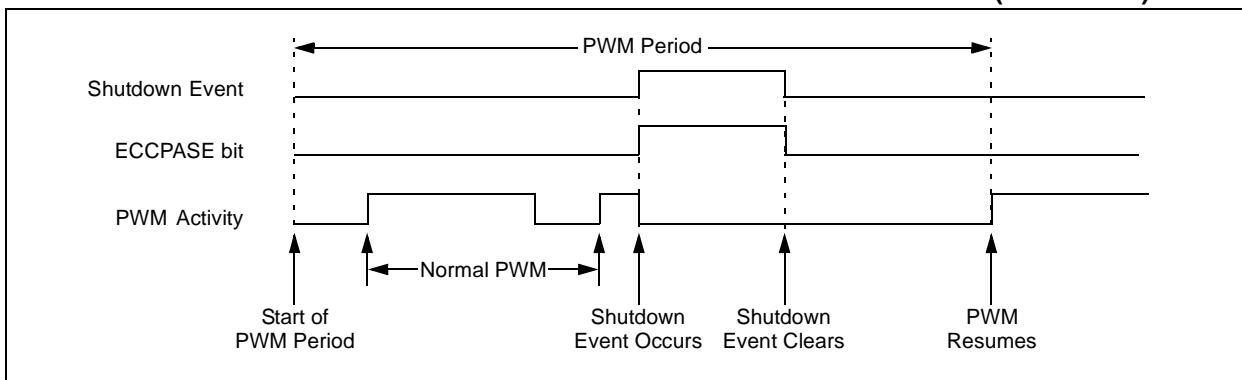


11.4.5 AUTO-RESTART MODE

The Enhanced PWM can be configured to automatically restart the PWM signal once the auto-shutdown condition has been removed. Auto-restart is enabled by setting the PRSEN bit in the PWM1CON register.

If auto-restart is enabled, the ECCPASE bit will remain set as long as the auto-shutdown condition is active. When the auto-shutdown condition is removed, the ECCPASE bit will be cleared via hardware and normal operation will resume.

FIGURE 11-15: PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN WITH AUTO-RESTART ENABLED (PRSEN = 1)

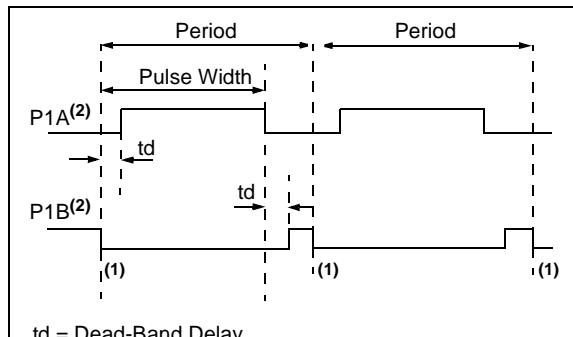


11.4.6 PROGRAMMABLE DEAD-BAND DELAY MODE

In Half-Bridge applications where all power switches are modulated at the PWM frequency, the power switches normally require more time to turn off than to turn on. If both the upper and lower power switches are switched at the same time (one turned on, and the other turned off), both switches may be on for a short period of time until one switch completely turns off. During this brief interval, a very high current (*shoot-through current*) will flow through both power switches, shorting the bridge supply. To avoid this potentially destructive shoot-through current from flowing during switching, turning on either of the power switches is normally delayed to allow the other switch to completely turn off.

In Half-Bridge mode, a digitally programmable dead-band delay is available to avoid shoot-through current from destroying the bridge power switches. The delay occurs at the signal transition from the non-active state to the active state. See Figure 11-8 for illustration. The lower seven bits of the associated PWM1CON register (Register 11-3) sets the delay period in terms of microcontroller instruction cycles (TCY or 4 Tosc).

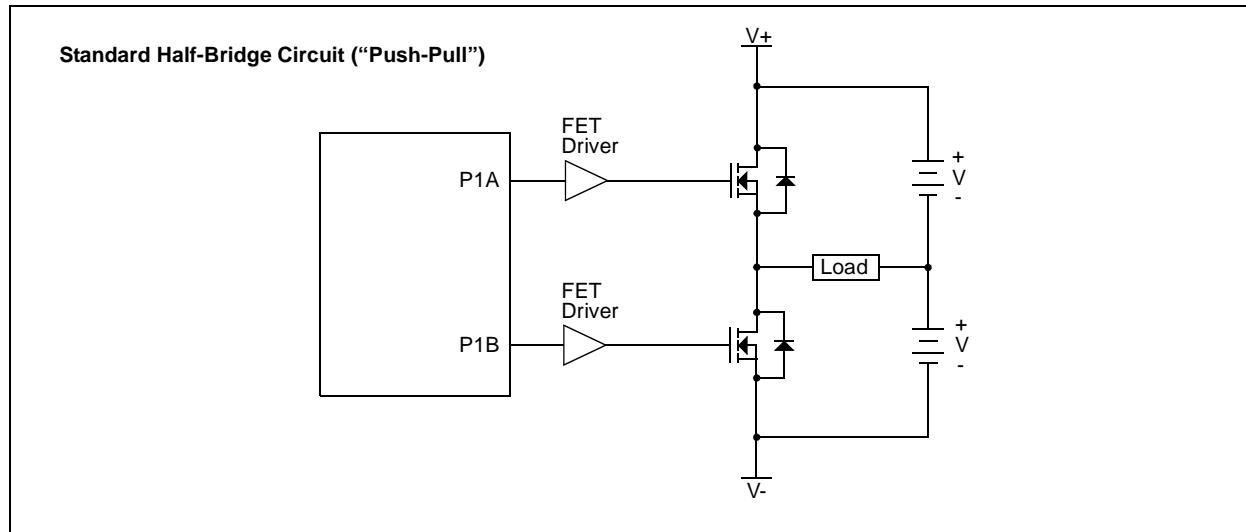
FIGURE 11-16: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT



Note 1: At this time, the TMR2 register is equal to the PR2 register.

2: Output signals are shown as active-high.

FIGURE 11-17: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE APPLICATIONS



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 11-3: PWM1CON: ENHANCED PWM CONTROL REGISTER

| R/W-0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRSEN | PDC6 | PDC5 | PDC4 | PDC3 | PDC2 | PDC1 | PDC0 |
| bit 7 | bit 0 | | | | | | |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **PRSEN:** PWM Restart Enable bit

1 = Upon auto-shutdown, the ECCPASE bit clears automatically once the shutdown event goes away; the PWM restarts automatically
0 = Upon auto-shutdown, ECCPASE must be cleared in software to restart the PWM

bit 6-0 **PDC<6:0>:** PWM Delay Count bits

PDCn = Number of Fosc/4 (4 * Tosc) cycles between the scheduled time when a PWM signal **should** transition active and the **actual** time it transitions active

Note 1: Bit resets to '0' with Two-Speed Start-up and LP, XT or HS selected as the Oscillator mode or Fail-Safe mode is enabled.

11.4.7 PULSE STEERING MODE

In Single Output mode, pulse steering allows any of the PWM pins to be the modulated signal. Additionally, the same PWM signal can be simultaneously available on multiple pins.

Once the Single Output mode is selected ($\text{CCP1M}\langle 3:2 \rangle = 11$ and $\text{P1M}\langle 1:0 \rangle = 00$ of the CCP1CON register), the user firmware can bring out the same PWM signal to one, two, three or four output pins by setting the appropriate STR<D:A> bits of the PSTRCON register, as shown in Figure 11-18.

Note: The associated TRIS bits must be set to output ('0') to enable the pin output driver in order to see the PWM signal on the pin.

While the PWM Steering mode is active, CCP1M<1:0> bits of the CCP1CON register select the PWM output polarity for the P1<D:A> pins.

The PWM auto-shutdown operation also applies to PWM Steering mode as described in **Section 11.4.4 “Enhanced PWM Auto-shutdown mode”**. An auto-shutdown event will only affect pins that have PWM outputs enabled.

REGISTER 11-4: PSTRCON: PULSE STEERING CONTROL REGISTER⁽¹⁾

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	—	STRSYNC	STRD	STRC	STRB	STRA
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

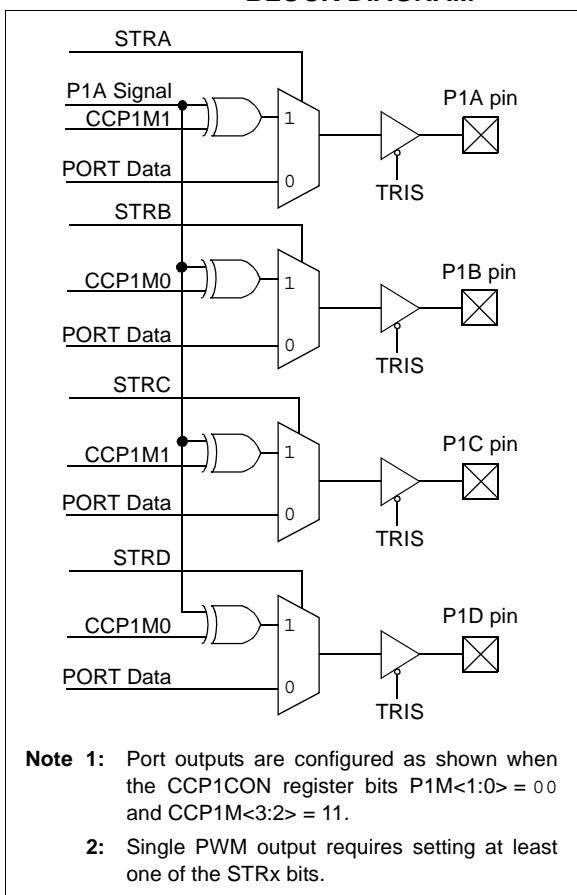
x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 4	STRSYNC: Steering Sync bit 1 = Output steering update occurs on next PWM period 0 = Output steering update occurs at the beginning of the instruction cycle boundary
bit 3	STRD: Steering Enable bit D 1 = P1D pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCP1M<1:0> 0 = P1D pin is assigned to port pin
bit 2	STRC: Steering Enable bit C 1 = P1C pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCP1M<1:0> 0 = P1C pin is assigned to port pin
bit 1	STRB: Steering Enable bit B 1 = P1B pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCP1M<1:0> 0 = P1B pin is assigned to port pin
bit 0	STRA: Steering Enable bit A 1 = P1A pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCP1M<1:0> 0 = P1A pin is assigned to port pin

Note 1: The PWM Steering mode is available only when the CCP1CON register bits CCP1M<3:2> = 11 and P1M<1:0> = 00.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 11-18: SIMPLIFIED STEERING
BLOCK DIAGRAM



11.4.7.1 Steering Synchronization

The STRSYNC bit of the PSTRCON register gives the user two selections of when the steering event will happen. When the STRSYNC bit is '0', the steering event will happen at the end of the instruction that writes to the PSTRCON register. In this case, the output signal at the P1<D:A> pins may be an incomplete PWM waveform. This operation is useful when the user firmware needs to immediately remove a PWM signal from the pin.

When the STRSYNC bit is '1', the effective steering update will happen at the beginning of the next PWM period. In this case, steering on/off the PWM output will always produce a complete PWM waveform.

Figures 11-19 and 11-20 illustrate the timing diagrams of the PWM steering depending on the STRSYNC setting.

FIGURE 11-19: EXAMPLE OF STEERING EVENT AT END OF INSTRUCTION (STRSYNC = 0)

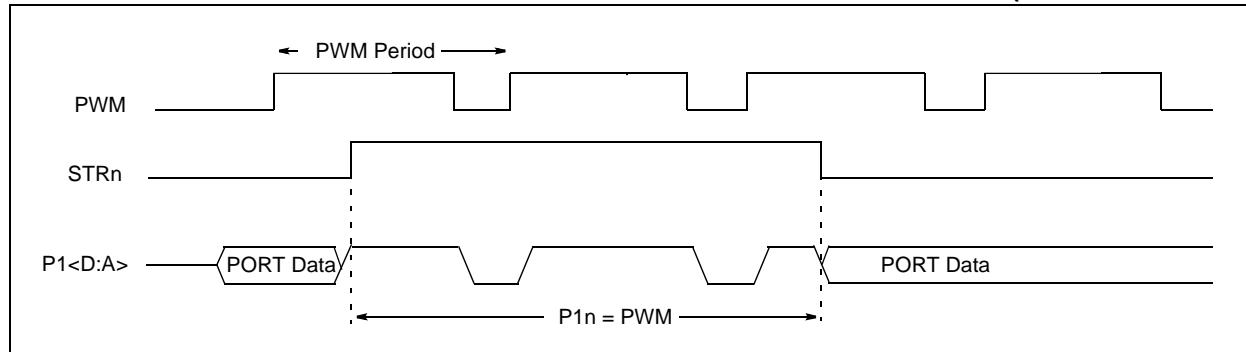
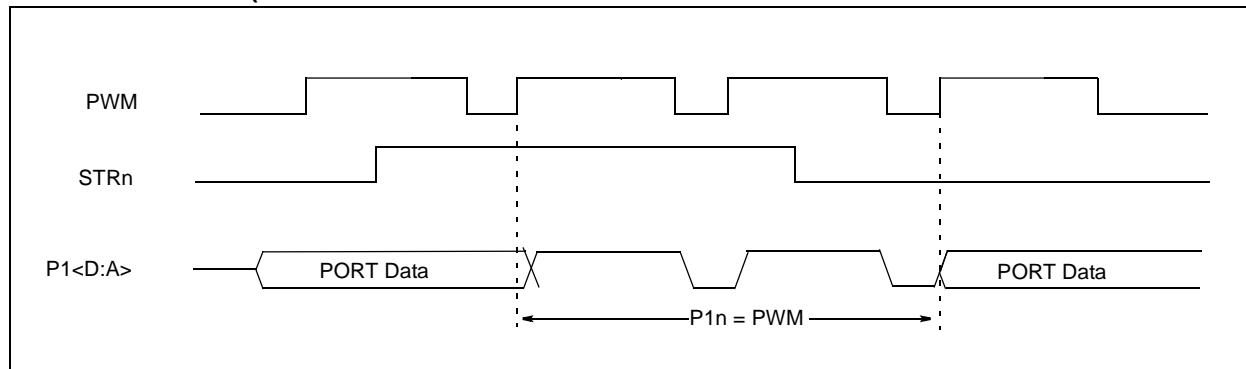


FIGURE 11-20: EXAMPLE OF STEERING EVENT AT BEGINNING OF INSTRUCTION (STRSYNC = 1)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 11-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE AND PWM

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
CCP1CON	P1M1	P1M0	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1R	C1CH1	C1CHO	0000 -000	0000 -000
CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2R	C2CH1	C2CHO	0000 -000	0000 -000
CM2CON1	MC1OUT	MC2OUT	—	—	—	—	T1GSS	C2SYNC	00-- --10	00-- --10
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ECCPAS	ECCPASE	ECCPAS2	ECCPAS1	ECCPAS0	PSSAC1	PSSAC0	PSSBD1	PSSBD0	0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
PSTRCON	—	—	—	STRSYNC	STRD	STRC	STRB	STRA	---0 0001	---0 0001
PWM1CON	PRSEN	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	PDC3	PDC2	PDC1	PDC0	0000 0000	0000 0000
T1CON	T1GINV	TMR1GE	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the Capture, Compare and PWM.

12.0 ENHANCED UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (EUSART)

The Enhanced Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (EUSART) module is a serial I/O communications peripheral. It contains all the clock generators, shift registers and data buffers necessary to perform an input or output serial data transfer independent of device program execution. The EUSART, also known as a Serial Communications Interface (SCI), can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system or half-duplex synchronous system. Full-Duplex mode is useful for communications with peripheral systems, such as CRT terminals and personal computers. Half-Duplex Synchronous mode is intended for communications with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs or other microcontrollers. These devices typically do not have internal clocks for baud rate generation and require the external clock signal provided by a master synchronous device.

The EUSART module includes the following capabilities:

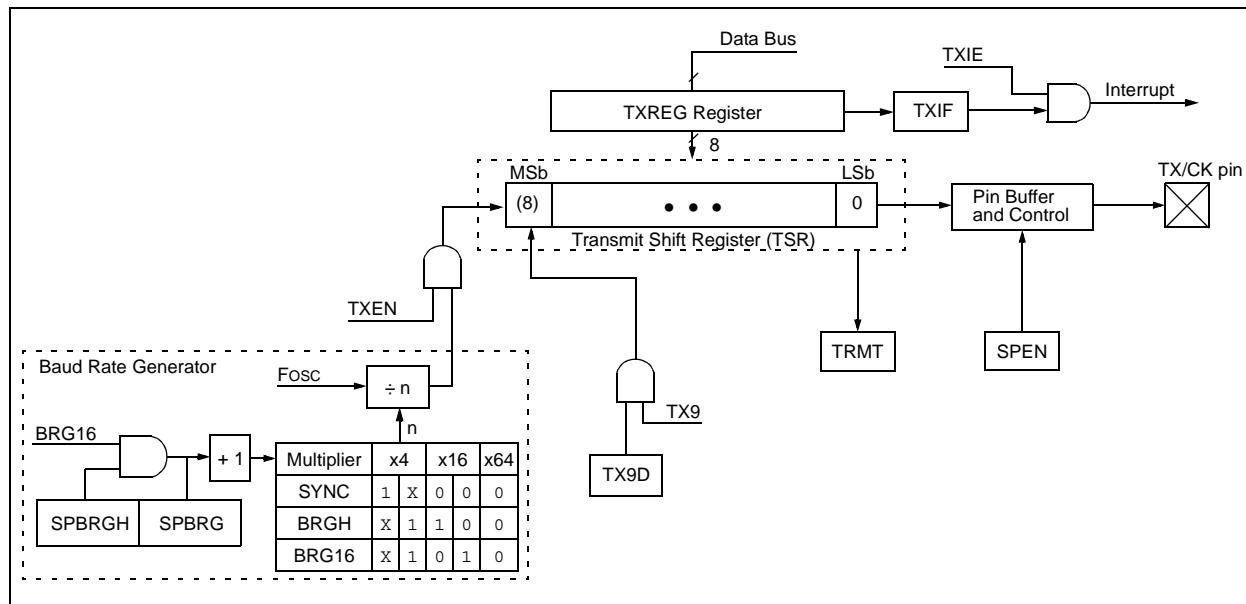
- Full-duplex asynchronous transmit and receive
- Two-character input buffer
- One-character output buffer
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit character length
- Address detection in 9-bit mode
- Input buffer overrun error detection
- Received character framing error detection
- Half-duplex synchronous master
- Half-duplex synchronous slave
- Programmable clock polarity in synchronous modes

The EUSART module implements the following additional features, making it ideally suited for use in Local Interconnect Network (LIN) bus systems:

- Automatic detection and calibration of the baud rate
- Wake-up on Break reception
- 13-bit Break character transmit

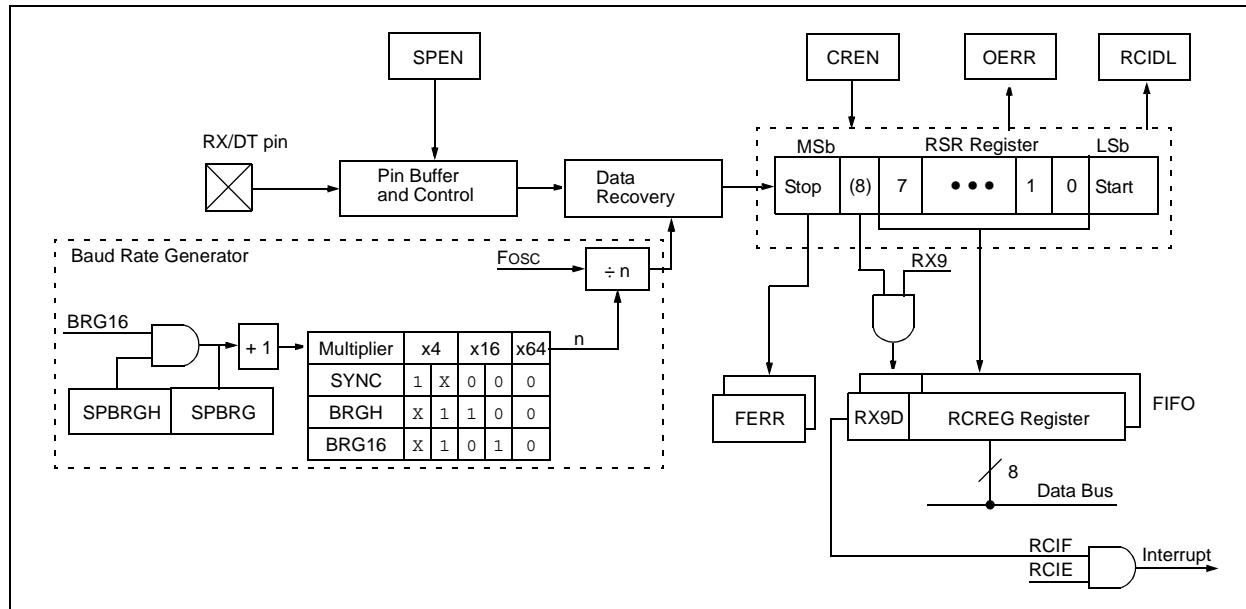
Block diagrams of the EUSART transmitter and receiver are shown in Figure 12-1 and Figure 12-2.

FIGURE 12-1: EUSART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 12-2: EUSART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM



The operation of the EUSART module is controlled through three registers:

- Transmit Status and Control (TXSTA)
- Receive Status and Control (RCSTA)
- Baud Rate Control (BAUDCTL)

These registers are detailed in Register 12-1, Register 12-2 and Register 12-3, respectively.

12.1 EUSART Asynchronous Mode

The EUSART transmits and receives data using the standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format. NRZ is implemented with two levels: a VOH mark state which represents a '1' data bit, and a VOL space state which represents a '0' data bit. NRZ refers to the fact that consecutively transmitted data bits of the same value stay at the output level of that bit without returning to a neutral level between each bit transmission. An NRZ transmission port idles in the mark state. Each character transmission consists of one Start bit followed by eight or nine data bits and is always terminated by one or more Stop bits. The Start bit is always a space and the Stop bits are always marks. The most common data format is 8 bits. Each transmitted bit persists for a period of 1/(Baud Rate). An on-chip dedicated 8-bit/16-bit Baud Rate Generator is used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the system oscillator. See Table 12-5 for examples of baud rate configurations.

The EUSART transmits and receives the LSb first. The EUSART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but share the same data format and baud rate. Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software and stored as the ninth data bit.

12.1.1 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The EUSART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 12-1. The heart of the transmitter is the serial Transmit Shift Register (TSR), which is not directly accessible by software. The TSR obtains its data from the transmit buffer, which is the TXREG register.

12.1.1.1 Enabling the Transmitter

The EUSART transmitter is enabled for asynchronous operations by configuring the following three control bits:

- TXEN = 1
- SYNC = 0
- SPEN = 1

All other EUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the TXEN bit of the TXSTA register enables the transmitter circuitry of the EUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the EUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the EUSART and automatically configures the TX/CK I/O pin as an output. If the TX/CK pin is shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O function must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bit.

Note 1: When the SPEN bit is set, the RX/DT I/O pin is automatically configured as an input, regardless of the state of the corresponding TRIS bit and whether or not the EUSART receiver is enabled. The RX/DT pin data can be read via a normal PORT read but PORT latch data output is precluded.

2: The TXIF transmitter interrupt flag is set when the TXEN enable bit is set.

12.1.1.2 Transmitting Data

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXREG register. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXREG is immediately transferred to the TSR register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character, the new character data is held in the TXREG until the Stop bit of the previous character has been transmitted. The pending character in the TXREG is then transferred to the TSR in one Tcy immediately following the Stop bit transmission. The transmission of the Start bit, data bits and Stop bit sequence commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXREG.

12.1.1.3 Transmit Interrupt Flag

The TXIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set whenever the EUSART transmitter is enabled and no character is being held for transmission in the TXREG. In other words, the TXIF bit is only clear when the TSR is busy with a character and a new character has been queued for transmission in the TXREG. The TXIF flag bit is not cleared immediately upon writing TXREG. TXIF becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the write execution. Polling TXIF immediately following the TXREG write will return invalid results. The TXIF bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

The TXIF interrupt can be enabled by setting the TXIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register. However, the TXIF flag bit will be set whenever the TXREG is empty, regardless of the state of TXIE enable bit.

To use interrupts when transmitting data, set the TXIE bit only when there is more data to send. Clear the TXIE interrupt enable bit upon writing the last character of the transmission to the TXREG.

12.1.1.4 TSR Status

The TRMT bit of the TXSTA register indicates the status of the TSR register. This is a read-only bit. The TRMT bit is set when the TSR register is empty and is cleared when a character is transferred to the TSR register from the TXREG. The TRMT bit remains clear until all bits have been shifted out of the TSR register. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit to determine the TSR status.

Note: The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

12.1.1.5 Transmitting 9-Bit Characters

The EUSART supports 9-bit character transmissions. When the TX9 bit of the TXSTA register is set the EUSART will shift 9 bits out for each character transmitted. The TX9D bit of the TXSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit. When transmitting 9-bit data, the TX9D data bit must be written before writing the 8 Least Significant bits into the TXREG. All nine bits of data will be transferred to the TSR shift register immediately after the TXREG is written.

A special 9-bit Address mode is available for use with multiple receivers. See **Section 12.1.2.7 "Address Detection"** for more information on the Address mode.

12.1.1.6 Asynchronous Transmission Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 12.3 "EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 control bit. A set ninth data bit will indicate that the 8 Least Significant data bits are an address when the receiver is set for address detection.
4. Enable the transmission by setting the TXEN control bit. This will cause the TXIF interrupt bit to be set.
5. If interrupts are desired, set the TXIE interrupt enable bit. An interrupt will occur immediately provided that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are also set.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded into the TX9D data bit.
7. Load 8-bit data into the TXREG register. This will start the transmission.

FIGURE 12-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

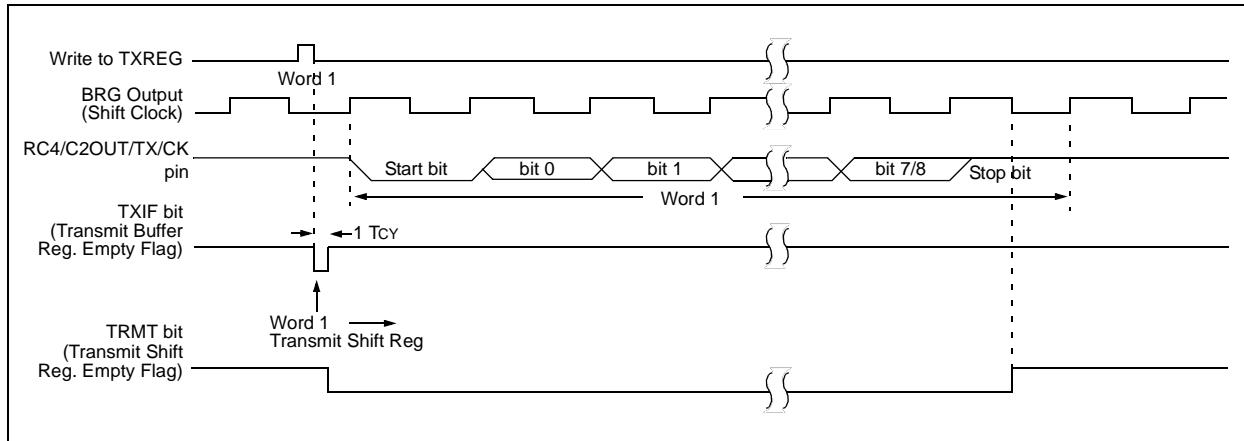
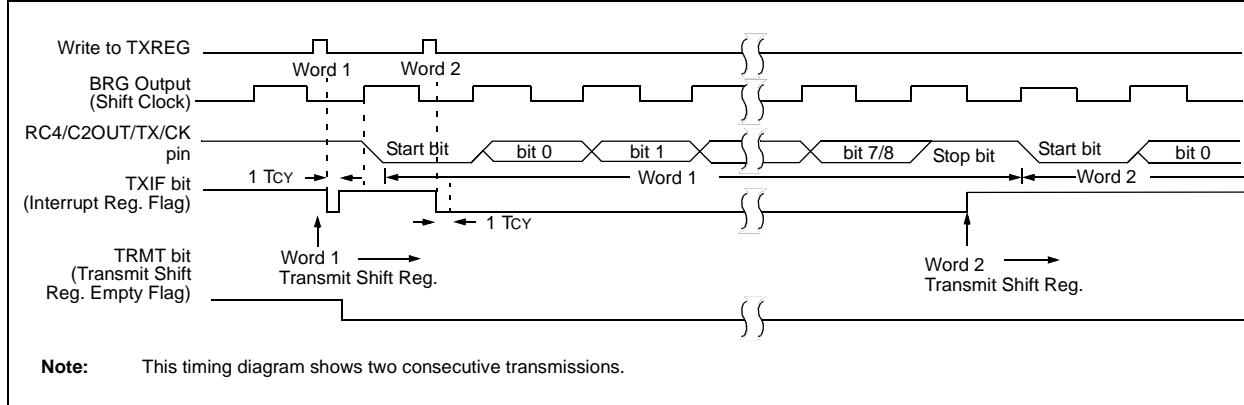


FIGURE 12-4: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 12-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Transmission.

12.1.2 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The Asynchronous mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems. The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 12-2. The data is received on the RX/DT pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter operating at 16 times the baud rate, whereas the serial Receive Shift Register (RSR) operates at the bit rate. When all 8 or 9 bits of the character have been shifted in, they are immediately transferred to a two character First-In-First-Out (FIFO) memory. The FIFO buffering allows reception of two complete characters and the start of a third character before software must start servicing the EUSART receiver. The FIFO and RSR registers are not directly accessible by software. Access to the received data is via the RCREG register.

12.1.2.1 Enabling the Receiver

The EUSART receiver is enabled for asynchronous operation by configuring the following three control bits:

- CREN = 1
- SYNC = 0
- SPEN = 1

All other EUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the CREN bit of the RCSTA register enables the receiver circuitry of the EUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the EUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the EUSART and automatically configures the RX/DT I/O pin as an input. If the RX/DT pin is shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O function must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bit.

Note: When the SPEN bit is set the TX/CK I/O pin is automatically configured as an output, regardless of the state of the corresponding TRIS bit and whether or not the EUSART transmitter is enabled. The PORT latch is disconnected from the output driver so it is not possible to use the TX/CK pin as a general purpose output.

12.1.2.2 Receiving Data

The receiver data recovery circuit initiates character reception on the falling edge of the first bit. The first bit, also known as the Start bit, is always a zero. The data recovery circuit counts one-half bit time to the center of the Start bit and verifies that the bit is still a zero. If it is not a zero then the data recovery circuit aborts character reception, without generating an error, and resumes looking for the falling edge of the Start bit. If the Start bit zero verification succeeds then the data recovery circuit counts a full bit time to the center of the next bit. The bit is then sampled by a majority detect circuit and the resulting '0' or '1' is shifted into the RSR. This repeats until all data bits have been sampled and shifted into the RSR. One final bit time is measured and the level sampled. This is the Stop bit, which is always a '1'. If the data recovery circuit samples a '0' in the Stop bit position then a framing error is set for this character, otherwise the framing error is cleared for this character. See **Section 12.1.2.4 “Receive Framing Error”** for more information on framing errors.

Immediately after all data bits and the Stop bit have been received, the character in the RSR is transferred to the EUSART receive FIFO and the RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set. The top character in the FIFO is transferred out of the FIFO by reading the RCREG register.

Note: If the receive FIFO is overrun, no additional characters will be received until the overrun condition is cleared. See **Section 12.1.2.5 “Receive Overrun Error”** for more information on overrun errors.

12.1.2.3 Receive Interrupts

The RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set whenever the EUSART receiver is enabled and there is an unread character in the receive FIFO. The RCIF interrupt flag bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

RCIF interrupts are enabled by setting the following bits:

- RCIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register
- PEIE peripheral interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register
- GIE global interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register

The RCIF interrupt flag bit will be set when there is an unread character in the FIFO, regardless of the state of interrupt enable bits.

12.1.2.4 Receive Framing Error

Each character in the receive FIFO buffer has a corresponding framing error status bit. A framing error indicates that a Stop bit was not seen at the expected time. The framing error status is accessed via the FERR bit of the RCSTA register. The FERR bit represents the status of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. Therefore, the FERR bit must be read before reading the RCREG.

The FERR bit is read-only and only applies to the top unread character in the receive FIFO. A framing error (FERR = 1) does not preclude reception of additional characters. It is not necessary to clear the FERR bit. Reading the next character from the FIFO buffer will advance the FIFO to the next character and the next corresponding framing error.

The FERR bit can be forced clear by clearing the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register which resets the EUSART. Clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register does not affect the FERR bit. A framing error by itself does not generate an interrupt.

Note: If all receive characters in the receive FIFO have framing errors, repeated reads of the RCREG will not clear the FERR bit.

12.1.2.5 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated if a third character, in its entirety, is received before the FIFO is accessed. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCSTA register is set. The characters already in the FIFO buffer can be read but no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The error must be cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register or by resetting the EUSART by clearing the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register.

12.1.2.6 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The EUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCSTA register is set the EUSART will shift 9 bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCSTA register is the ninth and Most Significant data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCREG.

12.1.2.7 Address Detection

A special Address Detection mode is available for use when multiple receivers share the same transmission line, such as in RS-485 systems. Address detection is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register.

Address detection requires 9-bit character reception. When address detection is enabled, only characters with the ninth data bit set will be transferred to the receive FIFO buffer, thereby setting the RCIF interrupt bit. All other characters will be ignored.

Upon receiving an address character, user software determines if the address matches its own. Upon address match, user software must disable address detection by clearing the ADDEN bit before the next Stop bit occurs. When user software detects the end of the message, determined by the message protocol used, software places the receiver back into the Address Detection mode by setting the ADDEN bit.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

12.1.2.8 Asynchronous Reception Set-up:

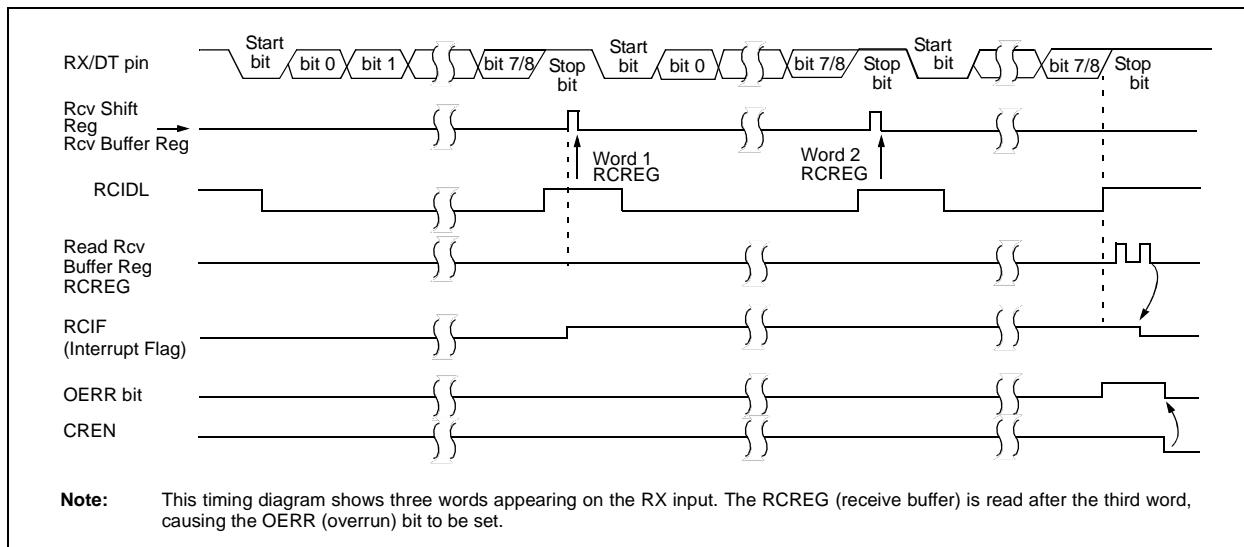
1. Initialize the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 12.3 “EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
3. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE interrupt enable bit and set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
5. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
6. The RCIF interrupt flag bit will be set when a character is transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE interrupt enable bit was also set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the error flags and, if 9-bit data reception is enabled, the ninth data bit.
8. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCREG register.
9. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.

12.1.2.9 9-bit Address Detection Mode Set-up

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 12.3 “EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
3. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE interrupt enable bit and set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
4. Enable 9-bit reception by setting the RX9 bit.
5. Enable address detection by setting the ADDEN bit.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCIF interrupt flag bit will be set when a character with the ninth bit set is transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE interrupt enable bit was also set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the error flags. The ninth data bit will always be set.
9. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCREG register. Software determines if this is the device's address.
10. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and generate interrupts.

FIGURE 12-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 12-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Reception.

12.2 Clock Accuracy with Asynchronous Operation

The factory calibrates the internal oscillator block output (INTOSC). However, the INTOSC frequency may drift as VDD or temperature changes, and this directly affects the asynchronous baud rate. Two methods may be used to adjust the baud rate clock, but both require a reference clock source of some kind.

The first (preferred) method uses the OSCTUNE register to adjust the INTOSC output. Adjusting the value in the OSCTUNE register allows for fine resolution changes to the system clock source. See **Section 3.5 “Internal Clock Modes”** for more information.

The other method adjusts the value in the Baud Rate Generator. This can be done automatically with the Auto-Baud Detect feature (see **Section 12.3.1 “Auto-Baud Detect”**). There may not be fine enough resolution when adjusting the Baud Rate Generator to compensate for a gradual change in the peripheral clock frequency.

REGISTER 12-1: TXSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN ⁽¹⁾	SYNC	SEND B	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’

-n = Value at POR

‘1’ = Bit is set

‘0’ = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	CSRC: Clock Source Select bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> Don't care <u>Synchronous mode:</u> 1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG) 0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)
bit 6	TX9: 9-bit Transmit Enable bit 1 = Selects 9-bit transmission 0 = Selects 8-bit transmission
bit 5	TXEN: Transmit Enable bit ⁽¹⁾ 1 = Transmit enabled 0 = Transmit disabled
bit 4	SYNC: USART Mode Select bit 1 = Synchronous mode 0 = Asynchronous mode
bit 3	SEND B: Send Break Character bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Send Sync Break on next transmission (cleared by hardware upon completion) 0 = Sync Break transmission completed <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Don't care
bit 2	BRGH: High Baud Rate Select bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = High speed 0 = Low speed <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Unused in this mode
bit 1	TRMT: Transmit Shift Register Status bit 1 = TSR empty 0 = TSR full
bit 0	TX9D: Ninth bit of Transmit Data Can be address/data bit or a parity bit.

Note 1: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 12-2: RCSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER⁽¹⁾

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	SPEN: Serial Port Enable bit 1 = Serial port enabled (configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins) 0 = Serial port disabled (held in Reset)
bit 6	RX9: 9-bit Receive Enable bit 1 = Selects 9-bit reception 0 = Selects 8-bit reception
bit 5	SREN: Single Receive Enable bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> Don't care <u>Synchronous mode – Master:</u> 1 = Enables single receive 0 = Disables single receive This bit is cleared after reception is complete. <u>Synchronous mode – Slave</u> Don't care
bit 4	CREN: Continuous Receive Enable bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Enables receiver 0 = Disables receiver <u>Synchronous mode:</u> 1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN) 0 = Disables continuous receive
bit 3	ADDEN: Address Detect Enable bit <u>Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):</u> 1 = Enables address detection, enable interrupt and load the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set 0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit <u>Asynchronous mode 8-bit (RX9 = 0):</u> Don't care
bit 2	FERR: Framing Error bit 1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receive next valid byte) 0 = No framing error
bit 1	OERR: Overrun Error bit 1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN) 0 = No overrun error
bit 0	RX9D: Ninth bit of Received Data This can be address/data bit or a parity bit and must be calculated by user firmware.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 12-3: BAUDCTL: BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER

R-0	R-1	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	ABDOVF: Auto-Baud Detect Overflow bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Auto-baud timer overflowed 0 = Auto-baud timer did not overflow <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Don't care
bit 6	RCIDL: Receive Idle Flag bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Receiver is Idle 0 = Start bit has been received and the receiver is receiving <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Don't care
bit 5	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 4	SCKP: Synchronous Clock Polarity Select bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Transmit inverted data to the RB7/TX/CK pin 0 = Transmit non-inverted data to the RB7/TX/CK pin <u>Synchronous mode:</u> 1 = Data is clocked on rising edge of the clock 0 = Data is clocked on falling edge of the clock
bit 3	BRG16: 16-bit Baud Rate Generator bit 1 = 16-bit Baud Rate Generator is used 0 = 8-bit Baud Rate Generator is used
bit 2	Unimplemented: Read as '0'
bit 1	WUE: Wake-up Enable bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Receiver is waiting for a falling edge. No character will be received byte RCIF will be set. WUE will automatically clear after RCIF is set. 0 = Receiver is operating normally <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Don't care
bit 0	ABDEN: Auto-Baud Detect Enable bit <u>Asynchronous mode:</u> 1 = Auto-Baud Detect mode is enabled (clears when auto-baud is complete) 0 = Auto-Baud Detect mode is disabled <u>Synchronous mode:</u> Don't care

12.3 EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is an 8-bit or 16-bit timer that is dedicated to the support of both the asynchronous and synchronous EUSART operation. By default, the BRG operates in 8-bit mode. Setting the BRG16 bit of the BAUDCTL register selects 16-bit mode.

The SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair determines the period of the free running baud rate timer. In Asynchronous mode the multiplier of the baud rate period is determined by both the BRGH bit of the TXSTA register and the BRG16 bit of the BAUDCTL register. In Synchronous mode, the BRGH bit is ignored.

Table 12-3 contains the formulas for determining the baud rate. Example 12-1 provides a sample calculation for determining the baud rate and baud rate error.

Typical baud rates and error values for various asynchronous modes have been computed for your convenience and are shown in Table 12-3. It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), or the 16-bit BRG (BRG16 = 1) to reduce the baud rate error. The 16-bit BRG mode is used to achieve slow baud rates for fast oscillator frequencies.

Writing a new value to the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures that the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

If the system clock is changed during an active receive operation, a receive error or data loss may result. To avoid this problem, check the status of the RCIDL bit to make sure that the receive operation is Idle before changing the system clock.

EXAMPLE 12-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

For a device with FOSC of 16 MHz, desired baud rate of 9600, Asynchronous mode, 8-bit BRG:

$$\text{Desired Baud Rate} = \frac{FOSC}{64(\text{SPBRGH:SPBRG} + 1)}$$

Solving for SPBRGH:SPBRG:

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \frac{FOSC}{\text{Desired Baud Rate}} - 1 \\ &= \frac{16000000}{9600} - 1 \\ &= [25.042] = 25 \\ \text{Calculated Baud Rate} &= \frac{16000000}{64(25 + 1)} \\ &= 9615 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Error} &= \frac{\text{Calc. Baud Rate} - \text{Desired Baud Rate}}{\text{Desired Baud Rate}} \\ &= \frac{(9615 - 9600)}{9600} = 0.16\% \end{aligned}$$

TABLE 12-3: BAUD RATE FORMULAS

Configuration Bits			BRG/EUSART Mode			Baud Rate Formula			
SYNC	BRG16	BRGH							
0	0	0	8-bit/Asynchronous			Fosc/[64 (n+1)]			
0	0	1	8-bit/Asynchronous			Fosc/[16 (n+1)]			
0	1	0	16-bit/Asynchronous						
0	1	1	16-bit/Asynchronous			Fosc/[4 (n+1)]			
1	0	x	8-bit/Synchronous						
1	1	x	16-bit/Synchronous						

Legend: x = Don't care, n = value of SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair

TABLE 12-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for the Baud Rate Generator.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 12-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 18.432 MHz			Fosc = 11.0592 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200	1221	1.73	255	1200	0.00	239	1200	0.00	143	1202	0.16	103
2400	2404	0.16	129	2400	0.00	119	2400	0.00	71	2404	0.16	51
9600	9470	-1.36	32	9600	0.00	29	9600	0.00	17	9615	0.16	12
10417	10417	0.00	29	10286	-1.26	27	10165	-2.42	16	10417	0.00	11
19.2k	19.53k	1.73	15	19.20k	0.00	14	19.20k	0.00	8	—	—	—
57.6k	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	7	57.60k	0.00	2	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	300	0.16	207	300	0.00	191	300	0.16	103	300	0.16	51
1200	1202	0.16	51	1200	0.00	47	1202	0.16	25	1202	0.16	12
2400	2404	0.16	25	2400	0.00	23	2404	0.16	12	—	—	—
9600	—	—	—	9600	0.00	5	—	—	—	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	5	—	—	—	10417	0.00	2	—	—	—
19.2k	—	—	—	19.20k	0.00	2	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6k	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	0	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 18.432 MHz			Fosc = 11.0592 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2400	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2404	0.16	207
9600	9615	0.16	129	9600	0.00	119	9600	0.00	71	9615	0.16	51
10417	10417	0.00	119	10378	-0.37	110	10473	0.53	65	10417	0.00	47
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	64	19.20k	0.00	59	19.20k	0.00	35	19231	0.16	25
57.6k	56.82k	-1.36	21	57.60k	0.00	19	57.60k	0.00	11	55556	-3.55	8
115.2k	113.64k	-1.36	10	115.2k	0.00	9	115.2k	0.00	5	—	—	—

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 12-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES (CONTINUED)

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	300	0.16	207
1200	1202	0.16	207	1200	0.00	191	1202	0.16	103	1202	0.16	51
2400	2404	0.16	103	2400	0.00	95	2404	0.16	51	2404	0.16	25
9600	9615	0.16	25	9600	0.00	23	9615	0.16	12	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	23	10473	0.53	21	10417	0.00	11	10417	0.00	5
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	12	19.2k	0.00	11	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6k	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	3	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	115.2k	0.00	1	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1											
	Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 18.432 MHz			Fosc = 11.0592 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	300.0	-0.01	4166	300.0	0.00	3839	300.0	0.00	2303	299.9	-0.02	1666
1200	1200	-0.03	1041	1200	0.00	959	1200	0.00	575	1199	-0.08	416
2400	2399	-0.03	520	2400	0.00	479	2400	0.00	287	2404	0.16	207
9600	9615	0.16	129	9600	0.00	119	9600	0.00	71	9615	0.16	51
10417	10417	0.00	119	10378	-0.37	110	10473	0.53	65	10417	0.00	47
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	64	19.20k	0.00	59	19.20k	0.00	35	19.23k	0.16	25
57.6k	56.818	-1.36	21	57.60k	0.00	19	57.60k	0.00	11	55556	-3.55	8
115.2k	113.636	-1.36	10	115.2k	0.00	9	115.2k	0.00	5	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1											
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	300.1	0.04	832	300.0	0.00	767	299.8	-0.108	416	300.5	0.16	207
1200	1202	0.16	207	1200	0.00	191	1202	0.16	103	1202	0.16	51
2400	2404	0.16	103	2400	0.00	95	2404	0.16	51	2404	0.16	25
9600	9615	0.16	25	9600	0.00	23	9615	0.16	12	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	23	10473	0.53	21	10417	0.00	11	10417	0.00	5
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	12	19.20k	0.00	11	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6k	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	3	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	115.2k	0.00	1	—	—	—	—	—	—

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 12-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES (CONTINUED)

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1											
	Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 18.432 MHz			Fosc = 11.0592 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	300.0	0.00	16665	300.0	0.00	15359	300.0	0.00	9215	300.0	0.00	6666
1200	1200	-0.01	4166	1200	0.00	3839	1200	0.00	2303	1200	-0.02	1666
2400	2400	0.02	2082	2400	0.00	1919	2400	0.00	1151	2401	0.04	832
9600	9597	-0.03	520	9600	0.00	479	9600	0.00	287	9615	0.16	207
10417	10417	0.00	479	10425	0.08	441	10433	0.16	264	10417	0	191
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	259	19.20k	0.00	239	19.20k	0.00	143	19.23k	0.16	103
57.6k	57.47k	-0.22	86	57.60k	0.00	79	57.60k	0.00	47	57.14k	-0.79	34
115.2k	116.3k	0.94	42	115.2k	0.00	39	115.2k	0.00	23	117.6k	2.12	16

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1											
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
300	300.0	0.01	3332	300.0	0.00	3071	299.9	-0.02	1666	300.1	0.04	832
1200	1200	0.04	832	1200	0.00	767	1199	-0.08	416	1202	0.16	207
2400	2398	0.08	416	2400	0.00	383	2404	0.16	207	2404	0.16	103
9600	9615	0.16	103	9600	0.00	95	9615	0.16	51	9615	0.16	25
10417	10417	0.00	95	10473	0.53	87	10417	0.00	47	10417	0.00	23
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	51	19.20k	0.00	47	19.23k	0.16	25	19.23k	0.16	12
57.6k	58.82k	2.12	16	57.60k	0.00	15	55.56k	-3.55	8	—	—	—
115.2k	111.1k	-3.55	8	115.2k	0.00	7	—	—	—	—	—	—

12.3.1 AUTO-BAUD DETECT

The EUSART module supports automatic detection and calibration of the baud rate.

In the Auto-Baud Detect (ABD) mode, the clock to the BRG is reversed. Rather than the BRG clocking the incoming RX signal, the RX signal is timing the BRG. The Baud Rate Generator is used to time the period of a received 55h (ASCII "U") which is the Sync character for the LIN bus. The unique feature of this character is that it has five rising edges including the Stop bit edge.

Setting the ABDEN bit of the BAUDCTL register starts the auto-baud calibration sequence (Figure 12-6). While the ABD sequence takes place, the EUSART state machine is held in Idle. On the first rising edge of the receive line, after the Start bit, the SPBRG begins counting up using the BRG counter clock as shown in Table 12-6. The fifth rising edge will occur on the RX pin at the end of the eighth bit period. At that time, an accumulated value totaling the proper BRG period is left in the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair, the ABDEN bit is automatically cleared and the RCIF interrupt flag is set. The value in the RCREG needs to be read to clear the RCIF interrupt. RCREG content should be discarded. When calibrating for modes that do not use the SPBRGH register the user can verify that the SPBRG register did not overflow by checking for 00h in the SPBRGH register.

The BRG auto-baud clock is determined by the BRG16 and BRGH bits as shown in Table 12-6. During ABD, both the SPBRGH and SPBRG registers are used as a 16-bit counter, independent of the BRG16 bit setting. While calibrating the baud rate period, the SPBRGH

and SPBRG registers are clocked at 1/8th the BRG base clock rate. The resulting byte measurement is the average bit time when clocked at full speed.

Note 1: If the WUE bit is set with the ABDEN bit, auto-baud detection will occur on the byte following the Break character (see [Section 12.3.2 "Auto-Wake-up on Break"](#)).

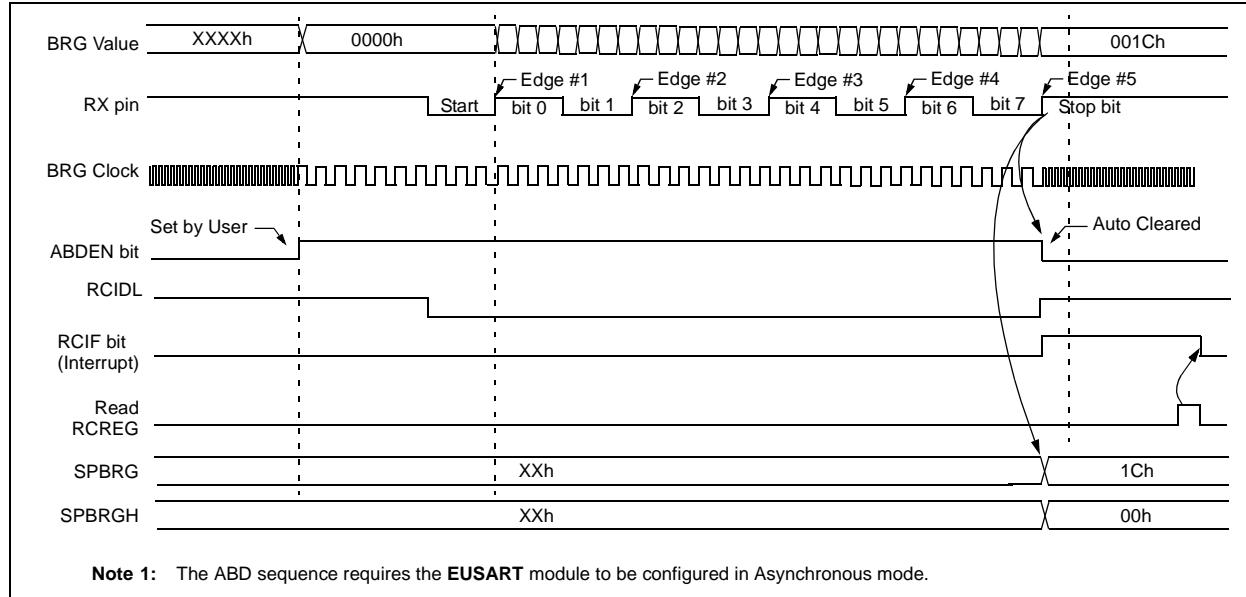
- 2: It is up to the user to determine that the incoming character baud rate is within the range of the selected BRG clock source. Some combinations of oscillator frequency and EUSART baud rates are not possible.
- 3: During the auto-baud process, the auto-baud counter starts counting at 1. Upon completion of the auto-baud sequence, to achieve maximum accuracy, subtract 1 from the SPBRGH:SPBRG register pair.

TABLE 12-6: BRG COUNTER CLOCK RATES

BRG16	BRGH	BRG Base Clock	BRG ABD Clock
0	0	Fosc/64	Fosc/512
0	1	Fosc/16	Fosc/128
1	0	Fosc/16	Fosc/128
1	1	Fosc/4	Fosc/32

Note: During the ABD sequence, SPBRG and SPBRGH registers are both used as a 16-bit counter, independent of BRG16 setting.

FIGURE 12-6: AUTOMATIC BAUD RATE CALIBRATION



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

12.3.2 AUTO-WAKE-UP ON BREAK

During Sleep mode, all clocks to the EUSART are suspended. Because of this, the Baud Rate Generator is inactive and a proper character reception cannot be performed. The Auto-Wake-up feature allows the controller to wake-up due to activity on the RX/DT line. This feature is available only in Asynchronous mode.

The Auto-Wake-up feature is enabled by setting the WUE bit of the BAUDCTL register. Once set, the normal receive sequence on RX/DT is disabled, and the EUSART remains in an Idle state, monitoring for a wake-up event independent of the CPU mode. A wake-up event consists of a high-to-low transition on the RX/DT line. (This coincides with the start of a Sync Break or a wake-up signal character for the LIN protocol.)

The EUSART module generates an RCIF interrupt coincident with the wake-up event. The interrupt is generated synchronously to the Q clocks in normal CPU operating modes (Figure 12-7), and asynchronously if the device is in Sleep mode (Figure 12-8). The interrupt condition is cleared by reading the RCREG register.

The WUE bit is automatically cleared by the low-to-high transition on the RX line at the end of the Break. This signals to the user that the Break event is over. At this point, the EUSART module is in Idle mode waiting to receive the next character.

12.3.2.1 Special Considerations

Break Character

To avoid character errors or character fragments during a wake-up event, the wake-up character must be all zeros.

When the wake-up is enabled the function works independent of the low time on the data stream. If the WUE bit is set and a valid non-zero character is received, the low time from the Start bit to the first rising edge will be interpreted as the wake-up event. The remaining bits in the character will be received as a fragmented character and subsequent characters can result in framing or overrun errors.

Therefore, the initial character in the transmission must be all '0's. This must be 10 or more bit times, 13-bit times recommended for LIN bus, or any number of bit times for standard RS-232 devices.

Oscillator Startup Time

Oscillator start-up time must be considered, especially in applications using oscillators with longer start-up intervals (i.e., LP, XT or HS/PLL mode). The Sync Break (or wake-up signal) character must be of sufficient length, and be followed by a sufficient interval, to allow enough time for the selected oscillator to start and provide proper initialization of the EUSART.

WUE Bit

The wake-up event causes a receive interrupt by setting the RCIF bit. The WUE bit is cleared in hardware by a rising edge on RX/DT. The interrupt condition is then cleared in software by reading the RCREG register and discarding its contents.

To ensure that no actual data is lost, check the RCIDL bit to verify that a receive operation is not in process before setting the WUE bit. If a receive operation is not occurring, the WUE bit may then be set just prior to entering the Sleep mode.

FIGURE 12-7: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMING DURING NORMAL OPERATIONS

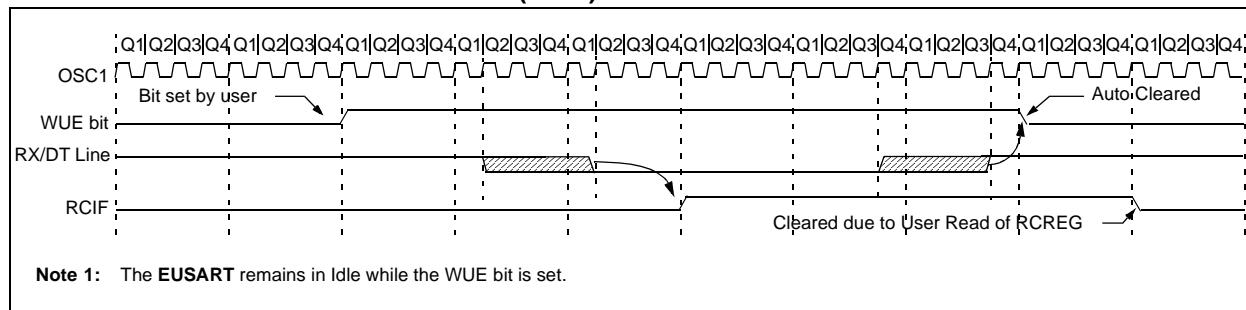
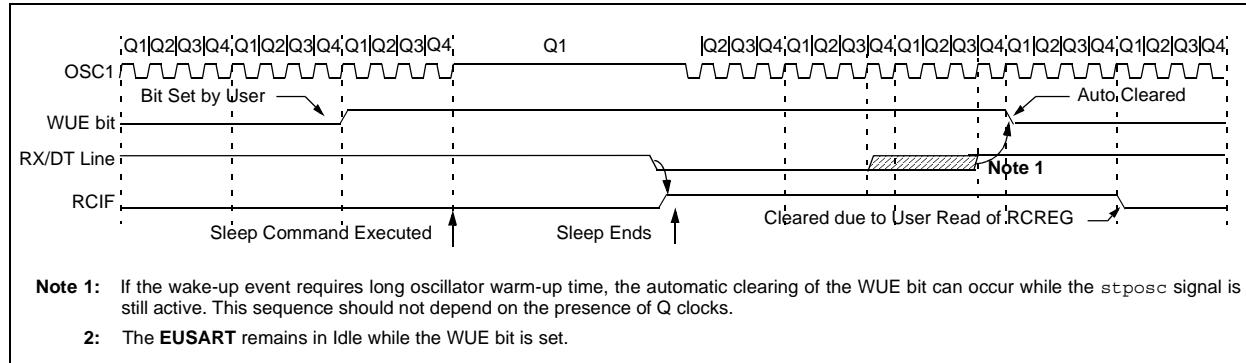


FIGURE 12-8: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMINGS DURING SLEEP



12.3.3 BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE

The EUSART module has the capability of sending the special Break character sequences that are required by the LIN bus standard. A Break character consists of a Start bit, followed by 12 '0' bits and a Stop bit.

To send a Break character, set the SENDB and TXEN bits of the TXSTA register. The Break character transmission is then initiated by a write to the TXREG. The value of data written to TXREG will be ignored and all '0's will be transmitted.

The SENDB bit is automatically reset by hardware after the corresponding Stop bit is sent. This allows the user to preload the transmit FIFO with the next transmit byte following the Break character (typically, the Sync character in the LIN specification).

The TRMT bit of the TXSTA register indicates when the transmit operation is active or Idle, just as it does during normal transmission. See Figure 12-9 for the timing of the Break character sequence.

12.3.3.1 Break and Sync Transmit Sequence

The following sequence will start a message frame header made up of a Break, followed by an auto-baud Sync byte. This sequence is typical of a LIN bus master.

1. Configure the EUSART for the desired mode.
2. Set the TXEN and SENDB bits to enable the Break sequence.
3. Load the TXREG with a dummy character to initiate transmission (the value is ignored).
4. Write '55h' to TXREG to load the Sync character into the transmit FIFO buffer.
5. After the Break has been sent, the SENDB bit is reset by hardware and the Sync character is then transmitted.

When the TXREG becomes empty, as indicated by the TXIF, the next data byte can be written to TXREG.

12.3.4 RECEIVING A BREAK CHARACTER

The Enhanced EUSART module can receive a Break character in two ways.

The first method to detect a Break character uses the FERR bit of the RCSTA register and the Received data as indicated by RCREG. The Baud Rate Generator is assumed to have been initialized to the expected baud rate.

A Break character has been received when:

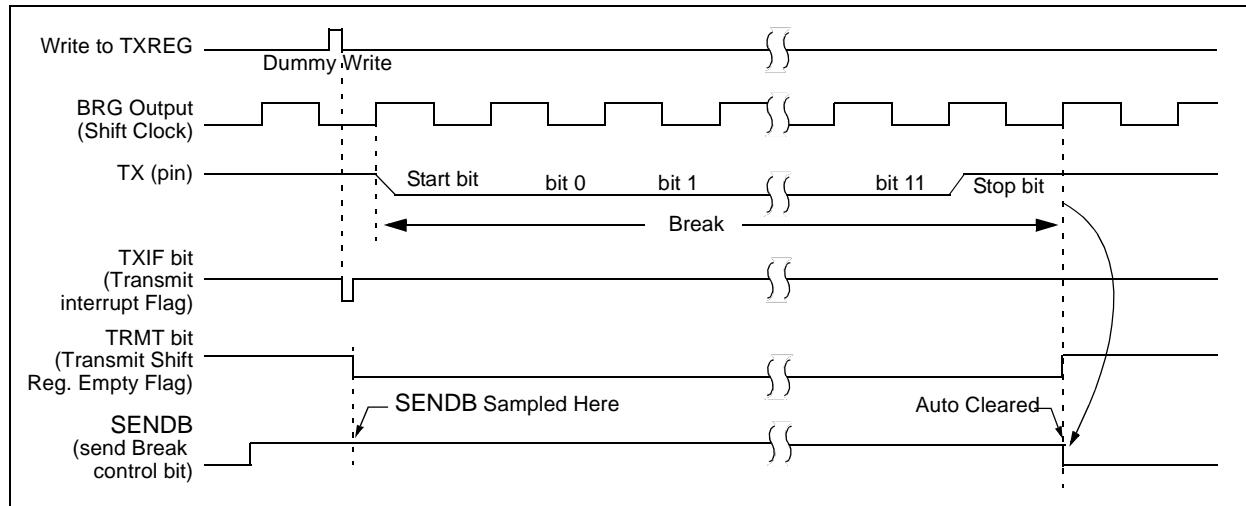
- RCIF bit is set
- FERR bit is set
- $RCREG = 00h$

The second method uses the Auto-Wake-up feature described in **Section 12.3.2 "Auto-Wake-up on Break"**. By enabling this feature, the EUSART will sample the next two transitions on RX/DT, cause an RCIF interrupt, and receive the next data byte followed by another interrupt.

Note that following a Break character, the user will typically want to enable the Auto-Baud Detect feature. For both methods, the user can set the ABDEN bit of the BAUDCTL register before placing the EUSART in Sleep mode.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 12-9: SEND BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE



12.4 EUSART Synchronous Mode

Synchronous serial communications are typically used in systems with a single master and one or more slaves. The master device contains the necessary circuitry for baud rate generation and supplies the clock for all devices in the system. Slave devices can take advantage of the master clock by eliminating the internal clock generation circuitry.

There are two signal lines in Synchronous mode: a bidirectional data line and a clock line. Slaves use the external clock supplied by the master to shift the serial data into and out of their respective receive and transmit shift registers. Since the data line is bidirectional, synchronous operation is half-duplex only. Half-duplex refers to the fact that master and slave devices can receive and transmit data but not both simultaneously. The EUSART can operate as either a master or slave device.

Start and Stop bits are not used in synchronous transmissions.

12.4.1 SYNCHRONOUS MASTER MODE

The following bits are used to configure the EUSART for Synchronous Master operation:

- SYNC = 1
- CSRC = 1
- SREN = 0 (for transmit); SREN = 1 (for receive)
- CREN = 0 (for transmit); CREN = 1 (for receive)
- SPEN = 1

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Setting the CSRC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device as a master. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the EUSART. If the RX/DT or TX/CK pins are shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O functions must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bits.

12.4.1.1 Master Clock

Synchronous data transfers use a separate clock line, which is synchronous with the data. A device configured as a master transmits the clock on the TX/CK line. The TX/CK pin is automatically configured as an output when the EUSART is configured for synchronous transmit operation. Serial data bits change on the leading edge to ensure they are valid at the trailing edge of each clock. One clock cycle is generated for each data bit. Only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits.

12.4.1.2 Clock Polarity

A clock polarity option is provided for Microwire compatibility. Clock polarity is selected with the SCKP bit of the BAUDCTL register. Setting the SCKP bit sets

the clock Idle state as high. When the SCKP bit is set, the data changes on the falling edge of each clock. Clearing the SCKP bit sets the Idle state as low. When the SCKP bit is cleared, the data changes on the rising edge of each clock.

12.4.1.3 Synchronous Master Transmission

Data is transferred out of the device on the RX/DT pin. The RX/DT and TX/CK pin output drivers are automatically enabled when the EUSART is configured for synchronous master transmit operation.

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXREG register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character the new character data is held in the TXREG until the last bit of the previous character has been transmitted. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXREG is immediately transferred to the TSR. The transmission of the character commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXREG.

Each data bit changes on the leading edge of the master clock and remains valid until the subsequent leading clock edge.

Note: The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

12.4.1.4 Synchronous Master Transmission Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 12.3 “EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Disable Receive mode by clearing bits SREN and CREN.
4. Enable Transmit mode by setting the TXEN bit.
5. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
6. If interrupts are desired, set the TXIE, GIE and PEIE interrupt enable bits.
7. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in the TX9D bit.
8. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 12-10: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

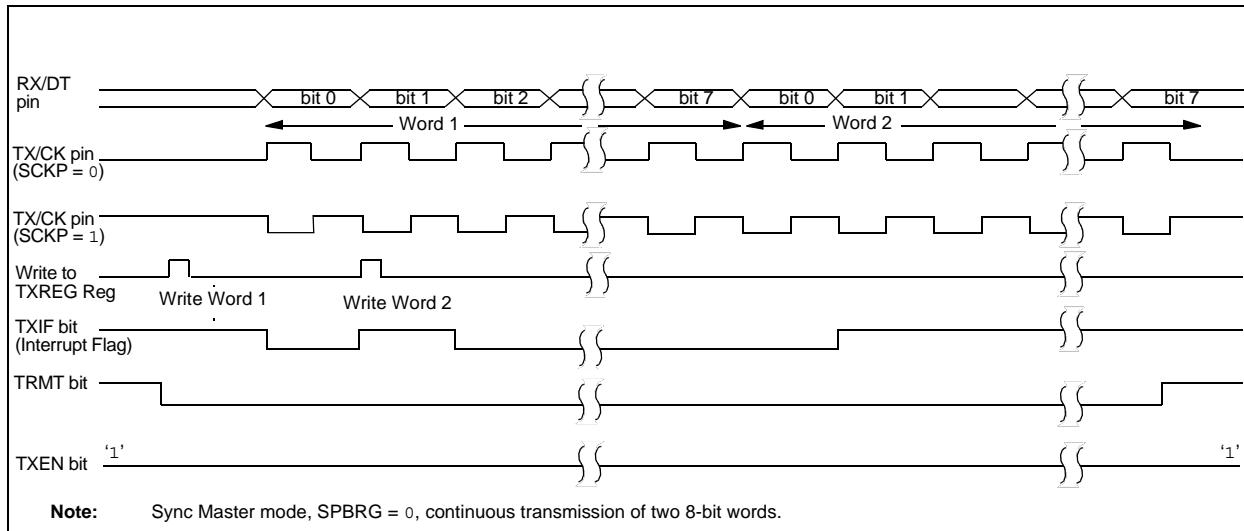


FIGURE 12-11: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)

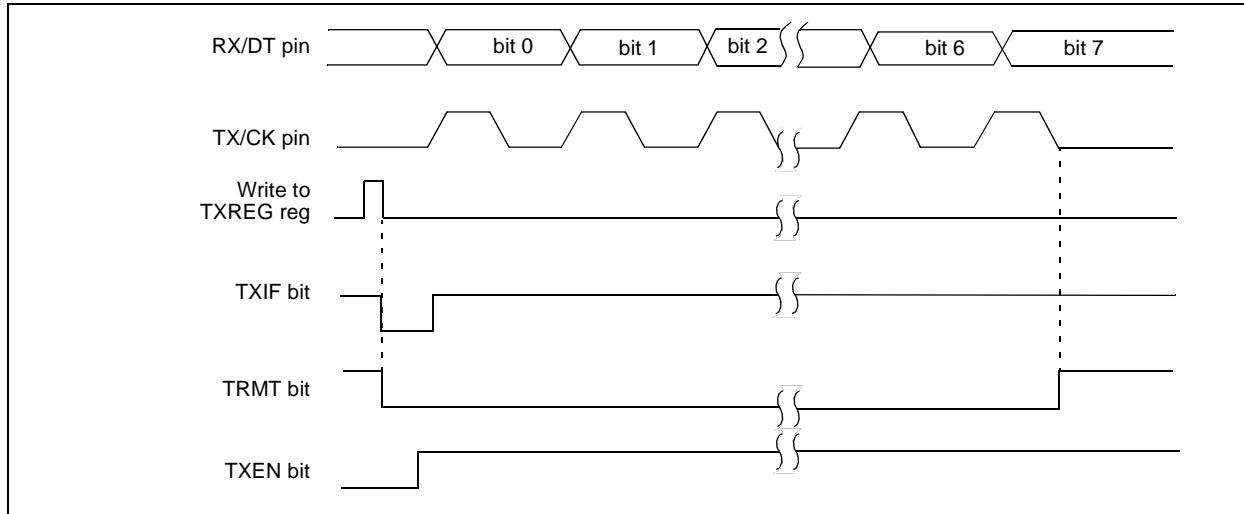


TABLE 12-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register							0000 0000	0000 0000	
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register							0000 0000	0000 0000	
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Transmission.

12.4.1.5 Synchronous Master Reception

Data is received at the RX/DT pin. The RX/DT and TX/CK pin output drivers are automatically disabled when the EUSART is configured for synchronous master receive operation.

In Synchronous mode, reception is enabled by setting either the Single Receive Enable bit (SREN of the RCSTA register) or the Continuous Receive Enable bit (CREN of the RCSTA register).

When SREN is set and CREN is clear, only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits in a single character. The SREN bit is automatically cleared at the completion of one character. When CREN is set, clocks are continuously generated until CREN is cleared. If CREN is cleared in the middle of a character the CK clock stops immediately and the partial character is discarded. If SREN and CREN are both set, then SREN is cleared at the completion of the first character and CREN takes precedence.

To initiate reception, set either SREN or CREN. Data is sampled at the RX/DT pin on the trailing edge of the TX/CK clock pin and is shifted into the Receive Shift Register (RSR). When a complete character is received into the RSR, the RCIF bit is set and the character is automatically transferred to the two character receive FIFO. The Least Significant eight bits of the top character in the receive FIFO are available in RCREG. The RCIF bit remains set as long as there are un-read characters in the receive FIFO.

12.4.1.6 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated if a third character, in its entirety, is received before RCREG is read to access the FIFO. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCSTA register is set. Previous data in the FIFO will not be overwritten. The two characters in the FIFO buffer can be read, however, no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The OERR bit can only be cleared by clearing the overrun condition. If the overrun error occurred when the SREN bit is set and CREN is clear then the error is cleared by reading RCREG. If the overrun occurred when the CREN bit is set then the error condition is cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

12.4.1.7 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The EUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCSTA register is set the EUSART will shift 9-bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCREG.

12.4.1.8 Synchronous Master Reception Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH, SPBRG register pair for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH and BRG16 bits, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If using interrupts, set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register and set RCIE.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
6. Start reception by setting the SREN bit or for continuous reception, set the CREN bit.
7. Interrupt flag bit RCIF will be set when reception of a character is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the enable bit RCIE was set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
9. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
10. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 12-12: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)

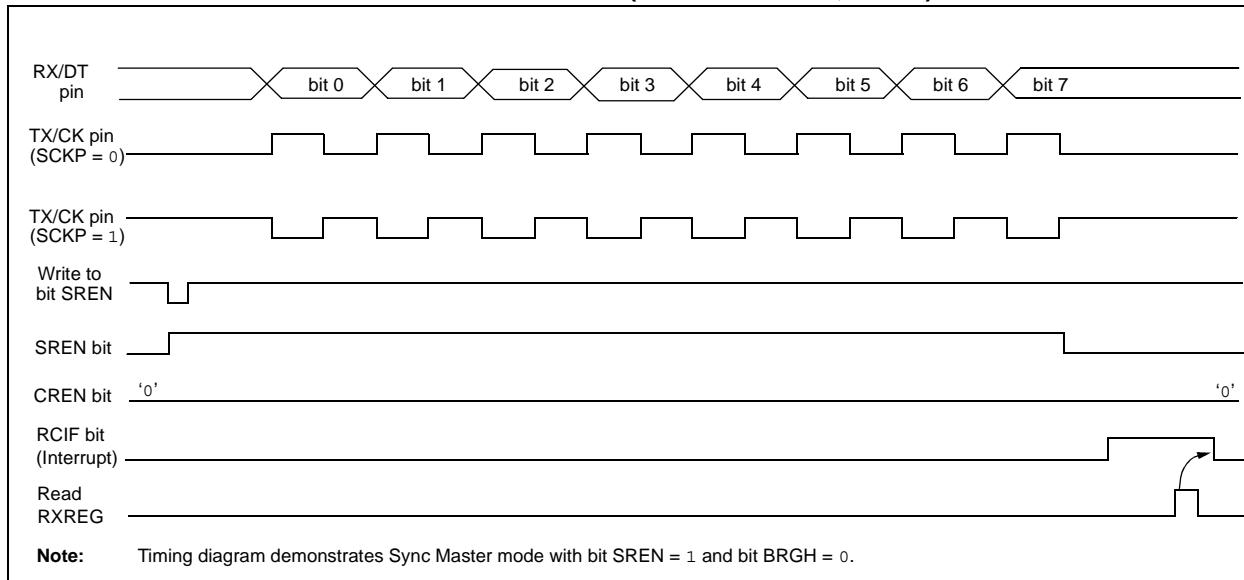


TABLE 12-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TOIE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Reception.

12.4.2 SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE MODE

The following bits are used to configure the EUSART for Synchronous slave operation:

- SYNC = 1
- CSRC = 0
- SREN = 0 (for transmit); SREN = 1 (for receive)
- CREN = 0 (for transmit); CREN = 1 (for receive)
- SPEN = 1

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Clearing the CSRC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device as a slave. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the EUSART. If the RX/DT or TX/CK pins are shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O functions must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bits.

12.4.2.1 EUSART Synchronous Slave Transmit

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical (see **Section 12.4.1.3 "Synchronous Master Transmission"**), except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the SLEEP instruction is executed, the following will occur:

1. The first character will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
2. The second word will remain in TXREG register.
3. The TXIF bit will not be set.
4. After the first character has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second character to the TSR and the TXIF bit will now be set.
5. If the PEIE and TXIE bits are set, the interrupt will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will call the interrupt service routine.

12.4.2.2 Synchronous Slave Transmission Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. Clear the CREN and SREN bits.
3. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are set and set the TXIE bit.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
5. Enable transmission by setting the TXEN bit.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, insert the Most Significant bit into the TX9D bit.
7. Start transmission by writing the Least Significant 8 bits to the TXREG register.

TABLE 12-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Transmission.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

12.4.2.3 EUSART Synchronous Slave Reception

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical (**Section 12.4.1.5 “Synchronous Master Reception”**), with the following exceptions:

- Sleep
- CREN bit is always set, therefore the receiver is never Idle
- SREN bit, which is a “don’t care” in Slave mode

A character may be received while in Sleep mode by setting the CREN bit prior to entering Sleep. Once the word is received, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register. If the RCIE enable bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

12.4.2.4 Synchronous Slave Reception Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are set and set the RCIE bit.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
4. Set the CREN bit to enable reception.
5. The RCIF bit will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE bit was set.
6. If 9-bit mode is enabled, retrieve the Most Significant bit from the RX9D bit of the RCSTA register.
7. Retrieve the 8 Least Significant bits from the receive FIFO by reading the RCREG register.
8. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

TABLE 12-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
BAUDCTL	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
RCREG	EUSART Receive Data Register							0000 0000	0000 0000	
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SPBRGH	BRG15	BRG14	BRG13	BRG12	BRG11	BRG10	BRG9	BRG8	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4					1111 ----	1111 ----
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Data Register							0000 0000	0000 0000	
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010

Legend: x = unknown, — = unimplemented read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Reception.

13.0 SSP MODULE OVERVIEW

The Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) module is a serial interface used to communicate with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The SSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C)

Refer to Application Note AN578, "Use of the SSP Module in the Multi-Master Environment" (DS00578).

13.1 SPI Mode

This section contains register definitions and operational characteristics of the SPI module.

The SPI mode allows 8 bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received simultaneously. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

- Serial Data Out (SDO)
- Serial Data In (SDI)
- Serial Clock (SCK)

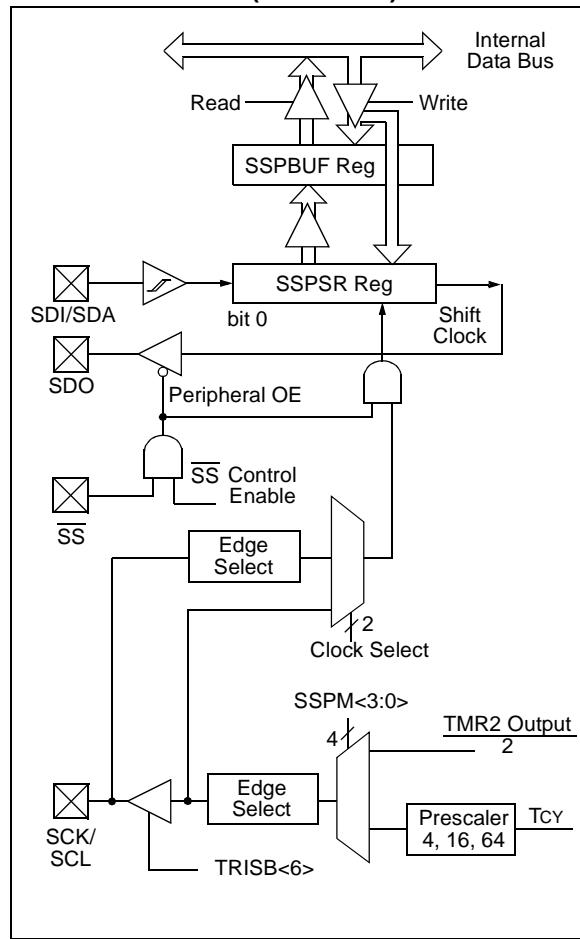
Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in a Slave mode of operation:

- Slave Select (\overline{SS})

Note 1: When the SPI is in Slave mode with \overline{SS} pin control enabled (SSPM<3:0> bits of the SSPCON register = 0100), the SPI module will reset if the \overline{SS} pin is set to VDD.

- 2: If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE = 1, then the \overline{SS} pin control must be enabled.
- 3: When the SPI is in Slave mode with \overline{SS} pin control enabled (SSPM<3:0> bits of the SSPCON register = 0100), the state of the \overline{SS} pin can affect the state read back from the TRISC<4> bit. The peripheral OE signal from the SSP module into PORTC controls the state that is read back from the TRISC<4> bit (see **Section 17.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for information on PORTC). If read-write-modify instructions, such as BSF, are performed on the TRISC register while the \overline{SS} pin is high, this will cause the TRISC<7> bit to be set, thus disabling the SDO output.

FIGURE 13-1: SSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 13-1: SSPSTAT: SYNC SERIAL PORT STATUS REGISTER⁽¹⁾

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/A	P	S	R/W	UA	BF
bit 7	bit 0						

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	SMP: SPI Data Input Sample Phase bit <u>SPI Master mode:</u> 1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time 0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time (Microwire) <u>SPI Slave mode:</u> SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode <u>I²C mode:</u> This bit must be maintained clear
bit 6	CKE: SPI Clock Edge Select bit <u>SPI mode, CKP = 0:</u> 1 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK (Microwire alternate) 0 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK <u>SPI mode, CKP = 1:</u> 1 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK (Microwire default) 0 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK <u>I²C mode:</u> This bit must be maintained clear
bit 5	D/A: DATA/ADDRESS bit (I ² C mode only) 1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data 0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address
bit 4	P: Stop bit (I ² C mode only) This bit is cleared when the SSP module is disabled, or when the Start bit is detected last. SSPEN is cleared. 1 = Indicates that a Stop bit has been detected last (this bit is '0' on Reset) 0 = Stop bit was not detected last
bit 3	S: Start bit (I ² C mode only) This bit is cleared when the SSP module is disabled, or when the Stop bit is detected last. SSPEN is cleared. 1 = Indicates that a Start bit has been detected last (this bit is '0' on Reset) 0 = Start bit was not detected last
bit 2	R/W: READ/WRITE bit Information (I ² C mode only) This bit holds the R/W bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next Start bit, Stop bit or ACK bit. 1 = Read 0 = Write
bit 1	UA: Update Address bit (10-bit I ² C mode only) 1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register 0 = Address does not need to be updated
bit 0	BF: Buffer Full Status bit <u>Receive (SPI and I²C modes):</u> 1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full 0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty <u>Transmit (I²C mode only):</u> 1 = Transmit in progress, SSPBUF is full 0 = Transmit complete, SSPBUF is empty

Note 1: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 13-2: SSPCON: SYNC SERIAL PORT CONTROL REGISTER⁽¹⁾

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3 ⁽²⁾	SSPM2 ⁽²⁾	SSPM1 ⁽²⁾	SSPM0 ⁽²⁾
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	WCOL: Write Collision Detect bit 1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software) 0 = No collision
bit 6	SSPOV: Receive Overflow Indicator bit <u>In SPI mode:</u> 1 = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. The user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow. In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register. 0 = No overflow <u>In I²C mode:</u> 1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte. SSPOV is a "don't care" in Transmit mode. SSPOV must be cleared in software in either mode. 0 = No overflow
bit 5	SSPEN: Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit <u>In SPI mode:</u> 1 = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO and SDI as serial port pins 0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins <u>In I²C mode:</u> 1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as serial port pins 0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins In both modes, when enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.
bit 4	CKP: Clock Polarity Select bit <u>In SPI mode:</u> 1 = Idle state for clock is a high level (Microwire default) 0 = Idle state for clock is a low level (Microwire alternate) <u>In I²C mode:</u> SCK release control 1 = Enable clock 0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch). (Used to ensure data setup time.)
bit 3-0	SSPM<3:0>: Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits 0000 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/4 0001 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/16 0010 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/64 0011 = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2 0100 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. <u>SS</u> pin control enabled. 0101 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. <u>SS</u> pin control disabled. <u>SS</u> can be used as I/O pin. 0110 = I ² C Slave mode, 7-bit address 0111 = I ² C Slave mode, 10-bit address 1000 = Reserved 1001 = Load SSPMSK register at SSPADD SFR address ⁽²⁾ 1010 = Reserved 1011 = I ² C Firmware Controlled Master mode (slave IDLE) 1100 = Reserved 1101 = Reserved 1110 = I ² C Slave mode, 7-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled 1111 = I ² C Slave mode, 10-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled

Note 1: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

2: When this mode is selected, any reads or writes to the SSPADD SFR address actually accesses the SSPMSK register.

13.2 Operation

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPCON<5:0> and SSPSTAT<7:6>). These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (Idle state of SCK)
- Data Input Sample Phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock Edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

The SSP consists of a transmit/receive shift register (SSPSR) and a buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR until the received data is ready. Once the eight bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then, the Buffer Full Status bit BF of the SSPSTAT register, and the interrupt flag bit SSPIF, are set. This double-buffering of the received data (SSPBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored and the Write Collision Detect bit, WCOL of the SSPCON register, will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. Buffer Full bit BF of the SSPSTAT register indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the SSP interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 13-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the SSP Status register (SSPSTAT) indicates the various status conditions.

EXAMPLE 13-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
BSF    STATUS, RP0      ;Bank 1
BCF    STATUS, RP1      ;
LOOP   BTFSS SSPSTAT, BF ;Has data been received(transmit complete)?
GOTO   LOOP             ;No
BCF    STATUS, RP0      ;Bank 0
MOVF   SSPBUF, W        ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF
MOVWF  RXDATA           ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful
MOVF   TXDATA, W        ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
MOVWF  SSPBUF           ;New data to xmit
```

13.3 Enabling SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit SSPEN of the SSPCON register must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, re-initialize the SSPCON registers and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK and SS pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRISB and TRISC registers) appropriately programmed. That is:

- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<7> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISB<6> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISB<6> bit set
- SS must have TRISC<6> bit set

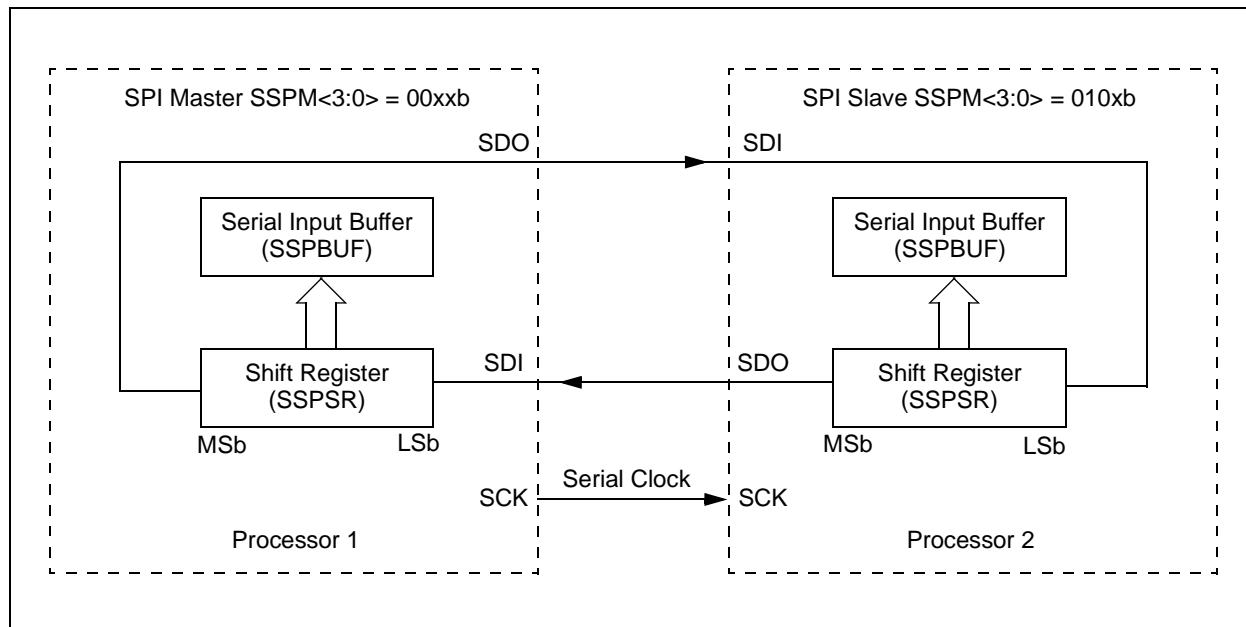
Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRISB and TRISC) registers to the opposite value.

13.4 Typical Connection

Figure 13-2 shows a typical connection between two microcontrollers. The master controller (Processor 1) initiates the data transfer by sending the SCK signal. Data is shifted out of both shift registers on their programmed clock edge and latched on the opposite edge of the clock. Both processors should be programmed to the same Clock Polarity (CKP), then both controllers would send and receive data at the same time. Whether the data is meaningful (or dummy data) depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends data – Slave sends dummy data
- Master sends data – Slave sends data
- Master sends dummy data – Slave sends data

FIGURE 13-2: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION



13.5 Master Mode

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 13-2) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and Status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a Line Activity Monitor mode.

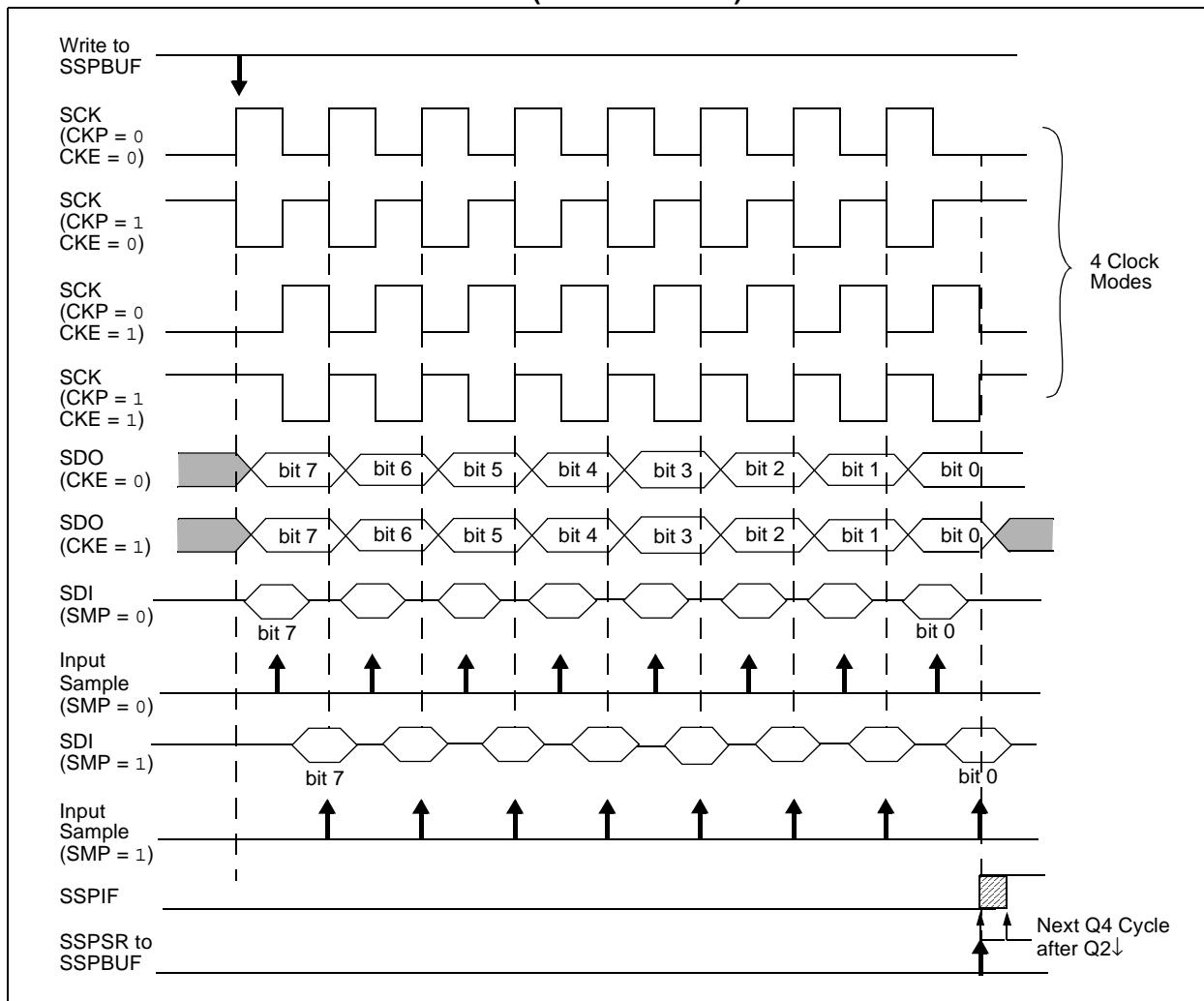
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit of the SSPCON register. This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 13-3, Figure 13-5 and Figure 13-6, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- Fosc/4 (or Tcy)
- Fosc/16 (or 4 • Tcy)
- Fosc/64 (or 16 • Tcy)
- Timer2 output/2 (PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only)

This allows a maximum data rate (at 40 MHz) of 10 Mbps.

Figure 13-3 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 13-3: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



13.6 Slave Mode

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in Sleep mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from Sleep.

13.7 Slave Select Synchronization

The SS pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with SS pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 04h). The pin must not be driven low for the SS pin to function as an input. The data latch must be high. When the SS pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the SS pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven,

even if in the middle of a transmitted byte, and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

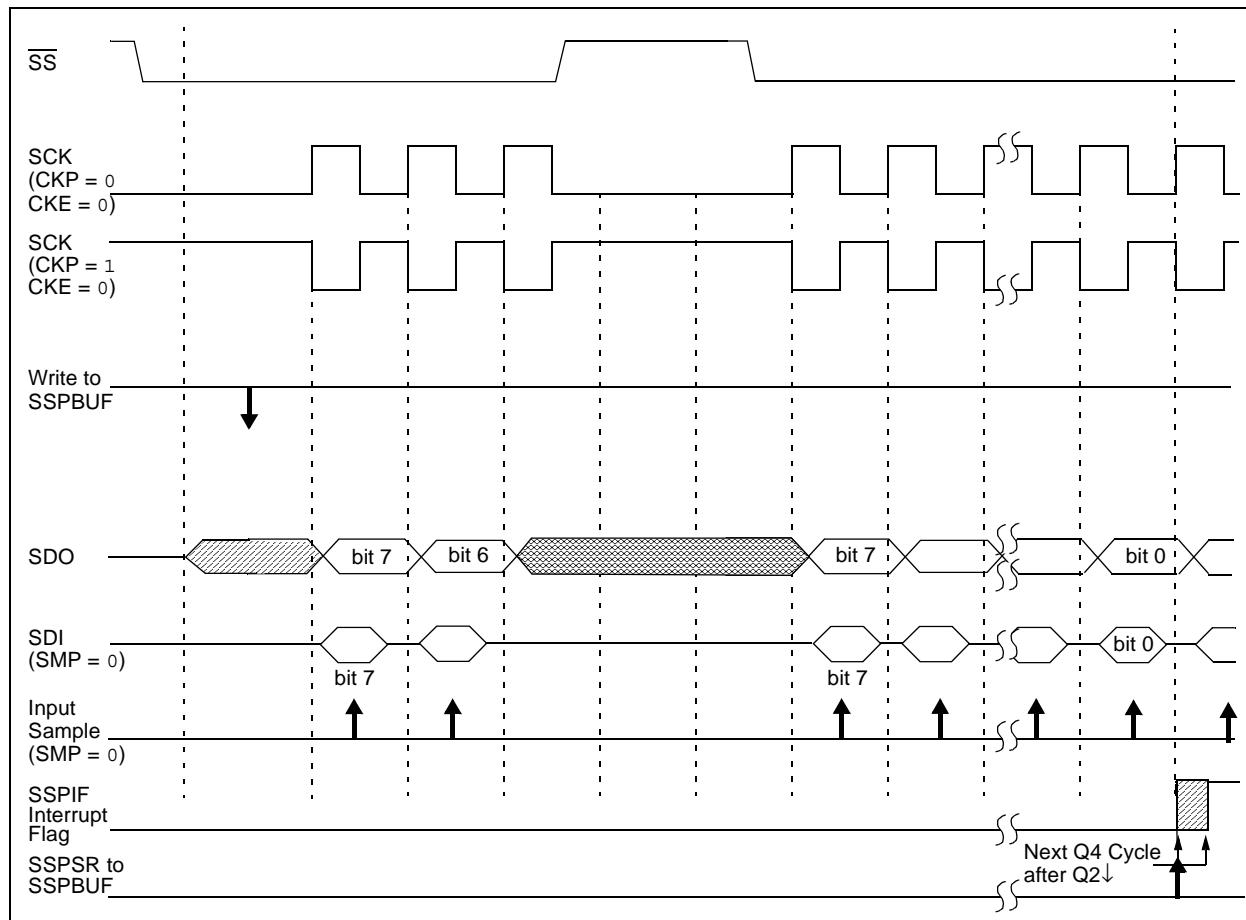
Note 1: When the SPI is in Slave mode with SS pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 0100), the SPI module will reset if the SS pin is set to VDD.

2: If the SPI is used in Slave Mode with CKE set, then the SS pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to '0'. This can be done by either forcing the SS pin to a high level or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver, the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function) since it cannot create a bus conflict.

FIGURE 13-4: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 13-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

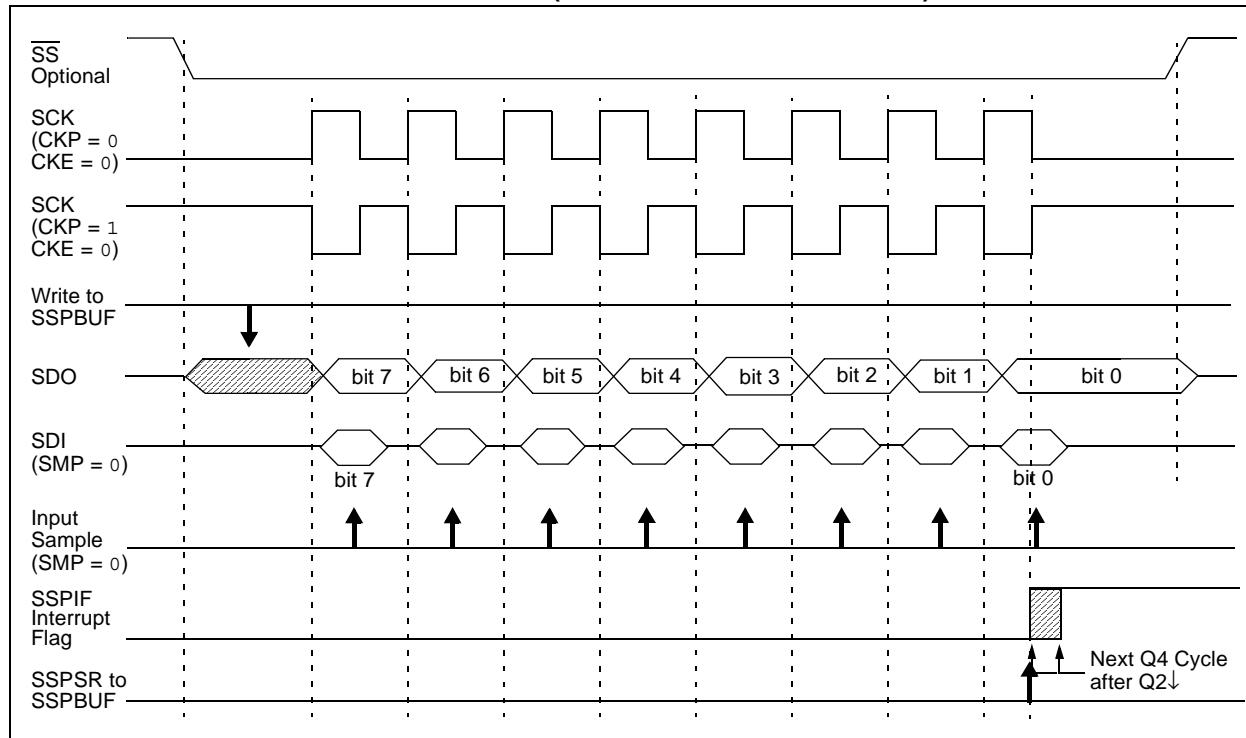
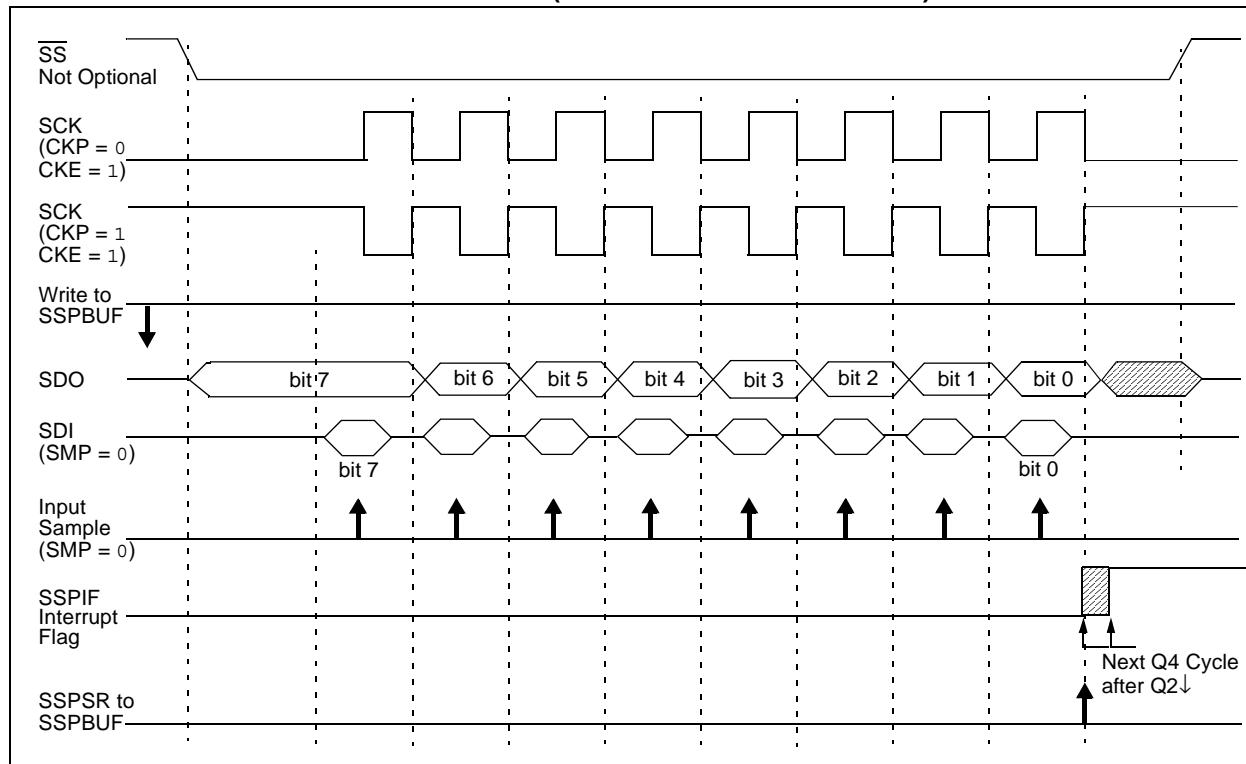


FIGURE 13-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



13.8 Sleep Operation

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from Sleep. After the device returns to Normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in Sleep mode and data to be shifted into the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the SSP interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device from Sleep.

13.9 Effects of a Reset

A Reset disables the SSP module and terminates the current transfer.

13.10 Bus Mode Compatibility

Table 13-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states of the CKP and CKE control bits.

TABLE 13-1: SPI BUS MODES

Standard SPI Mode Terminology	Control Bits State	
	CKP	CKE
0, 0	0	1
0, 1	0	0
1, 0	1	1
1, 1	1	0

There is also a SMP bit which controls when the data is sampled.

TABLE 13-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION⁽¹⁾

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh/8Bh/10Bh/18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
0Ch	PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
13h	SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register							xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	
14h	SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
86h/186h	TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	1111 ----
87h/187h	TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISCO	1111 1111	1111 1111
8Ch	PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
94h	SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/A	P	S	R/W	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the SSP in SPI mode.

Note 1: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

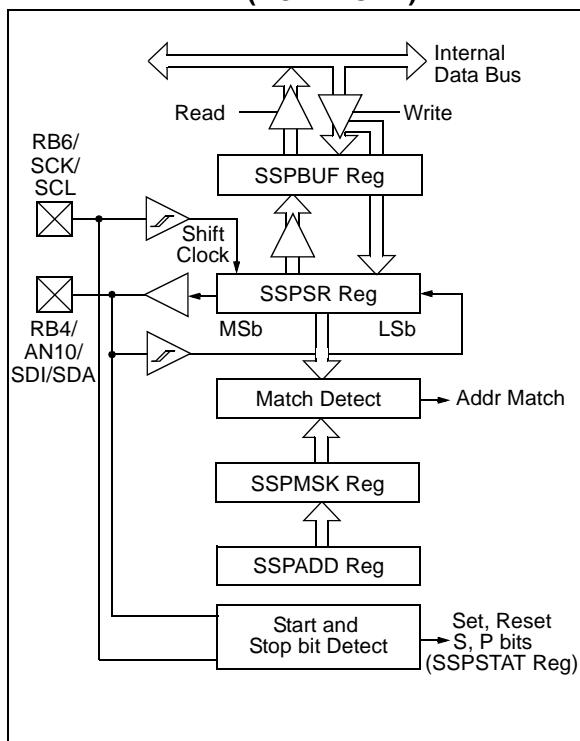
13.11 SSP I²C Operation

The SSP module in I²C mode, fully implements all slave functions, except general call support, and provides interrupts on Start and Stop bits in hardware to facilitate firmware implementations of the master functions. The SSP module implements the Standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer. These are the RB6/SCK/SCL pin, which is the clock (SCL), and the RB4/AN10/SDI/SDA pin, which is the data (SDA).

The SSP module functions are enabled by setting SSP enable bit SSPEN (SSPCON<5>).

FIGURE 13-7: SSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I²C™ MODE)



The SSP module has six registers for the I²C operation, which are listed below.

- SSP Control register (SSPCON)
- SSP Status register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- SSP Shift register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible
- SSP Address register (SSPADD)
- SSP Mask register (SSPMSK)

The SSPCON register allows control of the I²C operation. Four mode selection bits (SSPCON<3:0>) allow one of the following I²C modes to be selected:

- I²C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I²C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I²C Slave mode (7-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode
- I²C Slave mode (10-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode
- I²C Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode; Slave is idle

Selection of any I²C mode with the SSPEN bit set forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISB bits. Pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins for proper operation of the I²C module.

13.12 Slave Mode

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISB<6,4> are set). The SSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

When an address is matched, or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the Acknowledge (ACK) pulse, and then load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

There are certain conditions that will cause the SSP module not to give this ACK pulse. They include (either or both):

- a) The Buffer Full bit BF of the SSPSTAT register was set before the transfer was received.
- b) The overflow bit SSPOV of the SSPCON register was set before the transfer was received.

In this case, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF of the PIR1 register is set. Table 13-3 shows the results of when a data transfer byte is received, given the status of bits BF and SSPOV. The shaded cells show the condition where user software did not properly clear the overflow condition. Flag bit BF is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. For high and low times of the I²C specification, as well as the requirements of the SSP module, see **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

13.12.1 ADDRESSING

Once the SSP module has been enabled, it waits for a Start condition to occur. Following the Start condition, the 8-bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of the SSPADD register. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match, and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

- a) The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
- b) The buffer full bit, BF is set.
- c) An ACK pulse is generated.
- d) SSP interrupt flag bit, SSPIF of the PIR1 register is set (interrupt is generated if enabled) on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse.

In 10-bit Address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave (Figure 13-8). The five Most Significant bits (MSbs) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. Bit R/W (SSPSTAT<2>) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal '1111 0 A9 A8 0', where A9 and A8 are the two MSbs of the address.

The sequence of events for 10-bit address is as follows, with steps 7-9 for slave-transmitter:

1. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and bit UA (SSPSTAT<1>) are set).
2. Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
3. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
4. Receive second (low) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and UA are set).
5. Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of address; if match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
6. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
7. Receive repeated Start condition.
8. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
9. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

TABLE 13-3: DATA TRANSFER RECEIVED BYTE ACTIONS

Status Bits as Data Transfer is Received		SSPSR → SSPBUF	Generate <u>ACK</u> Pulse	Set bit SSPIF (SSP Interrupt occurs if enabled)
BF	SSPOV			
0	0	Yes	Yes	Yes
1	0	No	No	Yes
1	1	No	No	Yes
0	1	No	No	Yes

Note: Shaded cells show the conditions where the user software did not properly clear the overflow condition.

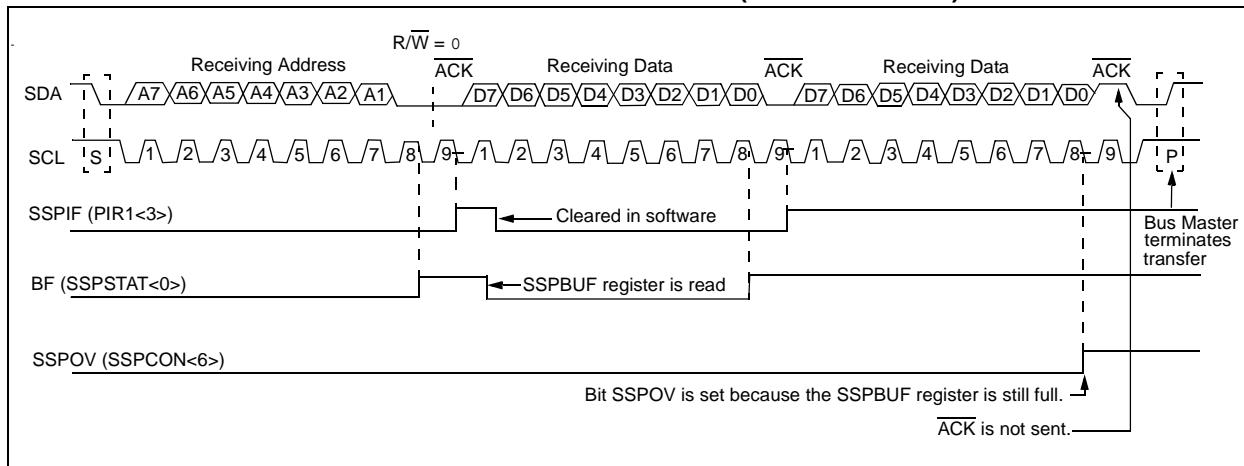
13.12.2 RECEPTION

When the R/W bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the R/W bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register.

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then no Acknowledge (ACK) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF of the SSPSTAT register is set, or bit SSPOV of the SSPCON register is set. This is an error condition due to the user's firmware.

An SSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF of the PIR1 register must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

FIGURE 13-8: I²C™ WAVEFORMS FOR RECEPTION (7-BIT ADDRESS)



13.12.3 SSP MASK REGISTER

An SSP Mask (SSPMSK) register is available in I²C Slave mode as a mask for the value held in the SSPSR register during an address comparison operation. A zero ('0') bit in the SSPMSK register has the effect of making the corresponding bit in the SSPSR register a 'don't care'.

This register is reset to all '1's upon any Reset condition and, therefore, has no effect on standard SSP operation until written with a mask value.

This register must be initiated prior to setting SSPM<3:0> bits to select the I²C Slave mode (7-bit or 10-bit address).

This register can only be accessed when the appropriate mode is selected by bits (SSPM<3:0> of SSPCON).

The SSP Mask register is active during:

- 7-bit Address mode: address compare of A<7:1>.
- 10-bit Address mode: address compare of A<7:0> only. The SSP mask has no effect during the reception of the first (high) byte of the address.

REGISTER 13-3: SSPMSK: SSP MASK REGISTER⁽¹⁾

| R/W-1 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------------------|
| MSK7 | MSK6 | MSK5 | MSK4 | MSK3 | MSK2 | MSK1 | MSK0 ⁽²⁾ |
| bit 7 | bit 0 | | | | | | |

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-1

MSK<7:1>: Mask bits

- 1 = The received address bit n is compared to SSPADD<n> to detect I²C address match
 0 = The received address bit n is not used to detect I²C address match

bit 0

MSK<0>: Mask bit for I²C Slave mode, 10-bit Address⁽²⁾

I²C Slave mode, 10-bit Address (SSPM<3:0> = 0111):

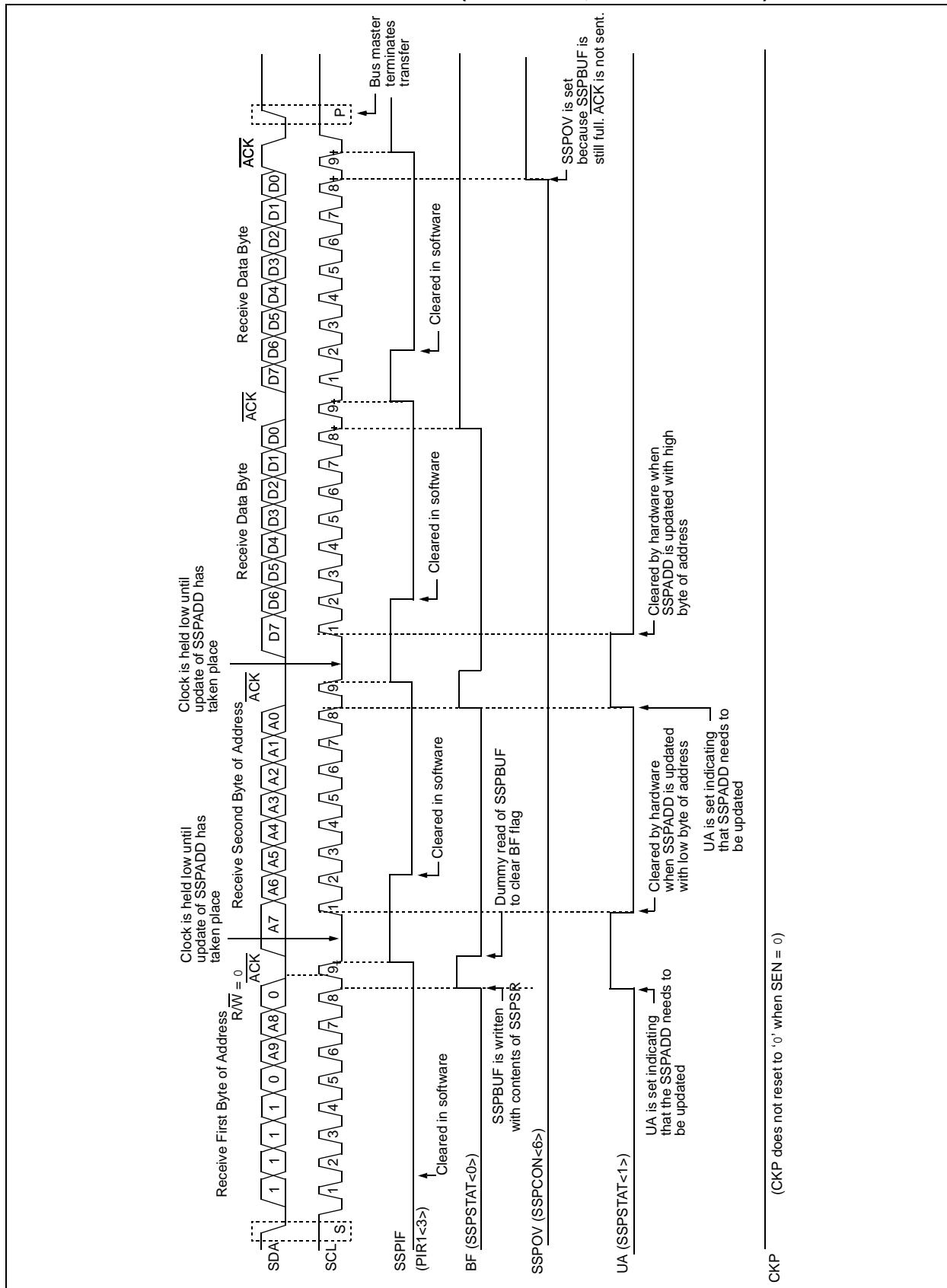
- 1 = The received address bit 0 is compared to SSPADD<0> to detect I²C address match
 0 = The received address bit 0 is not used to detect I²C address match

Note 1: When SSPCON bits SSPM<3:0> = 1001, any reads or writes to the SSPADD SFR address are accessed through the SSPMSK register. The SSPEN bit of the SSPCON register should be zero when accessing the SSPMSK register.

2: In all other SSP modes, this bit has no effect.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 13-9: I²C™ SLAVE MODE TIMING (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



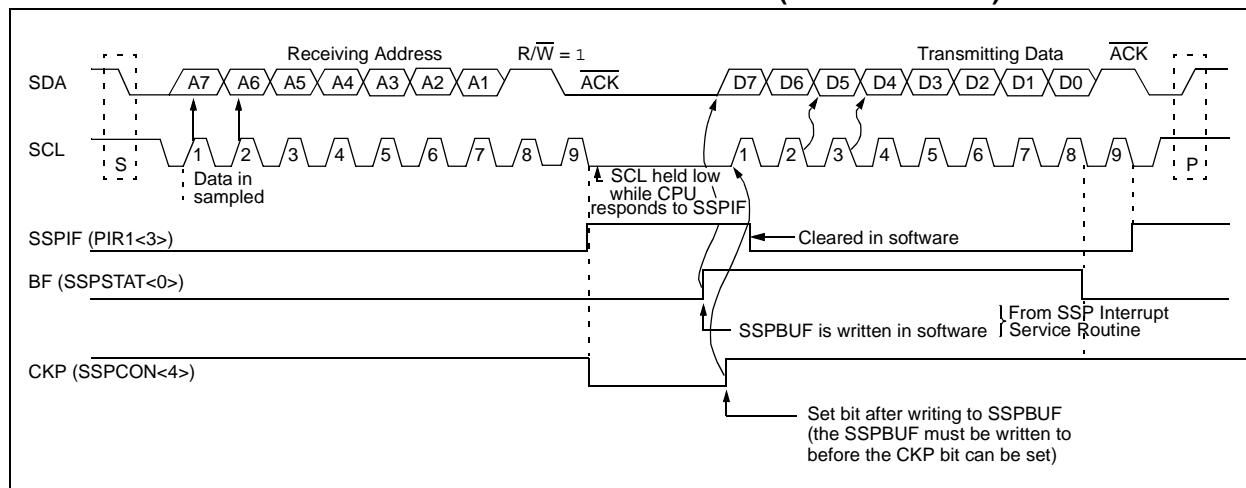
13.12.4 TRANSMISSION

When the R/W bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the R/W bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The ACK pulse will be sent on the ninth bit, and pin RB6/SCK/SCL is held low. The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then, pin RB6/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP (SSPCON<4>). The master must monitor the SCL pin prior to asserting another clock pulse. The slave devices may be holding off the master by stretching the clock. The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 13-10).

An SSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF must be cleared in software, and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. Flag bit SSPIF is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

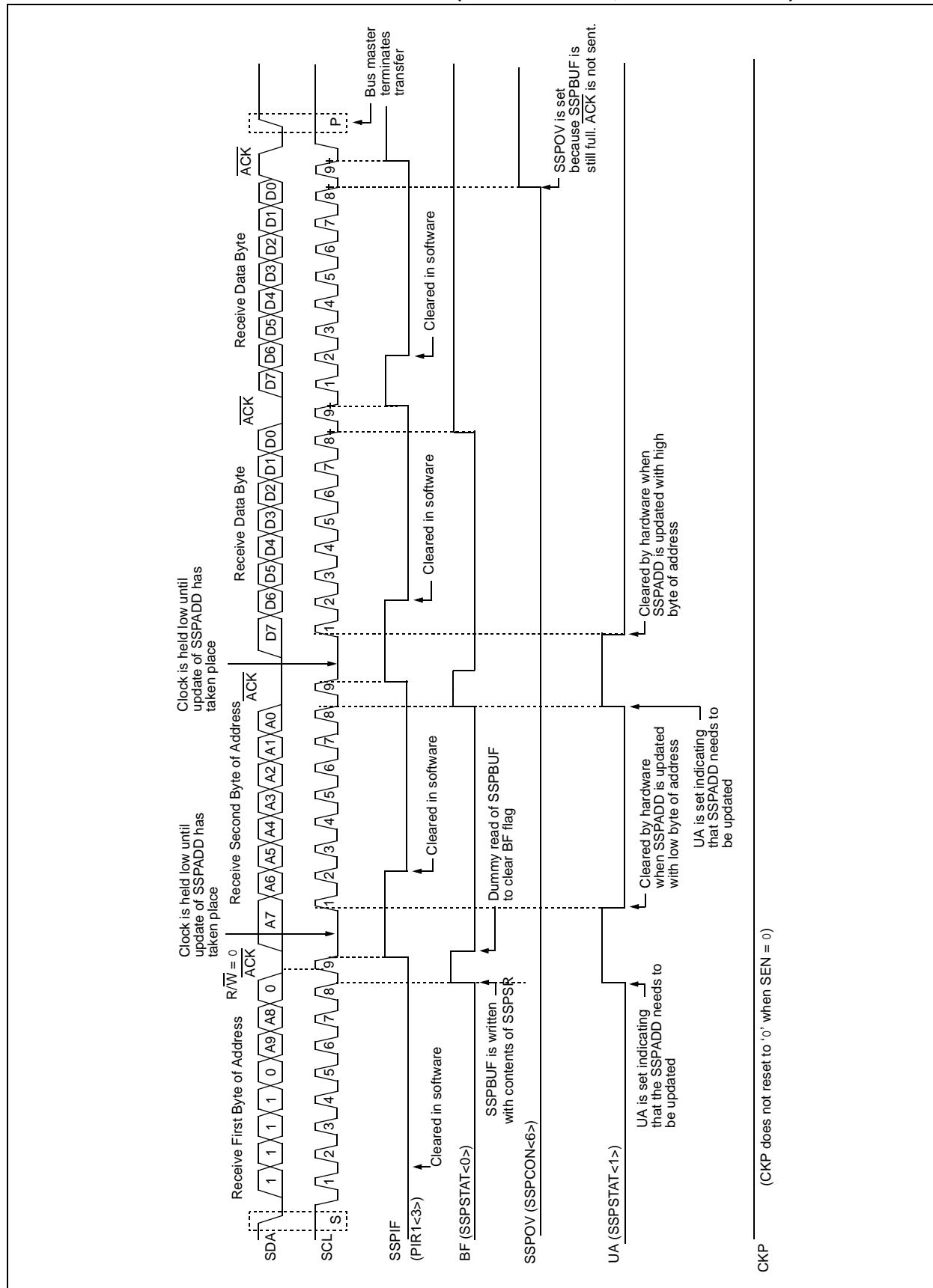
As a slave-transmitter, the ACK pulse from the master receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line was high (not ACK), then the data transfer is complete. When the ACK is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave then monitors for another occurrence of the Start bit. If the SDA line was low (ACK), the transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RB6/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP.

FIGURE 13-10: I²C™ WAVEFORMS FOR TRANSMISSION (7-BIT ADDRESS)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 13-11: I²C™ SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



13.13 Master Mode

Master mode of operation is supported in firmware using interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the SSP module is disabled. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits will toggle based on the Start and Stop conditions. Control of the I²C bus may be taken when the P bit is set or the bus is idle and both the S and P bits are clear.

In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by clearing the corresponding TRISB<6,4> bit(s). The output level is always low, irrespective of the value(s) in PORTB<6,4>. So when transmitting data, a '1' data bit must have the TRISB<4> bit set (input) and a '0' data bit must have the TRISB<4> bit cleared (output). The same scenario is true for the SCL line with the TRISB<6> bit. Pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins for proper operation of the I²C module.

The following events will cause the SSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP Interrupt will occur if enabled):

- Start condition
- Stop condition
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received

Master mode of operation can be done with either the Slave mode idle (SSPM<3:0> = 1011), or with the Slave active. When both Master and Slave modes are enabled, the software needs to differentiate the source(s) of the interrupt.

13.14 Multi-Master Mode

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions, allows the determination of when the bus is free. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the SSP module is disabled. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits will toggle based on the Start and Stop conditions. Control of the I²C bus may be taken when bit P (SSPSTAT<4>) is set, or the bus is idle and both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP Interrupt will generate the interrupt when the Stop condition occurs.

In Multi-Master operation, the SDA line must be monitored to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check only needs to be done when a high level is output. If a high level is expected and a low level is present, the device needs to release the SDA and SCL lines (set TRISB<6,4>). There are two stages where this arbitration can be lost, these are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer

When the slave logic is enabled, the slave continues to receive. If arbitration was lost during the address transfer stage, communication to the device may be in progress. If addressed, an ACK pulse will be generated. If arbitration was lost during the data transfer stage, the device will need to re-transfer the data at a later time.

13.14.1 CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION AND THE CKP BIT

When the CKP bit is cleared, the SCL output is forced to '0'; however, setting the CKP bit will not assert the SCL output low until the SCL output is already sampled low. Therefore, the CKP bit will not assert the SCL line until an external I²C master device has already asserted the SCL line. The SCL output will remain low until the CKP bit is set and all other devices on the I²C bus have deasserted SCL. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCL (see Figure 13-12).

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 13-12: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING

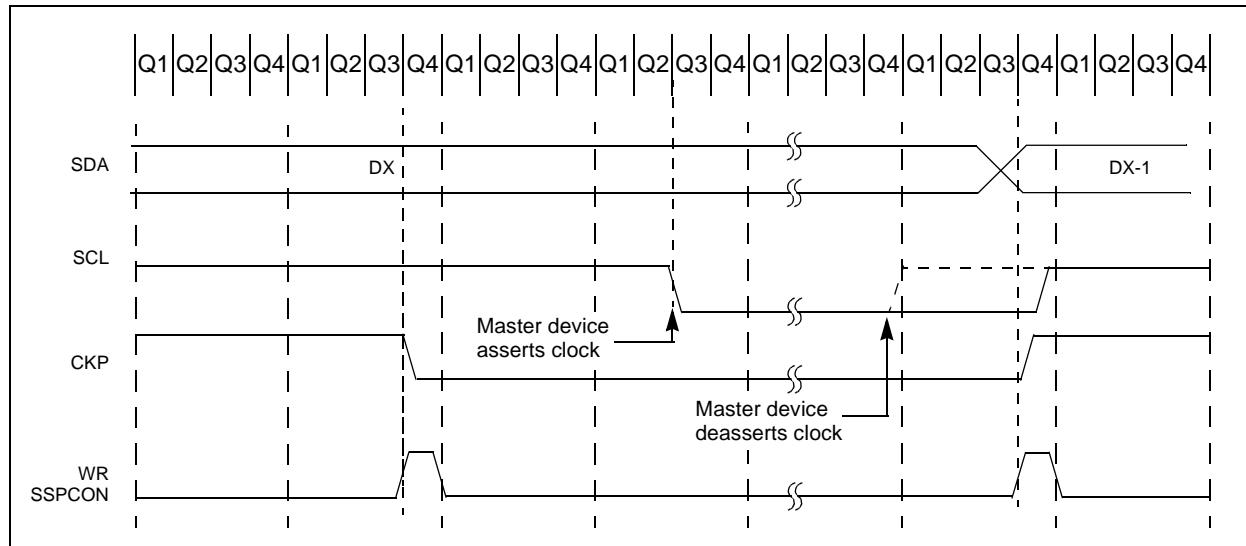


TABLE 13-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH I²C™ OPERATION⁽¹⁾

Addr	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
0Bh/8Bh/ 10Bh/18Bh	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	T0IE	INTE	RABIE	T0IF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
0Ch	PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
13h	SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
14h	SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
86h	TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	—	—	—	—	1111 ----	1111 ----
93h	SSPMSK ⁽²⁾	MSK7	MSK6	MSK5	MSK4	MSK3	MSK2	MSK1	MSK0	1111 1111	1111 1111
94h	SSPSTAT	SMP ⁽³⁾	CKE ⁽³⁾	D/A	P	S	R/W	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000
8Ch	PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000

Legend: — = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the SSP module.

Note 1: PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only.

2: SSPMSK register (Register 13-3) can be accessed by reading or writing to SSPADD register with bits SSPM<3:0> = 1001. See Registers 13-2 and 13-3 for more details.

3: Maintain these bits clear.

14.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 have a host of features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power saving features and offer code protection.

These features are:

- Reset
 - Power-on Reset (POR)
 - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
 - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
 - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Oscillator selection
- Sleep
- Code protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 have two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay of 64 ms (nominal) on power-up only, designed to keep the part in Reset while the power supply stabilizes. There is also circuitry to reset the device if a brown-out occurs, which can use the Power-up Timer to provide at least a 64 ms Reset. With these three functions-on-chip, most applications need no external Reset circuitry.

The Sleep mode is designed to offer a very low-current Power-down mode. The user can wake-up from Sleep through:

- External Reset
- Watchdog Timer Wake-up
- An interrupt

Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The INTOSC option saves system cost while the LP crystal option saves power. A set of Configuration bits are used to select various options (see Register 14-2).

14.1 Configuration Bits

The Configuration bits can be programmed (read as '0'), or left unprogrammed (read as '1') to select various device configurations as shown in Register 14-2. These bits are mapped in program memory location 2007h.

Note: Address 2007h is beyond the user program memory space. It belongs to the special configuration memory space (2000h-3FFFh), which can be accessed only during programming. See "*PIC12F6XX/16F6XX Memory Programming Specification*" (DS41204) for more information.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 14-1: CONFIG: CONFIGURATION WORD REGISTER

Reserved	Reserved	FCMEN	IESO	BOREN1 ⁽¹⁾	BOREN0 ⁽¹⁾	<u>CPD</u> ⁽²⁾
bit 13						bit 7

<u>CP</u> ⁽³⁾	MCLRE ⁽⁴⁾	<u>PWRTE</u>	WDTE	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 6						bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

P = Programmable⁽¹⁾

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 13-12	Reserved: Reserved bits. Do Not Use.
bit 11	FCMEN: Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Enabled bit 1 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled 0 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is disabled
bit 10	IESO: Internal External Switchover bit 1 = Internal External Switchover mode is enabled 0 = Internal External Switchover mode is disabled
bit 9-8	BOREN<1:0>: Brown-out Reset Selection bits ⁽¹⁾ 11 = BOR enabled 10 = BOR enabled during operation and disabled in Sleep 01 = BOR controlled by SBORN bit of the PCON register 00 = BOR disabled
bit 7	CPD: Data Code Protection bit ⁽²⁾ 1 = Data memory code protection is disabled 0 = Data memory code protection is enabled
bit 6	CP: Code Protection bit ⁽²⁾ 1 = Program memory code protection is disabled 0 = Program memory code protection is enabled
bit 5	MCLRE: MCLR Pin Function Select bit ⁽³⁾ 1 = <u>MCLR</u> pin function is MCLR 0 = MCLR pin function is digital input, <u>MCLR</u> internally tied to VDD
bit 4	PWRTE: Power-up Timer Enable bit 1 = PWRT disabled 0 = PWRT enabled
bit 3	WDTE: Watchdog Timer Enable bit 1 = WDT enabled 0 = WDT disabled
bit 2-0	FOSC<2:0>: Oscillator Selection bits 111 = RC oscillator: CLKOUT function on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT pin, RC on RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 110 = RCIO oscillator: I/O function on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT pin, RC on RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 101 = INTOSC oscillator: CLKOUT function on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT pin, I/O function on RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 100 = INTOSCO oscillator: I/O function on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT pin, I/O function on RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 011 = EC: I/O function on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT pin, CLKIN on RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 010 = HS oscillator: High-speed crystal/resonator on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT and RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 001 = XT oscillator: Crystal/resonator on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT and RA5/OSC1/CLKIN 000 = LP oscillator: Low-power crystal on RA4/OSC2/CLKOUT and RA5/OSC1/CLKIN

Note 1: Enabling Brown-out Reset does not automatically enable Power-up Timer.

2: The entire data EEPROM will be erased when the code protection is turned off.

3: The entire program memory will be erased when the code protection is turned off.

4: When MCLR is asserted in INTOSC or RC mode, the internal clock oscillator is disabled.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

14.2 Reset

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 differentiates between various kinds of Reset:

- a) Power-on Reset (POR)
- b) WDT Reset during normal operation
- c) WDT Reset during Sleep
- d) MCLR Reset during normal operation
- e) MCLR Reset during Sleep
- f) Brown-out Reset (BOR)

Some registers are not affected in any Reset condition; their status is unknown on POR and unchanged in any other Reset. Most other registers are reset to a "Reset state" on:

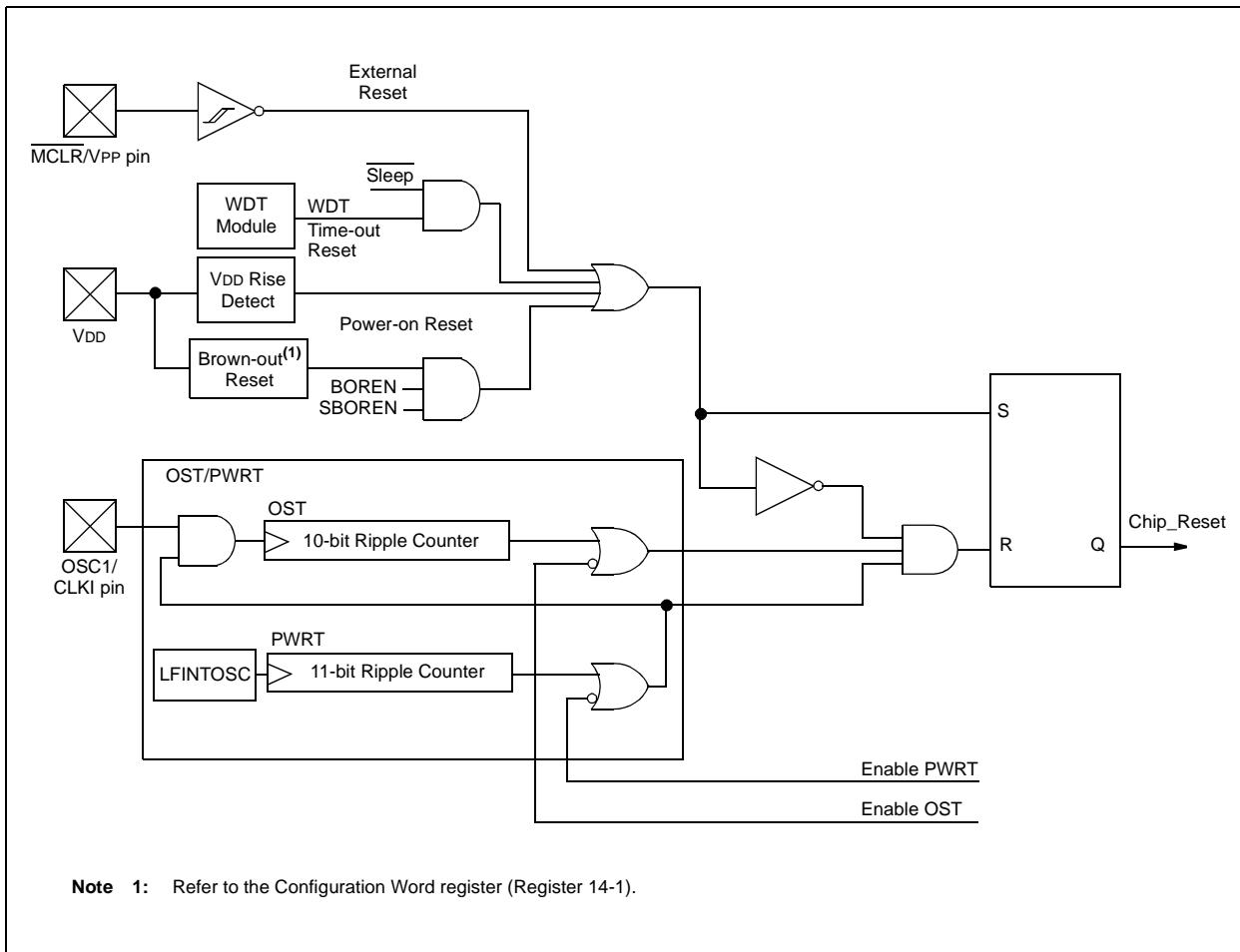
- Power-on Reset
- MCLR Reset
- MCLR Reset during Sleep
- WDT Reset
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)

They are not affected by a WDT Wake-up since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. $\overline{\text{TO}}$ and $\overline{\text{PD}}$ bits are set or cleared differently in different Reset situations, as indicated in Table 14-2. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the Reset. See Table 14-4 for a full description of Reset states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 14-1.

The MCLR Reset path has a noise filter to detect and ignore small pulses. See **Section 17.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for pulse-width specifications.

FIGURE 14-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



Note 1: Refer to the Configuration Word register (Register 14-1).

14.2.1 POWER-ON RESET (POR)

The on-chip POR circuit holds the chip in Reset until VDD has reached a high enough level for proper operation. A maximum rise time for VDD is required. See **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for details. If the BOR is enabled, the maximum rise time specification does not apply. The BOR circuitry will keep the device in Reset until VDD reaches VBOR (see **Section 14.2.4 “Brown-out Reset (BOR)”**).

Note: The POR circuit does not produce an internal Reset when VDD declines. To re-enable the POR, VDD must reach Vss for a minimum of 100 μ s.

When the device starts normal operation (exits the Reset condition), device operating parameters (i.e., voltage, frequency, temperature, etc.) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in Reset until the operating conditions are met.

For additional information, refer to Application Note AN607, “Power-up Trouble Shooting” (DS00607).

14.2.2 MCLR

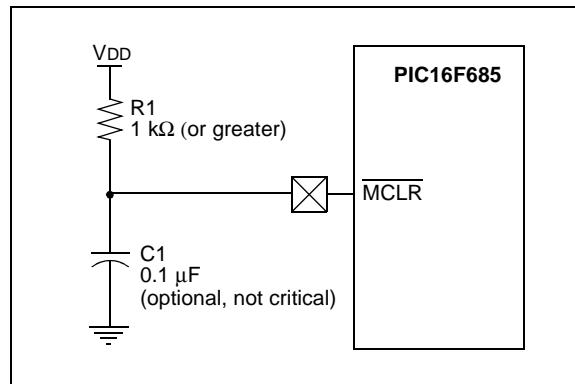
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 has a noise filter in the MCLR Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

It should be noted that a WDT Reset does not drive MCLR pin low.

The behavior of the ESD protection on the MCLR pin has been altered from early devices of this family. Voltages applied to the pin that exceed its specification can result in both MCLR Resets and excessive current beyond the device specification during the ESD event. For this reason, Microchip recommends that the MCLR pin no longer be tied directly to VDD. The use of an RC network, as shown in Figure 14-2, is suggested.

An internal MCLR option is enabled by clearing the MCLRE bit in the Configuration Word register. When MCLRE = 0, the Reset signal to the chip is generated internally. When the MCLRE = 1, the RA3/MCLR pin becomes an external Reset input. In this mode, the RA3/MCLR pin has a weak pull-up to VDD.

FIGURE 14-2: RECOMMENDED MCLR CIRCUIT



14.2.3 POWER-UP TIMER (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a fixed 64 ms (nominal) time-out on power-up only, from POR or Brown-out Reset. The Power-up Timer operates from the 31 kHz LFINTOSC oscillator. For more information, see **Section 3.5 “Internal Clock Modes”**. The chip is kept in Reset as long as PWRT is active. The PWRT delay allows the VDD to rise to an acceptable level. A Configuration bit, PWRTE, can disable (if set) or enable (if cleared or programmed) the Power-up Timer. The Power-up Timer should be enabled when Brown-out Reset is enabled, although it is not required.

The Power-up Timer delay will vary from chip-to-chip and vary due to:

- VDD variation
- Temperature variation
- Process variation

See DC parameters for details (**Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**).

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

14.2.4 BROWN-OUT RESET (BOR)

The BOREN0 and BOREN1 bits in the Configuration Word register select one of four BOR modes. Two modes have been added to allow software or hardware control of the BOR enable. When BOREN<1:0> = 01, the SBORN bit (PCON<4>) enables/disables the BOR allowing it to be controlled in software. By selecting BOREN<1:0>, the BOR is automatically disabled in Sleep to conserve power and enabled on wake-up. In this mode, the SBORN bit is disabled. See Register 14-2 for the Configuration Word definition.

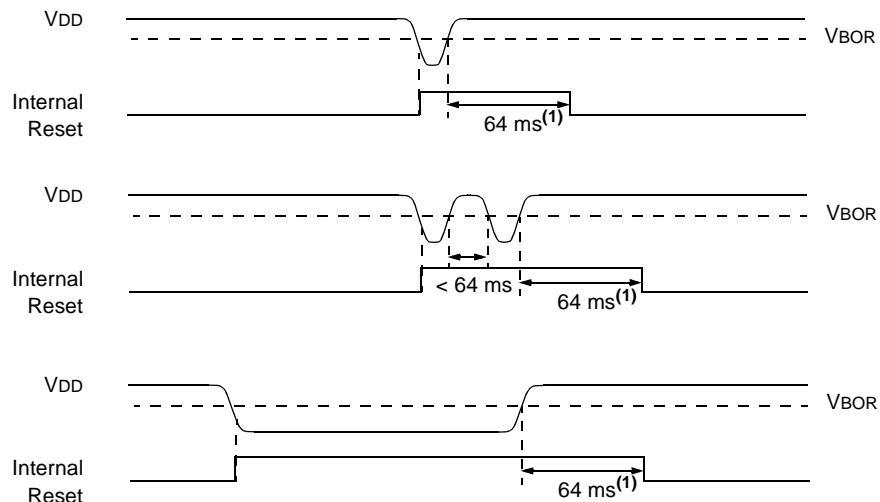
If VDD falls below VBOR for greater than parameter (TBOR) (see **Section 17.0 “Electrical Specifications”**), the Brown-out situation will reset the device. This will occur regardless of VDD slew rate. A Reset is not insured to occur if VDD falls below VBOR for less than parameter (TBOR).

On any Reset (Power-on, Brown-out Reset, Watchdog Timer, etc.), the chip will remain in Reset until VDD rises above VBOR (see Figure 14-3). The Power-up Timer will now be invoked, if enabled and will keep the chip in Reset an additional 64 ms.

Note: The Power-up Timer is enabled by the PWRTE bit in the Configuration Word register.

If VDD drops below VBOR while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be re-initialized. Once VDD rises above VBOR, the Power-up Timer will execute a 64 ms Reset.

FIGURE 14-3: BROWN-OUT SITUATIONS



Note 1: 64 ms delay only if PWRTE bit is programmed to ‘0’.

14.2.5 TIME-OUT SEQUENCE

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: first, PWRT time-out is invoked after POR has expired, then OST is activated after the PWRT time-out has expired. The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and PWRTE bit status. For example, in EC mode with PWRTE bit erased (PWRT disabled), there will be no time-out at all. Figures 14-4, 14-5 and 14-6 depict time-out sequences. The device can execute code from the INTOSC while OST is active by enabling Two-Speed Start-up or Fail-Safe Monitor (see **Section 3.7.2 “Two-speed Start-up Sequence”** and **Section 3.8 “Fail-Safe Clock Monitor”**).

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, if MCLR is kept low long enough, the time-outs will expire. Then, bringing MCLR high will begin execution immediately (see Figure 14-5). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 device operating in parallel.

Table 14-5 shows the Reset conditions for some special registers, while Table 14-4 shows the Reset conditions for all the registers.

14.2.6 POWER CONTROL (PCON) REGISTER

The Power Control register PCON (address 8Eh) has two Status bits to indicate what type of Reset that last occurred.

Bit 0 is BOR (Brown-out Reset). BOR is unknown on Power-on Reset. It must then be set by the user and checked on subsequent Resets to see if BOR = 0, indicating that a Brown-out has occurred. The BOR Status bit is a “don’t care” and is not necessarily predictable if the brown-out circuit is disabled (BOREN<1:0> = 00 in the Configuration Word register).

Bit 1 is POR (Power-on Reset). It is a ‘0’ on Power-on Reset and unaffected otherwise. The user must write a ‘1’ to this bit following a Power-on Reset. On a subsequent Reset, if POR is ‘0’, it will indicate that a Power-on Reset has occurred (i.e., VDD may have gone too low).

For more information, see **Section 4.2.4 “Ultra Low-Power Wake-up”** and **Section 14.2.4 “Brown-out Reset (BOR)”**.

TABLE 14-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up		Brown-out Reset		Wake-up from Sleep
	PWRTE = 0	PWRTE = 1	PWRTE = 0	PWRTE = 1	
XT, HS, LP	TPWRT + 1024 • Tosc	1024 • Tosc	TPWRT + 1024 • Tosc	1024 • Tosc	1024 • Tosc
LP, T1OSCIN = 1	TPWRT	—	TPWRT	—	—
RC, EC, INTOSC	TPWRT	—	TPWRT	—	—

TABLE 14-2: STATUS/PCON BITS AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

POR	BOR	TO	PD	Condition
0	x	1	1	Power-on Reset
u	0	1	1	Brown-out Reset
u	u	0	u	WDT Reset
u	u	0	0	WDT Wake-up
u	u	u	u	MCLR Reset during normal operation
u	u	1	0	MCLR Reset during Sleep

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown

TABLE 14-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BROWN-OUT

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PCON	—	—	ULPWUE	SBOREN	—	—	POR	<u>BOR</u>	--01 --qq	--0u --uu
STATUS	IRP	RP1	RPO	<u>TO</u>	<u>PD</u>	Z	DC	C	0001 1xxx	000q quuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, — = unimplemented bit, reads as ‘0’, q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells are not used by BOR.
Note 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 14-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (DELAYED MCLR): CASE 1

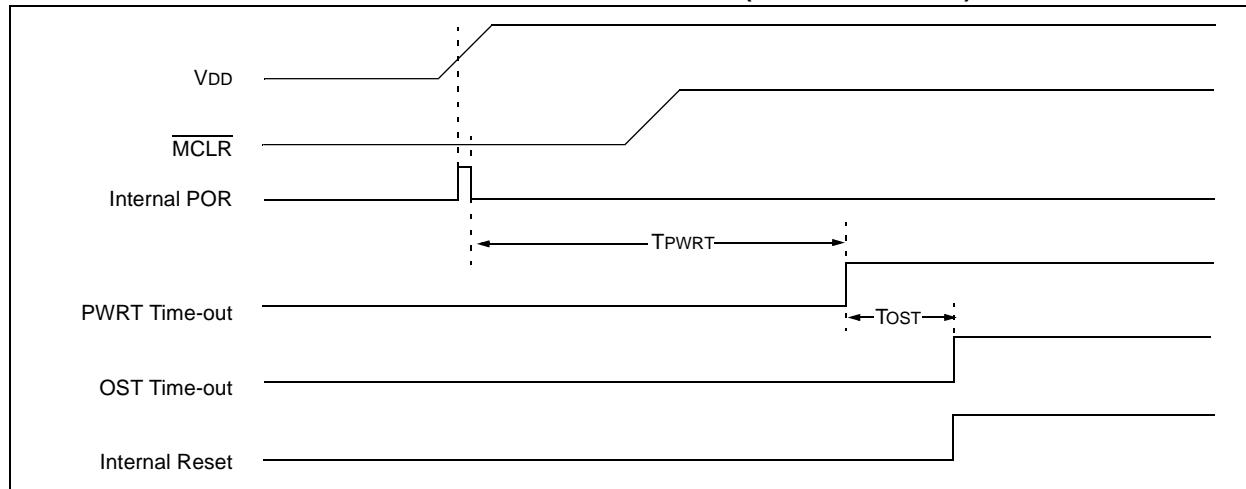


FIGURE 14-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (DELAYED MCLR): CASE 2

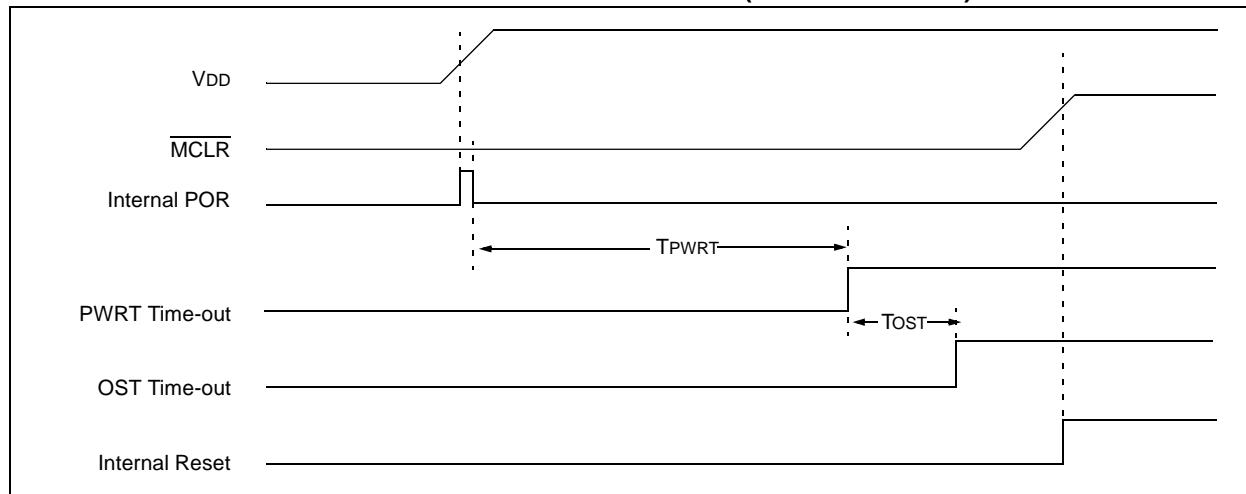


FIGURE 14-6: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (MCLR WITH VDD)

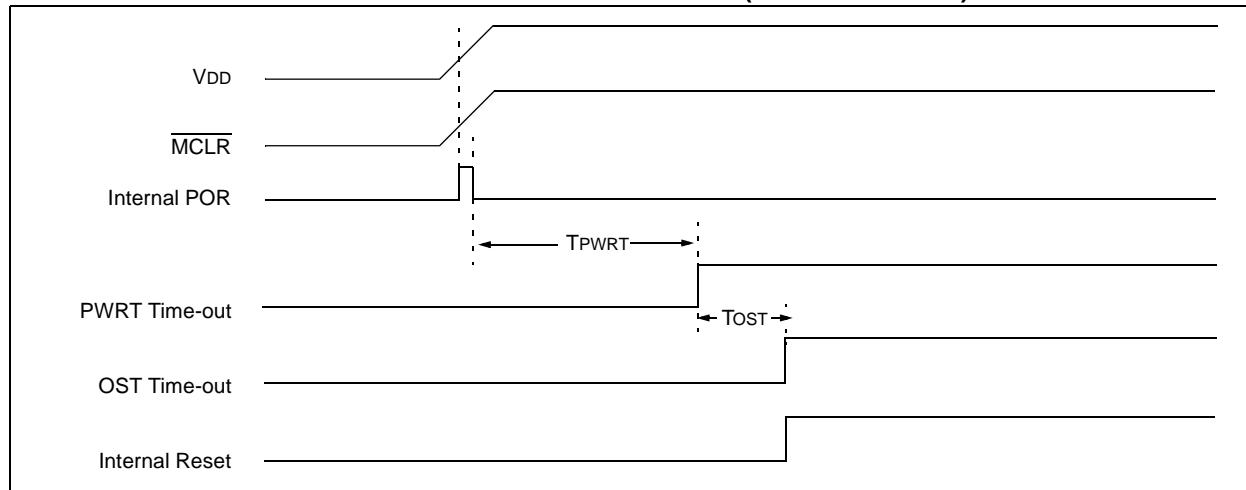


TABLE 14-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTER

Register	Address	Power-on Reset	MCLR Reset WDT Reset Brown-out Reset ⁽¹⁾	Wake-up from Sleep through Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep through WDT Time-out
W	—	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF	00h/80h/ 100h/180h	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu
TMR0	01h/101h	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
PCL	02h/82h/ 102h/182h	0000 0000	0000 0000	PC + 1 ⁽³⁾
STATUS	03h/83h/ 103h/183h	0001 1xxx	000q quuu ⁽⁴⁾	uuuq quuu ⁽⁴⁾
FSR	04h/84h/ 104h/184h	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
PORTA	05h/105h	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu	--uu uuuu
PORTB	06h/106h	xxxx ----	uuuuu ----	uuuuu ----
PORTC	07h/107h	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
PCLATH	0Ah/8Ah/ 10Ah/18Ah	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
INTCON	0Bh/8Bh/ 10Bh/18Bh	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuuu uuuuu ⁽²⁾
PIR1	0Ch	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuuu ⁽²⁾
PIR2	0Dh	0000 ----	0000 ----	uuuuu ---- ⁽²⁾
TMR1L	0Eh	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
TMR1H	0Fh	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
T1CON	10h	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
TMR2	11h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
T2CON	12h	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
SSPBUF	13h	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
SSPCON	14h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
CCPR1L	15h	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
CCPR1H	16h	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
CCP1CON	17h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
RCSTA	18h	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuuu uuuuu
TXREG	19h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
RCREG	1Ah	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
PWM1CON	1Ch	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
ECCPAS	1Dh	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
ADRESH	1Eh	xxxx xxxx	uuuuu uuuuu	uuuuu uuuuu
ADCON0	1Fh	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuuu uuuuu
OPTION_REG	81h/181h	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuuu uuuuu
TRISA	85h/185h	--11 1111	--11 1111	--uu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

Note 1: If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

2: One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

4: See Table 14-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

6: Accessible only when SSPM<3:0> = 1001.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 14-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTER (CONTINUED)

Register	Address	Power-on Reset	MCLR Reset WDT Reset (Continued) Brown-out Reset ⁽¹⁾	Wake-up from Sleep through Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep through WDT Time-out
TRISB	86h/186h	1111 ----	1111 ----	uuuu ----
TRISC	87h/187h	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PIE1	8Ch	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
PIE2	8Dh	0000 ----	0000 ----	uuuu uuuu
PCON	8Eh	--01 --0x	--0u --uq ^{1, 5)}	--uu --uu
OSCCON	8Fh	-110 q000	-110 q000	-uuu uuuu
OSCTUNE	90h	---0 0000	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
PR2	92h	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
SSPADD	93h	0000 0000	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
SSPMSK ⁽⁶⁾	93h	---- ----	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
SSPSTAT	94h	0000 0000	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
WPUA	95h	--11 -111	--11 -111	uuuu uuuu
IOCA	96h	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
WDTCON	97h	---0 1000	---0 1000	---u uuuu
TXSTA	98h	0000 0010	0000 0010	uuuu uuuu
SPBRG	99h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SPBRGH	9Ah	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
BAUDCTL	9Bh	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00	uu-u u-uu
ADRESL	9Eh	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	9Fh	-000 ----	-000 ----	-uuu ----
EEDAT	10Ch	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEADR	10Dh	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEDATH	10Eh	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
EEADDRH	10Fh	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
WPUB	115h	1111 ----	1111 ----	uuuu ----
IOCB	116h	0000 ----	0000 ----	uuuu ----
VRCON	118h	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CM1CON0	119h	0000 -000	0000 -000	uuuu -uuu
CM2CON0	11Ah	0000 -000	0000 -000	uuuu -uuu
CM2CON1	11Bh	00-- --00	00-- --10	uu-- --uu
ANSEL	11Eh	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
ANSELH	11Fh	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
EECON1	18Ch	x--- x000	u--- q000	---- uuuu
EECON2	18Dh	-----	-----	----- -----
PSTRCON	19Dh	---0 0001	---0 0001	--u uuuu
SRCON	19EH	0000 00--	0000 00--	uuuu uu--

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, -- = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

Note 1: If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

2: One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

4: See Table 14-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

6: Accessible only when SSPM<3:0> = 1001.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 14-5: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR SPECIAL REGISTERS

Condition	Program Counter	Status Register	PCON Register
Power-on Reset	000h	0001 1xxx	--01 --0x
MCLR Reset during normal operation	000h	000u uuuu	--0u --uu
MCLR Reset during Sleep	000h	0001 0uuu	--0u --uu
WDT Reset	000h	0000 uuuu	--0u --uu
WDT Wake-up	PC + 1	uuu0 0uuu	--uu --uu
Brown-out Reset	000h	0001 1uuu	--01 --u0
Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep	PC + 1 ⁽¹⁾	uuu1 0uuu	--uu --uu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0'.

Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE, is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h) after execution of PC + 1.

14.3 Interrupts

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 have multiple sources of interrupt:

- External Interrupt RA2/INT
- TMR0 Overflow Interrupt
- PORTA/PORTB Change Interrupts
- 2 Comparator Interrupts
- A/D Interrupt (except PIC16F631)
- Timer1 Overflow Interrupt
- Timer2 Match Interrupt (PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only)
- EEPROM Data Write Interrupt
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Interrupt
- Enhanced CCP Interrupt (PIC16F685/PIC16F690 only)
- EUSART Receive and Transmit interrupts (PIC16F687/PIC16F689/PIC16F690 only)

The Interrupt Control register (INTCON) and Peripheral Interrupt Request Register 1 (PIR1) record individual interrupt requests in flag bits. The INTCON register also has individual and global interrupt enable bits.

A Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>), enables (if set) all unmasked interrupts, or disables (if cleared) all interrupts. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits in the INTCON, PIE1 and PIE2 registers, respectively. GIE is cleared on Reset.

The Return from Interrupt instruction, RETFIE, exits the interrupt routine, as well as sets the GIE bit, which re-enables unmasked interrupts.

The following interrupt flags are contained in the INTCON register:

- INT Pin Interrupt
- PORTA/PORTB Change Interrupts
- TMR0 Overflow Interrupt

The peripheral interrupt flags are contained in the PIR1 and PIR2 registers. The corresponding interrupt enable bits are contained in PIE1 and PIE2 registers.

The following interrupt flags are contained in the PIR1 register:

- A/D Interrupt
- EUSART Receive and Transmit Interrupts
- Timer1 Overflow Interrupt
- Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt
- Enhanced CCP1 Interrupt
- Timer1 Overflow Interrupt
- Timer2 Match Interrupt

The following interrupt flags are contained in the PIR2 register:

- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Interrupt
- 2 Comparator Interrupts
- EEPROM Data Write Interrupt

When an interrupt is serviced:

- The GIE is cleared to disable any further interrupt.
- The return address is pushed onto the stack.
- The PC is loaded with 0004h.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pin, PORTA/PORTB change interrupts, the interrupt latency will be three or four instruction cycles. The exact latency depends upon when the interrupt event occurs (see Figure 14-8). The latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bit(s) must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid multiple interrupt requests.

Note 1: Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding mask bit or the GIE bit.

2: When an instruction that clears the GIE bit is executed, any interrupts that were pending for execution in the next cycle are ignored. The interrupts, which were ignored, are still pending to be serviced when the GIE bit is set again.

For additional information on Timer1, Timer2, comparators, A/D, data EEPROM, EUSART, SSP or Enhanced CCP modules, refer to the respective peripheral section.

14.3.1 RA2/INT INTERRUPT

External interrupt on RA2/INT pin is edge-triggered; either rising if the INTEDG bit (OPTION_REG<6>) is set, or falling, if the INTEDG bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RA2/INT pin, the INTF bit (INTCON<1>) is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the INTE control bit (INTCON<4>). The INTF bit must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The RA2/INT interrupt can wake-up the processor from Sleep, if the INTE bit was set prior to going into Sleep. The status of the GIE bit decides whether or not the processor branches to the interrupt vector following wake-up (0004h). See **Section 14.6 “Power-Down Mode (Sleep)”** for details on Sleep and Figure 14-10 for timing of wake-up from Sleep through RA2/INT interrupt.

Note: The ANSEL and CM2CON0 registers must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read ‘0’.

14.3.2 TMR0 INTERRUPT

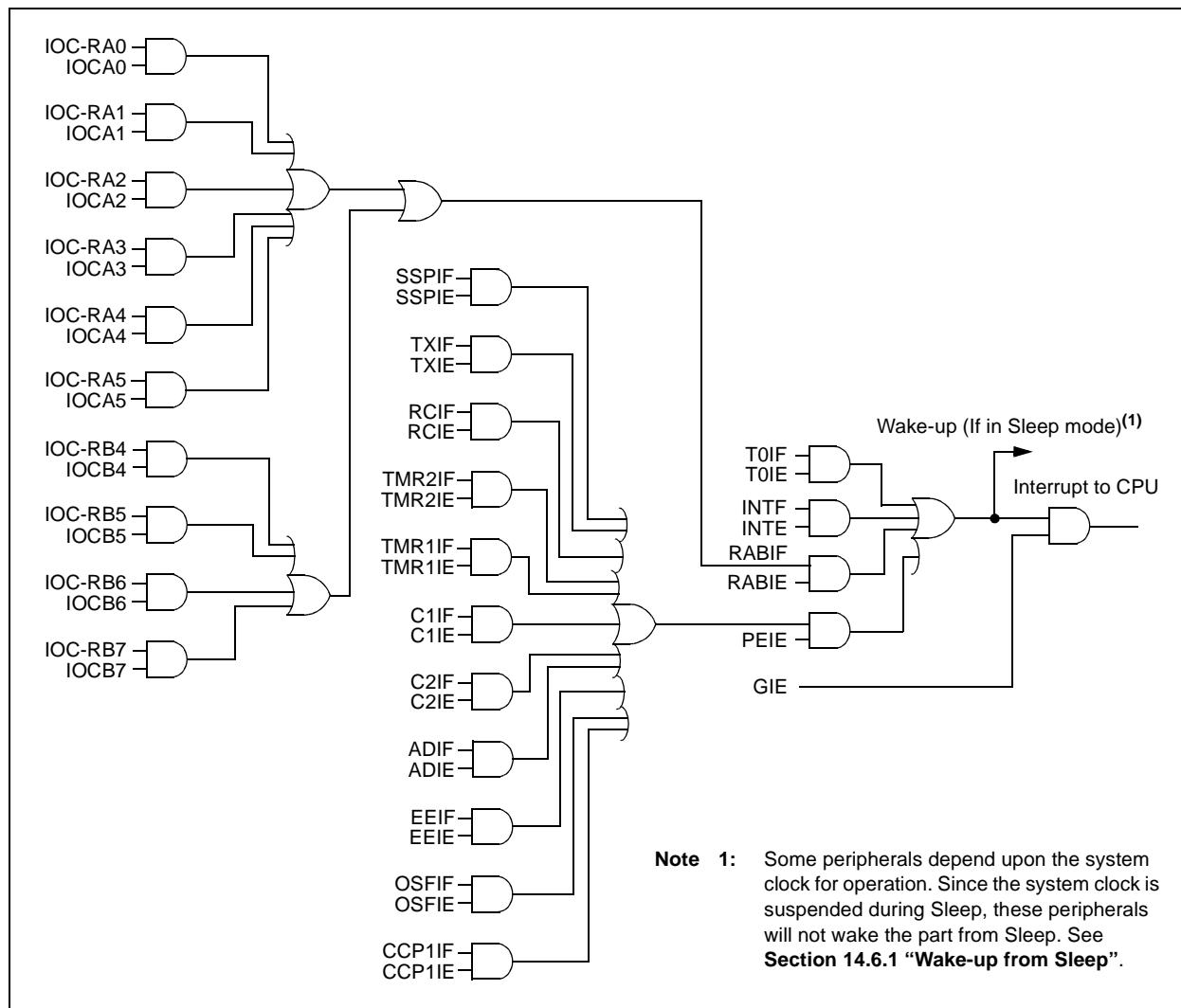
An overflow ($\text{FFh} \rightarrow 00\text{h}$) in the TMR0 register will set the T0IF (INTCON<2>) bit. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing T0IE (INTCON<5>) bit. See **Section 5.0 “Timer0 Module”** for operation of the Timer0 module.

14.3.3 PORTA/PORTB INTERRUPT

An input change on PORTA or PORTB change sets the RABIF (INTCON<0>) bit. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing the RABIE (INTCON<3>) bit. Plus, individual pins can be configured through the IOCA or IOCB registers.

Note: If a change on the I/O pin should occur when the read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the RABIF interrupt flag may not get set. See **Section 4.2.3 “Interrupt-on-change”** for more information.

FIGURE 14-7: INTERRUPT LOGIC



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 14-8: INT PIN INTERRUPT TIMING

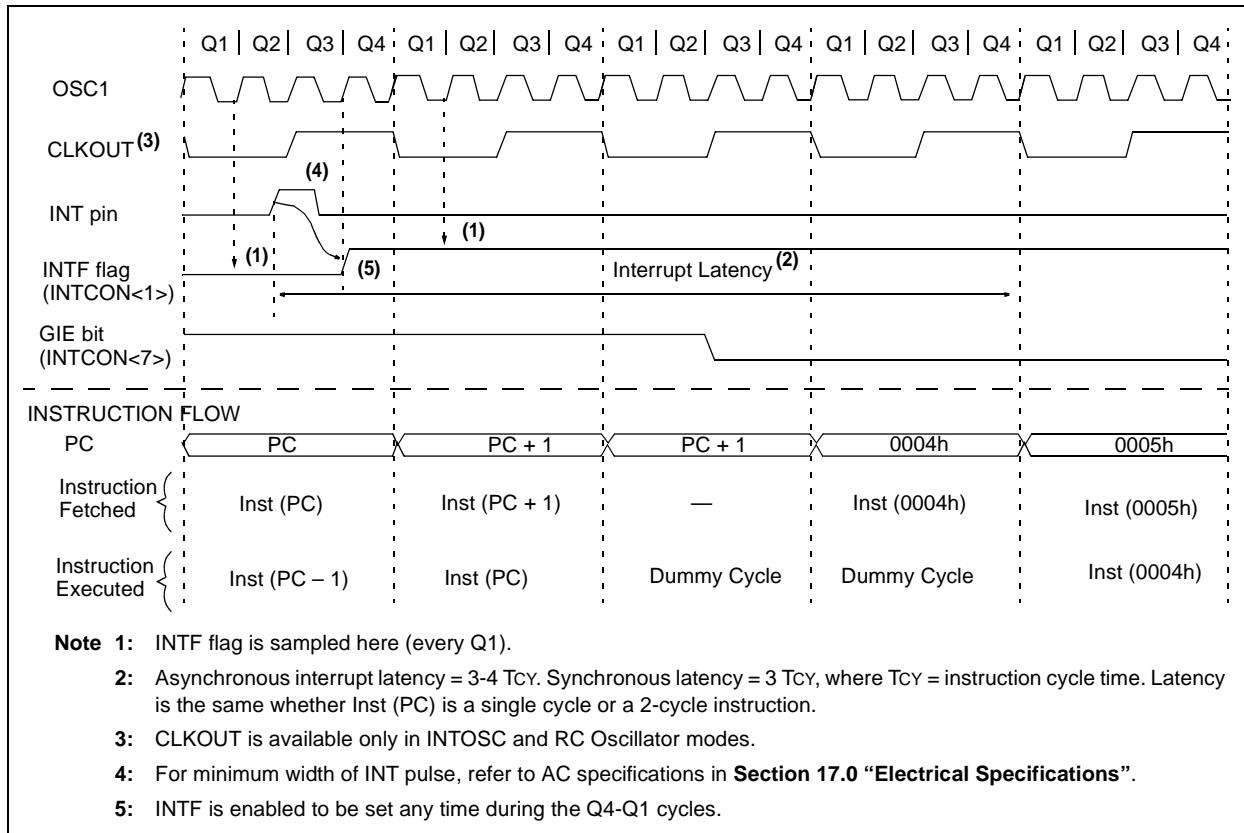


TABLE 14-6: SUMMARY OF INTERRUPT REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TOIE	INTE	RABIE	TOIF	INTF	RABIF	0000 000x	0000 000x
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	-000 0000
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as ‘0’, q = value depends upon condition.

Shaded cells are not used by the Interrupt module.

14.4 Context Saving During Interrupts

During an interrupt, only the return PC value is saved on the stack. Typically, users may wish to save key registers during an interrupt (e.g., W and STATUS registers). This must be implemented in software.

Since the upper 16 bytes of all GPR banks are common in the PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 (see Figures 2-2 and 2-3), temporary holding registers, W_TEMP and STATUS_TEMP, should be placed in here. These 16 locations do not require banking and therefore, make it easier to context save and restore. The same code shown in Example 14-1 can be used to:

- Store the W register
- Store the STATUS register
- Execute the ISR code
- Restore the Status (and Bank Select Bit register)
- Restore the W register

Note: The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 normally does not require saving the PCLATH. However, if computed GOTO's are used in the ISR and the main code, the PCLATH must be saved and restored in the ISR.

EXAMPLE 14-1: SAVING STATUS AND W REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF  W_TEMP           ;Copy W to TEMP register
SWAPPF STATUS,W          ;Swap status to be saved into W
CLRF   STATUS             ;bank 0, regardless of current bank, Clears IRP,RP1,RP0
MOVWF  STATUS_TEMP        ;Save status to bank zero STATUS_TEMP register
:
:(ISR)                   ;Insert user code here
:
SWAPPF STATUS_TEMP,W    ;Swap STATUS_TEMP register into W
                        ;(sets bank to original state)
MOVWF  STATUS             ;Move W into STATUS register
SWAPPF W_TEMP,F           ;Swap W_TEMP
SWAPPF W_TEMP,W           ;Swap W_TEMP into W
```

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

14.5 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

The WDT has the following features:

- Operates from the LFINTOSC (31 kHz)
- Contains a 16-bit prescaler
- Shares an 8-bit prescaler with Timer0
- Time-out period is from 1 ms to 268 seconds
- Configuration bit and software controlled

WDT is cleared under certain conditions described in Table 14-7.

14.5.1 WDT OSCILLATOR

The WDT derives its time base from the 31 kHz LFINTOSC. The LTS bit of the OSCCON register does not reflect that the LFINTOSC is enabled.

The value of WDTCON is '--- 0 1000' on all Resets. This gives a nominal time base of 17 ms.

Note: When the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is invoked, the WDT is held in Reset, because the WDT Ripple Counter is used by the OST to perform the oscillator delay count. When the OST count has expired, the WDT will begin counting (if enabled).

14.5.2 WDT CONTROL

The WDTE bit is located in the Configuration Word register. When set, the WDT runs continuously.

When the WDTE bit in the Configuration Word register is set, the SWDTEN bit of the WDTCON register has no effect. If WDTE is clear, then the SWDTEN bit can be used to enable and disable the WDT. Setting the bit will enable it and clearing the bit will disable it.

The PSA and PS<2:0> bits of the OPTION register have the same function as in previous versions of the PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 Family of microcontrollers. See **Section 5.0 “Timer0 Module”** for more information.

FIGURE 14-9: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM

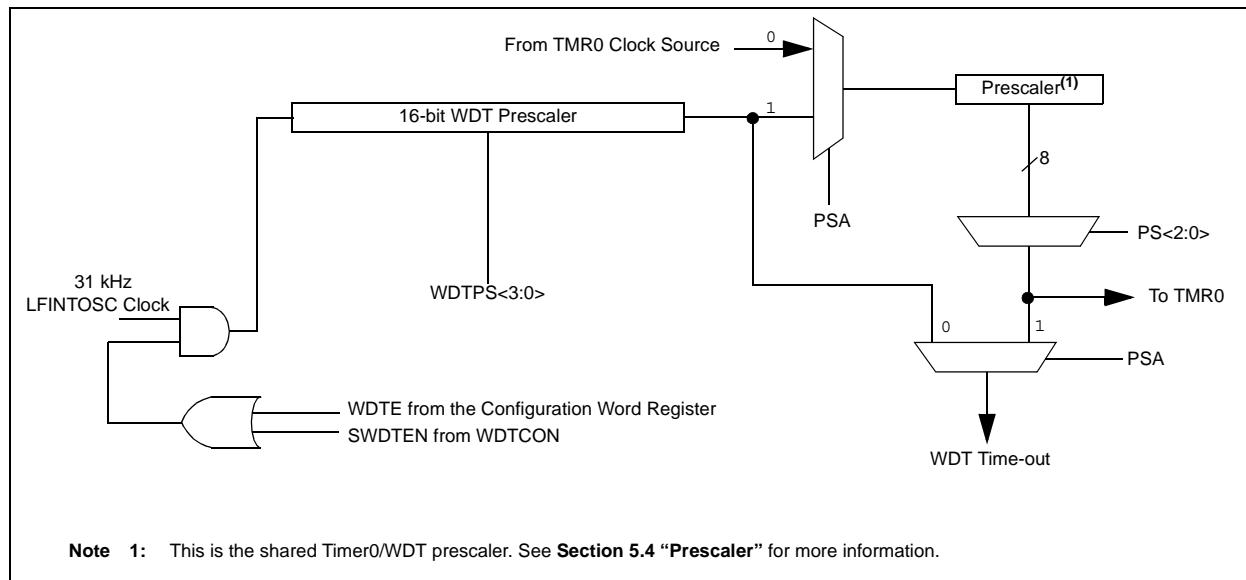


TABLE 14-7: WDT STATUS

Conditions	WDT
WDTE = 0	Cleared
CLRWDT Command	
Oscillator Fail Detected	
Exit Sleep + System Clock = T1OSC, EXTRC, INTOSC, EXTCLK	
Exit Sleep + System Clock = XT, HS, LP	Cleared until the end of OST

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

REGISTER 14-2: WDTCON: WATCHDOG TIMER CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN ⁽¹⁾
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-1 **WDTPS<3:0>:** Watchdog Timer Period Select bits

Bit Value = Prescale Rate

0000 = 1:32

0001 = 1:64

0010 = 1:128

0011 = 1:256

0100 = 1:512 (Reset value)

0101 = 1:1024

0110 = 1:2048

0111 = 1:4096

1000 = 1:8192

1001 = 1:16384

1010 = 1:32768

1011 = 1:65536

1100 = reserved

1101 = reserved

1110 = reserved

1111 = reserved

bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Enable or Disable the Watchdog Timer bit⁽¹⁾

1 = WDT is turned on

0 = WDT is turned off (Reset value)

Note 1: If WDTE Configuration bit = 1, then WDT is always enabled, irrespective of this control bit. If WDTE Configuration bit = 0, then it is possible to turn WDT on/off with this control bit.

TABLE 14-8: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
CONFIG ⁽¹⁾	CPD	CP	MCLRE	PWRTE	WDTE	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	—	—
OPTION_REG	RABPU	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
WDTCON	—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WSTPS1	WDTPS0	SWDTEN	---0 1000	---0 1000

Legend: Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

Note 1: See Register 14-1 for operation of all Configuration Word register bits.

14.6 Power-Down Mode (Sleep)

The Power-down mode is entered by executing a `SLEEP` instruction.

If the Watchdog Timer is enabled:

- WDT will be cleared but keeps running.
- `PD` bit in the STATUS register is cleared.
- `TO` bit is set.
- Oscillator driver is turned off.
- I/O ports maintain the status they had before `SLEEP` was executed (driving high, low or high-impedance).

For lowest current consumption in this mode, all I/O pins should be either at VDD or Vss, with no external circuitry drawing current from the I/O pin and the comparators and CVREF should be disabled. I/O pins that are high-impedance inputs should be pulled high or low externally to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs. The T0CKI input should also be at VDD or Vss for lowest current consumption. The contribution from on-chip pull-ups on PORTA should be considered.

The `MCLR` pin must be at a logic high level.

Note: It should be noted that a Reset generated by a WDT time-out does not drive `MCLR` pin low.

14.6.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from Sleep through one of the following events:

1. External Reset input on `MCLR` pin.
2. Watchdog Timer Wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from RA2/INT pin, PORTA change or a peripheral interrupt.

The first event will cause a device Reset. The two latter events are considered a continuation of program execution. The `TO` and `PD` bits in the STATUS register can be used to determine the cause of device Reset. The `PD` bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when Sleep is invoked. `TO` bit is cleared if WDT Wake-up occurred.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from Sleep:

1. TMR1 interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
2. CCP Capture mode interrupt.
3. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is FRC).
4. EEPROM write operation completion.
5. Comparator output changes state.
6. Interrupt-on-change.
7. External Interrupt from INT pin.
8. EUSART Break detect, I²C slave.

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts since during Sleep, no on-chip clocks are present.

When the `SLEEP` instruction is being executed, the next instruction (`PC + 1`) is prefetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be set (enabled). Wake-up occurs regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is clear (disabled), the device continues execution at the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction. If the GIE bit is set (enabled), the device executes the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction, then branches to the interrupt address (0004h). In cases where the execution of the instruction following `SLEEP` is not desirable, the user should have a NOP after the `SLEEP` instruction.

Note: If the global interrupts are disabled (GIE is cleared), but any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and the corresponding interrupt flag bits set, the device will immediately wake-up from Sleep. The `SLEEP` instruction is completely executed.

The WDT is cleared when the device wakes up from Sleep, regardless of the source of wake-up.

14.6.2 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

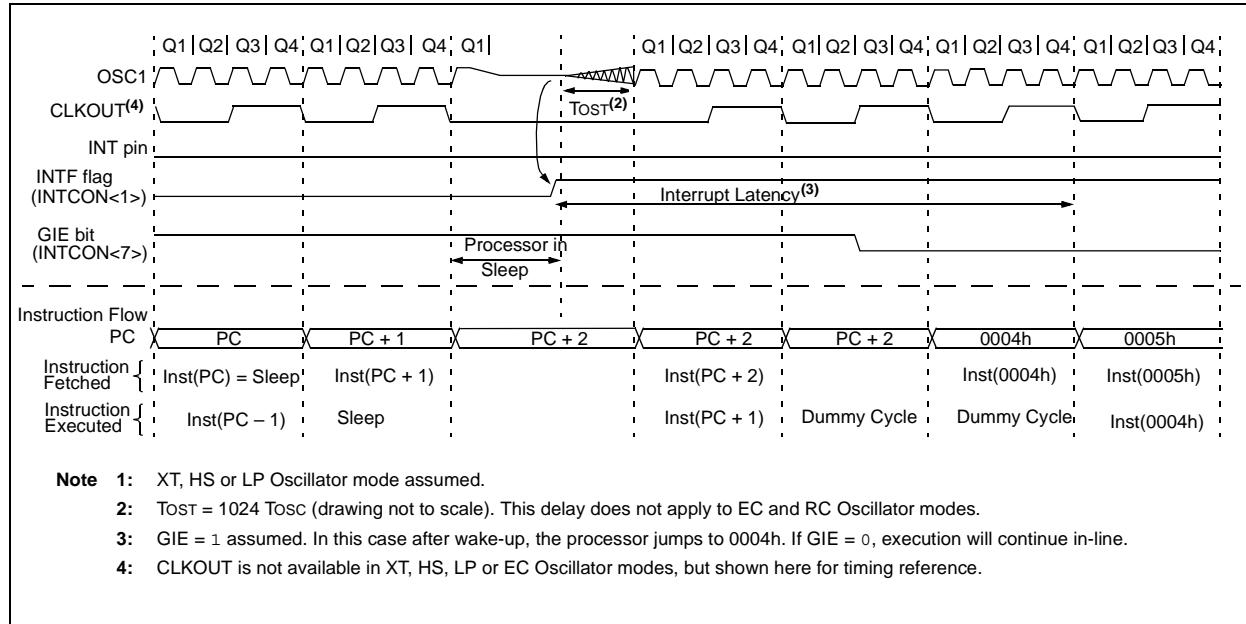
When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

- If the interrupt occurs **before** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction, the `SLEEP` instruction will complete as a NOP. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will not be cleared, the `TO` bit will not be set and the `PD` bit will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt occurs **during or after** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction, the device will immediately wake-up from Sleep. The `SLEEP` instruction will be completely executed before the wake-up. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will be cleared, the `TO` bit will be set and the `PD` bit will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a `SLEEP` instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the `SLEEP` instruction completes. To determine whether a `SLEEP` instruction executed, test the `PD` bit. If the `PD` bit is set, the `SLEEP` instruction was executed as a NOP.

To ensure that the WDT is cleared, a `CLRWDT` instruction should be executed before a `SLEEP` instruction.

FIGURE 14-10: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT



14.7 Code Protection

If the code protection bit(s) have not been programmed, the on-chip program memory can be read out using ICSP™ for verification purposes.

Note: The entire data EEPROM and Flash program memory will be erased when the code protection is switched from on to off. See the “PIC12F6XX/16F6XX Memory Programming Specification” (DS41204) for more information.

14.8 ID Locations

Four memory locations (2000h-2003h) are designated as ID locations where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are not accessible during normal execution but are readable and writable during Program/Verify mode. Only the Least Significant 7 bits of the ID locations are used.

14.9 In-Circuit Serial Programming

The PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data and three other lines for:

- power
- ground
- programming voltage

This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

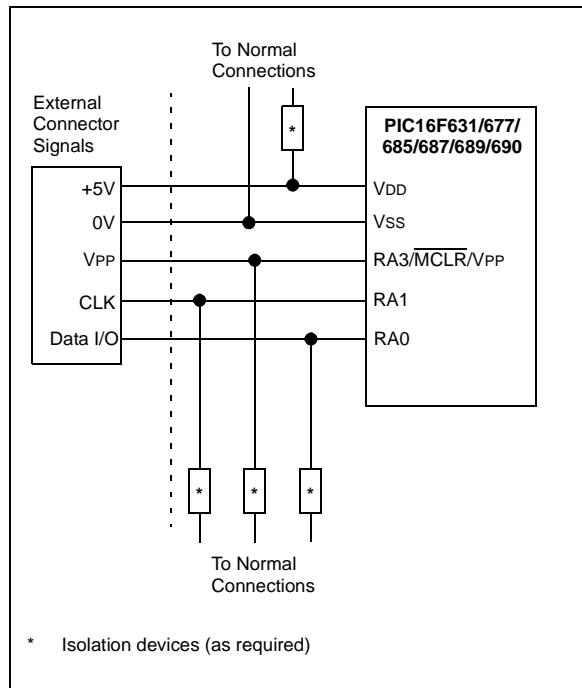
The device is placed into a Program/Verify mode by holding the RA0/AN0/C1IN+/ICSPDAT/ULPWU and RA1/AN1/C12IN-/VREF/ICSPCLK pins low, while raising the MCLR (VPP) pin from VIL to VIH. See the “PIC12F6XX/16F6XX Memory Programming Specification” (DS41204) for more information. RA0 becomes the programming data and RA1 becomes the programming clock. Both RA0 and RA1 are Schmitt Trigger inputs in this mode.

After Reset, to place the device into Program/Verify mode, the Program Counter (PC) is at location 00h. A 6-bit command is then supplied to the device. Depending on the command, 14 bits of program data are then supplied to or from the device, depending on whether the command was a load or a read. For complete details of serial programming, please refer to the “PIC12F6XX/16F6XX Memory Programming Specification” (DS41204).

A typical In-Circuit Serial Programming connection is shown in Figure 14-11.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

**FIGURE 14-11: TYPICAL IN-CIRCUIT
SERIAL PROGRAMMING
CONNECTION**



15.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC16F690 instruction set is highly orthogonal and is comprised of three basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
 - **Bit-oriented** operations
 - **Literal and control** operations

Each PIC16 instruction is a 14-bit word divided into an **opcode**, which specifies the instruction type and one or more **operands**, which further specify the operation of the instruction. The formats for each of the categories is presented in Figure 15-1, while the various opcode fields are summarized in Table 15-1.

Table 15-2 lists the instructions recognized by the MPASM™ assembler.

For **byte-oriented** instructions, 'f' represents a file register designator and 'd' represents a destination designator. The file register designator specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction.

The destination designator specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

For **bit-oriented** instructions, 'b' represents a bit field designator, which selects the bit affected by the operation, while 'f' represents the address of the file in which the bit is located.

For **literal** and **control** operations, 'k' represents an 8-bit or 11-bit constant, or literal value.

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods; for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, this gives a normal instruction execution time of 1 µs. All instructions are executed within a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true, or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction. When this occurs, the execution takes two instruction cycles, with the second cycle executed as a NOP.

All instruction examples use the format '0xhh' to represent a hexadecimal number, where 'h' signifies a hexadecimal digit.

15.1 Read-Modify-Write Operations

Any instruction that specifies a file register as part of the instruction performs a Read-Modify-Write (RMW) operation. The register is read, the data is modified, and the result is stored according to either the instruction, or the destination designator 'd'. A read operation is performed on a register even if the instruction writes to that register.

For example, a CLRF PORTA instruction will read PORTA, clear all the data bits, then write the result back to PORTA. This example would have the unintended consequence of clearing the condition that set the RAIF flag.

TABLE 15-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
f	Register file address (0x00 to 0x7F)
W	Working register (accumulator)
b	Bit address within an 8-bit file register
k	Literal field, constant data or label
x	Don't care location (= 0 or 1). The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
d	Destination select; d = 0: store result in W, d = 1: store result in file register f. Default is d = 1.
PC	Program Counter
TO	Time-out bit
C	Carry bit
DC	Digit carry bit
Z	Zero bit
PD	Power-down bit

FIGURE 15-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

Byte-oriented file register operations											
13	8	7	6				0				
OPCODE			d	f (FILE #)							
d = 0 for destination W											
d = 1 for destination f											
f = 7-bit file register address											
Bit-oriented file register operations											
13	10	9	7	6			0				
OPCODE			b (BIT #)	f (FILE #)							
b = 3-bit bit address											
f = 7-bit file register address											
Literal and control operations											
General											
13	8	7					0				
OPCODE			k (literal)								
k = 8-bit immediate value											
CALL and GOTO instructions only											
13	11	10					0				
OPCODE			k (literal)								
k = 11-bit immediate value											

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 15-2: PIC16F684 INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands	Description	Cycles	14-Bit Opcode				Status Affected	Notes	
			MSb		Lsb				
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f, d	Add W and f	1	00	0111	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z 1, 2	
ANDWF	f, d	AND W with f	1	00	0101	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
CLRF	f	Clear f	1	00	0001	1fff	ffff	Z 2	
CLRW	-	Clear W	1	00	0001	0xxx	xxxx	Z	
COMF	f, d	Complement f	1	00	1001	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
DECFSZ	f, d	Decrement f	1	00	0011	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
DECF	f, d	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1011	dfff	ffff	1, 2, 3	
INCF	f, d	Increment f	1	00	1010	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
INCFSZ	f, d	Increment f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1111	dfff	ffff	1, 2, 3	
IORWF	f, d	Inclusive OR W with f	1	00	0100	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
MOVF	f, d	Move f	1	00	1000	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
MOVWF	f	Move W to f	1	00	0000	1fff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
NOP	-	No Operation	1	00	0000	0xx0	0000		
RLF	f, d	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	00	1101	dfff	ffff	C 1, 2	
RRF	f, d	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	00	1100	dfff	ffff	C 1, 2	
SUBWF	f, d	Subtract W from f	1	00	0010	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z 1, 2	
SWAPF	f, d	Swap nibbles in f	1	00	1110	dfff	ffff	1, 2	
XORWF	f, d	Exclusive OR W with f	1	00	0110	dfff	ffff	Z 1, 2	
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b	Bit Clear f	1	01	00bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
BSF	f, b	Bit Set f	1	01	01bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
BTFSZ	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2)	01	10bb	bfff	ffff		3
BTFSZ	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2)	01	11bb	bfff	ffff		3
LITERAL AND CONTROL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and W	1	11	111x	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with W	1	11	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
CALL	k	Call Subroutine	2	10	0kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWD	-	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	00	0000	0110	0100	TO, PD	
GOTO	k	Go to address	2	10	1kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1000	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
MOVLW	k	Move literal to W	1	11	00xx	kkkk	kkkk		
RETFIE	-	Return from interrupt	2	00	0000	0000	1001		
RETLW	k	Return with literal in W	2	11	01xx	kkkk	kkkk		
RETURN	-	Return from Subroutine	2	00	0000	0000	1000		
SLEEP	-	Go into Standby mode	1	00	0000	0110	0011	TO, PD	
SUBLW	k	Subtract w from literal	1	11	110x	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z	

- Note 1:** When an I/O register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., MOVF GPIO, 1), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.
- 2:** If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned to the Timer0 module.
- 3:** If the Program Counter (PC) is modified, or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a NOP.

15.2 Instruction Descriptions

ADDLW	Add literal and W	BCF	Bit Clear f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] ADDLW k	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] BCF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255	Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	(W) + k → (W)	Operation:	0 → (f)
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z	Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of the W register are added to the eight-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in the W register.	Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared.
ADDWF	Add W and f	BSF	Bit Set f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] ADDWF f,d	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] BSF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]	Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	(W) + (f) → (destination)	Operation:	1 → (f)
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z	Status Affected:	None
Description:	Add the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.	Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set.
ANDLW	AND literal with W	BTFSC	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] ANDLW k	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] BTFSC f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255	Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	(W) .AND. (k) → (W)	Operation:	skip if (f) = 0
Status Affected:	Z	Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of W register are AND'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.	Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '1', the next instruction is executed. If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '0', the next instruction is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction.
ANDWF	AND W with f		
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] ANDWF f,d		
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]		
Operation:	(W) .AND. (f) → (destination)		
Status Affected:	Z		
Description:	AND the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.		

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

BTFSS	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	CLRWDT	Clear Watchdog Timer
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] BTFSS f,b	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] CLRWDT
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $0 \leq b < 7$	Operands:	None
Operation:	skip if $(f < b) = 1$	Operation:	$00h \rightarrow WDT$ $0 \rightarrow WDT$ prescaler, $1 \rightarrow \overline{TO}$ $1 \rightarrow \overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	None	Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}, \overline{PD}$
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '0', the next instruction is executed. If bit 'b' is '1', then the next instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction.	Description:	CLRWDT instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the prescaler of the WDT. Status bits \overline{TO} and \overline{PD} are set.
CALL	Call Subroutine	COMF	Complement f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] CALL k	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] COMF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 2047$	Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(PC)+1 \rightarrow TOS,$ $k \rightarrow PC<10:0>$, $(PCLATH<4:3>) \rightarrow PC<12:11>$	Operation:	$(\bar{f}) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$
Status Affected:	None	Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Call Subroutine. First, return address ($PC + 1$) is pushed onto the stack. The eleven-bit immediate address is loaded into PC bits $<10:0>$. The upper bits of the PC are loaded from PCLATH. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.	Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.
CLRF	Clear f	DECf	Decrement f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] CLRF f	Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] DECf f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$	Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$00h \rightarrow (f)$ $1 \rightarrow Z$	Operation:	$(f) - 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination})$
Status Affected:	Z	Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are cleared and the Z bit is set.	Description:	Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.
CLRW	Clear W		
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] CLRW		
Operands:	None		
Operation:	$00h \rightarrow (W)$ $1 \rightarrow Z$		
Status Affected:	Z		
Description:	W register is cleared. Zero bit (Z) is set.		

DECFSZ	Decrement f, Skip if 0
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] DECFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) - 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination})$ skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'. If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', then a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction.

INCFSZ	Increment f, Skip if 0
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] INCFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) + 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination})$ skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'. If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction.

GOTO	Unconditional Branch
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] GOTO k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 2047$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow \text{PC}_{<10:0>}$ $\text{PCLATH}_{<4:3>} \rightarrow \text{PC}_{<12:11>}$
Status Affected:	None
Description:	GOTO is an unconditional branch. The eleven-bit immediate value is loaded into PC bits <10:0>. The upper bits of PC are loaded from PCLATH<4:3>. GOTO is a two-cycle instruction.

IORLW	Inclusive OR literal with W
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 255$
Operation:	$(W) .\text{OR. } k \rightarrow (W)$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are OR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

INCF	Increment f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] INCF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) + 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination})$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

IORWF	Inclusive OR W with f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] IORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) .\text{OR. } (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Inclusive OR the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

MOVF	Move f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] MOVF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) \rightarrow (\text{dest})$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' is moved to a destination dependent upon the status of 'd'. If $d = 0$, destination is W register. If $d = 1$, the destination is file register 'f' itself. $d = 1$ is useful to test a file register since status flag Z is affected.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	MOVF FSR, 0
After Instruction	
W = value in FSR register Z = 1	

MOVWF	Move W to f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] MOVWF f
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$
Operation:	$(W) \rightarrow (f)$
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Move data from W register to register 'f'.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	MOVW OPTION F
Before Instruction	
OPTION = 0xFF W = 0x4F	
After Instruction	
OPTION = 0x4F W = 0x4F	

MOVLW	Move literal to W
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] MOVLW k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 255$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow (W)$
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W register. The "don't cares" will assemble as '0's.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	MOVLW 0x5A
After Instruction	
W = 0x5A	

NOP	No Operation
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Description:	No operation.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	NOP

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

RETFIE	Return from Interrupt
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] RETFIE
Operands:	None
Operation:	TOS → PC, 1 → GIE
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Return from Interrupt. Stack is POPed and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded in the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). This is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2
<u>Example:</u>	<pre>RETFIE After Interrupt PC = TOS GIE = 1</pre>

RETLW	Return with literal in W
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] RETLW <i>k</i>
Operands:	0 ≤ <i>k</i> ≤ 255
Operation:	<i>k</i> → (W); TOS → PC
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The W register is loaded with the eight-bit literal ' <i>k</i> '. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). This is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2
<u>Example:</u>	<pre>CALL TABLE;W contains table ;offset value • ;W now has • ;table value • • ADDWF PC ;W = offset RETLW k1 ;Begin table RETLW k2 ; • • RETLW kn ;End of table</pre>

Before Instruction
 W = 0x07
 After Instruction
 W = value of k8

RETURN	Return from Subroutine
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] RETURN
Operands:	None
Operation:	TOS → PC
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Return from subroutine. The stack is POPed and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. This is a two-cycle instruction.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

RLF	Rotate Left f through Carry
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] RLF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	See description below
Status Affected:	C
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.
	

Words: 1
Cycles: 1
Example: RLF REG1, 0

Before Instruction

REG1	=	1110 0110
C	=	0

After Instruction

REG1	=	1110 0110
W	=	1100 1100
C	=	1

RRF	Rotate Right f through Carry
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] RRF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	See description below
Status Affected:	C
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.
	

SLEEP	Enter Sleep mode
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] SLEEP
Operands:	None
Operation:	$00h \rightarrow \text{WDT}$, $0 \rightarrow \text{WDT prescaler}$, $1 \rightarrow \overline{\text{TO}}$, $0 \rightarrow \overline{\text{PD}}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{\text{TO}}, \overline{\text{PD}}$
Description:	The power-down Status bit, $\overline{\text{PD}}$ is cleared. Time-out Status bit, $\overline{\text{TO}}$ is set. Watchdog Timer and its prescaler are cleared. The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.

SUBLW	Subtract W from literal
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] SUBLW k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 255$
Operation:	$k - (W) \rightarrow (W)$
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	The W register is subtracted (2's complement method) from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

C = 0	W > k
C = 1	W ≤ k
DC = 0	W<3:0> > k<3:0>
DC = 1	W<3:0> ≤ k<3:0>

SUBWF	Subtract W from f								
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] SUBWF f,d								
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$								
Operation:	$(f) - (W) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$								
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z								
Description:	Subtract (2's complement method) W register from register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.								
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">C = 0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">W > f</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">C = 1</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">W ≤ f</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">DC = 0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">W<3:0> > f<3:0></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">DC = 1</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">W<3:0> ≤ f<3:0></td> </tr> </table>		C = 0	W > f	C = 1	W ≤ f	DC = 0	W<3:0> > f<3:0>	DC = 1	W<3:0> ≤ f<3:0>
C = 0	W > f								
C = 1	W ≤ f								
DC = 0	W<3:0> > f<3:0>								
DC = 1	W<3:0> ≤ f<3:0>								

XORLW	Exclusive OR literal with W
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] XORLW k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 255$
Operation:	$(W) .XOR. k \rightarrow (W)$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are XOR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

SWAPF	Swap Nibbles in f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] SWAPF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f<3:0>) \rightarrow (\text{destination}<7:4>),$ $(f<7:4>) \rightarrow (\text{destination}<3:0>)$
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in register 'f'.

XORWF	Exclusive OR W with f
Syntax:	[<i>label</i>] XORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) .XOR. (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

16.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
 - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
 - MPASM™ Assembler
 - MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers
 - MPLINK™ Object Linker/
MPLIB™ Object Librarian
 - MPLAB ASM30 Assembler/Linker/Library
- Simulators
 - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
 - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
 - MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
 - MPLAB ICD 2
- Device Programmers
 - PICSTART® Plus Development Programmer
 - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
 - PICkit™ 2 Development Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration and Development Boards and Evaluation Kits

16.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® operating system-based application that contains:

- A single graphical interface to all debugging tools
 - Simulator
 - Programmer (sold separately)
 - Emulator (sold separately)
 - In-Circuit Debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color-coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Visual device initializer for easy register initialization
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Drag and drop variables from source to watch windows
- Extensive on-line help
- Integration of select third party tools, such as HI-TECH Software C Compilers and IAR C Compilers

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or C)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro MCU emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
 - Source files (assembly or C)
 - Mixed assembly and C
 - Machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost-effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increased flexibility and power.

16.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM Assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCUs.

The MPASM Assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK Object Linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM Assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

16.3 MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers

The MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC18 family of microcontrollers and the dsPIC30, dsPIC33 and PIC24 family of digital signal controllers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

16.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK Object Linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM Assembler and the MPLAB C18 C Compiler. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB Object Librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

16.5 MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker and Librarian

MPLAB ASM30 Assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for dsPIC30F devices. MPLAB C30 C Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire dsPIC30F instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

16.6 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a comprehensive stimulus controller. Registers can be logged to files for further run-time analysis. The trace buffer and logic analyzer display extend the power of the simulator to record and track program execution, actions on I/O, most peripherals and internal registers.

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers, and the MPASM and MPLAB ASM30 Assemblers. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the hardware laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

16.7 MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is advanced by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The architecture of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows® 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

16.8 MPLAB ICE 4000 High-Performance In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for high-end PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 is a premium emulator system, providing the features of MPLAB ICE 2000, but with increased emulation memory and high-speed performance for dsPIC30F and PIC18XXXX devices. Its advanced emulator features include complex triggering and timing, and up to 2 Mb of emulation memory.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

16.9 MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD 2, is a powerful, low-cost, run-time development tool, connecting to the host PC via an RS-232 or high-speed USB interface. This tool is based on the Flash PICmicro MCUs and can be used to develop for these and other PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs. The MPLAB ICD 2 utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the Flash devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) protocol, offers cost-effective, in-circuit Flash debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by setting breakpoints, single stepping and watching variables, and CPU status and peripheral registers. Running at full speed enables testing hardware and applications in real time. MPLAB ICD 2 also serves as a development programmer for selected PICmicro devices.

16.10 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at VDDMIN and VDDMAX for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages and a modular, detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP™ cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer can read, verify and program PICmicro devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. The MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. The MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices and incorporates an SD/MMC card for file storage and secure data applications.

16.11 PICSTART Plus Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is an easy-to-use, low-cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer supports most PICmicro devices in DIP packages up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is CE compliant.

16.12 PICkit 2 Development Programmer

The PICkit™ 2 Development Programmer is a low-cost programmer with an easy-to-use interface for programming many of Microchip's baseline, mid-range and PIC18F families of Flash memory microcontrollers. The PICkit 2 Starter Kit includes a prototyping development board, twelve sequential lessons, software and HI-TECH's PICC™ Lite C compiler, and is designed to help get up to speed quickly using PIC® microcontrollers. The kit provides everything needed to program, evaluate and develop applications using Microchip's powerful, mid-range Flash memory family of microcontrollers.

16.13 Demonstration, Development and Evaluation Boards

A wide variety of demonstration, development and evaluation boards for various PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs allows quick application development on fully functional systems. Most boards include prototyping areas for adding custom circuitry and provide application firmware and source code for examination and modification.

The boards support a variety of features, including LEDs, temperature sensors, switches, speakers, RS-232 interfaces, LCD displays, potentiometers and additional EEPROM memory.

The demonstration and development boards can be used in teaching environments, for prototyping custom circuits and for learning about various microcontroller applications.

In addition to the PICDEM™ and dsPICDEM™ demonstration/development board series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for analog filter design, KEELOQ® security ICs, CAN, IrDA®, PowerSmart® battery management, SEEVAL® evaluation system, Sigma-Delta ADC, flow rate sensing, plus many more.

Check the Microchip web page (www.microchip.com) and the latest "Product Selector Guide" (DS00148) for the complete list of demonstration, development and evaluation kits.

17.0 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Absolute Maximum Ratings^(†)

Ambient temperature under bias	-40° to +125°C
Storage temperature	-65°C to +150°C
Voltage on VDD with respect to Vss	-0.3V to +6.5V
Voltage on MCLR with respect to Vss	-0.3V to +13.5V
Voltage on all other pins with respect to Vss	-0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V)
Total power dissipation ⁽¹⁾	800 mW
Maximum current out of VSS pin	300 mA
Maximum current into VDD pin	250 mA
Input clamp current, I _{IK} (V _I < 0 or V _I > V _{DD}).....	± 20 mA
Output clamp current, I _{OK} (V _O < 0 or V _O > V _{DD}).....	± 20 mA
Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin.....	25 mA
Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin	25 mA
Maximum current sunk by PORTA, PORTB and PORTC (combined)	200 mA
Maximum current sourced PORTA, PORTB and PORTC (combined).....	200 mA

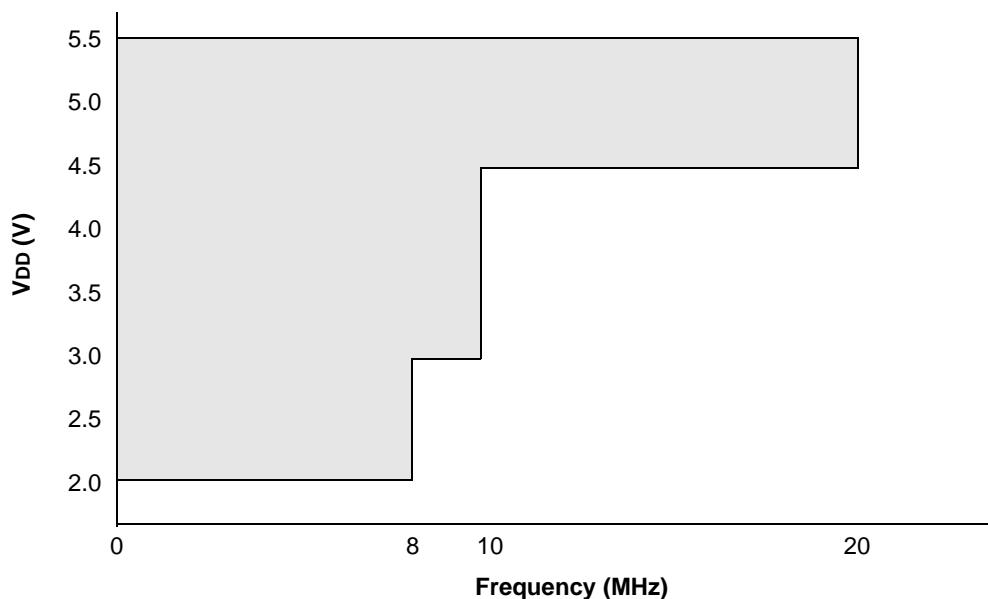
Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows: P_{DIS} = V_{DD} x {I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}} + \sum {(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) x I_{OH}} + \sum (V_{OL} x I_{OL}).

† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

Note: Voltage spikes below V_{SS} at the MCLR pin, inducing currents greater than 80 mA, may cause latch-up. Thus, a series resistor of 50-100 Ω should be used when applying a "low" level to the MCLR pin, rather than pulling this pin directly to V_{SS}.

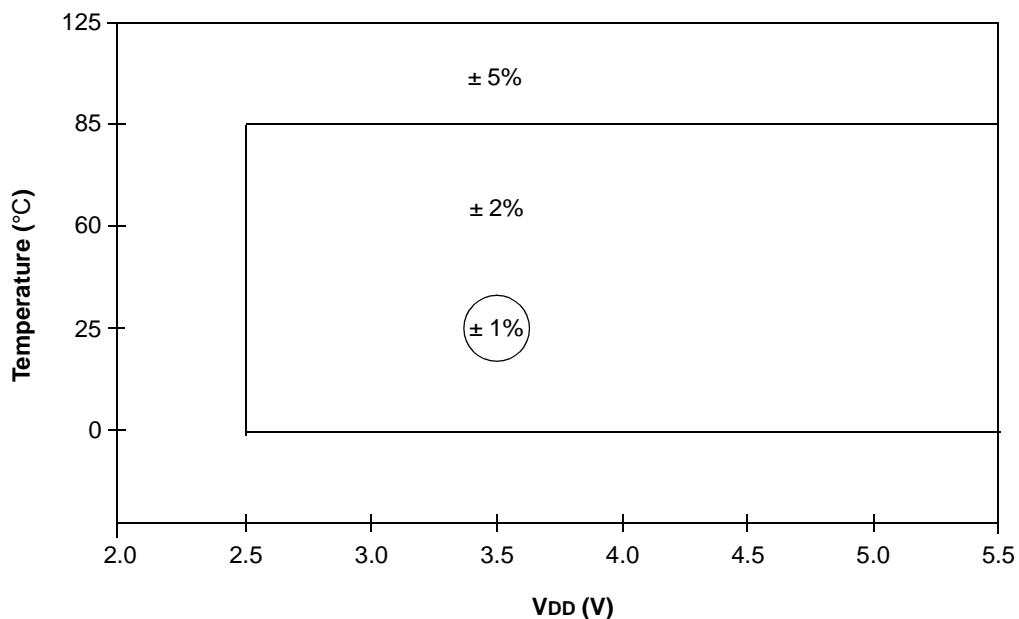
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-1: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH,
 $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$



Note 1: The shaded region indicates the permissible combinations of voltage and frequency.

FIGURE 17-2: HFINTOSC FREQUENCY ACCURACY OVER DEVICE V_{DD} AND TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.1 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-I (Industrial) PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-E (Extended)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for industrial $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for extended				
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
D001	VDD	Supply Voltage	2.0	—	5.5	V	Fosc $\leq 8\text{ MHz}$: HFINTOSC, EC
			2.0	—	5.5	V	Fosc $\leq 4\text{ MHz}$
			3.0	—	5.5	V	Fosc $\leq 10\text{ MHz}$
			4.5	—	5.5	V	Fosc $\leq 20\text{ MHz}$
D002*	VDR	RAM Data Retention Voltage⁽¹⁾	1.5	—	—	V	Device in Sleep mode
D003	VPOR	VDD Start Voltage to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	—	Vss	—	V	See Section 14.2.1 “Power-on Reset (POR)” for details.
D004*	SVDD	VDD Rise Rate to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See Section 14.2.1 “Power-on Reset (POR)” for details.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in Sleep mode without losing RAM data.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-I (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)					
Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions	
						V _{DD}	Note
D010	Supply Current (IDD) ^(1, 2)	—	9	TBD	µA	2.0	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode
		—	18	TBD	µA	3.0	
		—	35	TBD	µA	5.0	
D011*		—	140	240	µA	2.0	FOSC = 1 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	220	380	µA	3.0	
		—	380	550	µA	5.0	
D012		—	260	360	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	420	650	µA	3.0	
		—	0.8	1.1	mA	5.0	
D013*		—	130	220	µA	2.0	FOSC = 1 MHz EC Oscillator mode
		—	215	360	µA	3.0	
		—	360	520	µA	5.0	
D014		—	220	340	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz EC Oscillator mode
		—	375	550	µA	3.0	
		—	0.65	1.0	mA	5.0	
D015		—	8	20	µA	2.0	FOSC = 31 kHz LFINTOSC mode
		—	16	40	µA	3.0	
		—	31	65	µA	5.0	
D016*		—	340	450	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	500	700	µA	3.0	
		—	0.8	1.2	mA	5.0	
D017		—	410	650	µA	2.0	FOSC = 8 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	700	950	µA	3.0	
		—	1.30	1.65	mA	5.0	
D018		—	230	400	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz EXTRC mode ⁽³⁾
		—	400	680	µA	3.0	
		—	0.63	1.1	mA	5.0	
D019		—	2.6	3.25	mA	4.5	FOSC = 20 MHz HS Oscillator mode
		—	2.8	3.35	mA	5.0	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The test conditions for all IDD measurements in Active Operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to V_{DD}; MCLR = V_{DD}; WDT disabled.
- 2:** The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
- 3:** For RC oscillator configurations, current through R_{EXT} is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula $I_R = V_{DD}/2R_{EXT}$ (mA) with R_{EXT} in kΩ.
- 4:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 5:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to V_{DD}.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-I (Industrial) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions	
						VDD	Note
D020	Power-down Base Current($I_{PD}^{(2)}$)	—	0.15	1.2	μA	2.0	WDT, BOR, Comparators, VREF and T1OSC disabled
		—	0.20	1.5	μA	3.0	
		—	0.35	1.8	μA	5.0	
		—	90	500	nA	3.0	
D021		—	1.0	2.2	μA	2.0	WDT Current ⁽¹⁾
		—	2.0	4.0	μA	3.0	
		—	3.0	7.0	μA	5.0	
D022		—	42	60	μA	3.0	BOR Current ⁽¹⁾
		—	85	122	μA	5.0	
D023		—	32	45	μA	2.0	Comparator Current ⁽¹⁾ , both comparators enabled
		—	60	78	μA	3.0	
		—	120	160	μA	5.0	
D024		—	30	36	μA	2.0	CVREF Current ⁽¹⁾ (high range)
		—	45	55	μA	3.0	
		—	75	95	μA	5.0	
D024a*		—	39	47	μA	2.0	CVREF Current ⁽¹⁾ (low range)
		—	59	72	μA	3.0	
		—	98	124	μA	5.0	
D025		—	4.0	TBD	μA	2.0	T1OSC Current
		—	4.6	TBD	μA	3.0	
		—	6.0	TBD	μA	5.0	
D026		—	0.30	1.6	μA	3.0	A/D Current ⁽¹⁾ , no conversion in progress
		—	0.36	1.9	μA	5.0	
D027		—	TBD	TBD	μA	3.0	VP6 Current
		—	TBD	TBD	μA	5.0	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The test conditions for all IDD measurements in Active Operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; MCLR = VDD; WDT disabled.
- 2:** The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
- 3:** For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula $IR = VDD/2REXT$ (mA) with REXT in kΩ.
- 4:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 5:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-E (Extended)

DC CHARACTERISTICS		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions	
						V _{DD}	Note
D010E	Supply Current (I _{DD}) ^(1, 2)	—	9	TBD	µA	2.0	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode
		—	18	TBD	µA	3.0	
		—	35	TBD	µA	5.0	
D011E*		—	140	240	µA	2.0	FOSC = 1 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	220	380	µA	3.0	
		—	380	550	µA	5.0	
D012E		—	260	360	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	420	650	µA	3.0	
		—	0.8	1.1	mA	5.0	
D013E*		—	130	220	µA	2.0	FOSC = 1 MHz EC Oscillator mode
		—	215	360	µA	3.0	
		—	360	520	µA	5.0	
D014E		—	220	340	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz EC Oscillator mode
		—	375	550	µA	3.0	
		—	0.65	1.0	mA	5.0	
D015E		—	8	20	µA	2.0	FOSC = 31 kHz LFINTOSC mode
		—	16	40	µA	3.0	
		—	31	65	µA	5.0	
D016E*		—	340	450	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	500	700	µA	3.0	
		—	0.8	1.2	mA	5.0	
D017E		—	410	650	µA	2.0	FOSC = 8 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	700	950	µA	3.0	
		—	1.30	1.65	mA	5.0	
D018E		—	230	400	µA	2.0	FOSC = 4 MHz EXTRC mode ⁽³⁾
		—	400	680	µA	3.0	
		—	0.63	1.1	mA	5.0	
D019E		—	2.6	3.25	mA	4.5	FOSC = 20 MHz HS Oscillator mode
		—	2.8	3.35	mA	5.0	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The test conditions for all I_{DD} measurements in Active Operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to V_{DD}; MCLR = V_{DD}; WDT disabled.
- 2:** The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
- 3:** For RC oscillator configurations, current through R_{EXT} is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula I_R = V_{DD}/2R_{EXT} (mA) with R_{EXT} in kΩ.
- 4:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base I_{DD} or I_{PD} and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base I_{DD} or I_{PD} current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 5:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to V_{DD}.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-E (Extended)

DC CHARACTERISTICS		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions	
						VDD	Note
D020E	Power-down Base Current(IPD)⁽²⁾	—	0.15	1.2	μA	2.0	WDT, BOR, Comparators, VREF and T1OSC disabled
		—	0.20	1.5	μA	3.0	
		—	0.35	1.8	μA	5.0	
		—	90	500	nA	3.0	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +25°C
D021E		—	1.0	2.2	μA	2.0	WDT Current ⁽¹⁾
		—	2.0	4.0	μA	3.0	
		—	3.0	7.0	μA	5.0	
D022E		—	42	60	μA	3.0	BOR Current ⁽¹⁾
		—	85	122	μA	5.0	
D023E		—	32	45	μA	2.0	Comparator Current ⁽¹⁾ , both comparators enabled
		—	60	78	μA	3.0	
		—	120	160	μA	5.0	
D024E		—	30	36	μA	2.0	CVREF Current ⁽¹⁾ (high range)
		—	45	55	μA	3.0	
		—	75	95	μA	5.0	
D024AE*		—	39	47	μA	2.0	CVREF Current ⁽¹⁾ (low range)
		—	59	72	μA	3.0	
		—	98	124	μA	5.0	
D025E		—	4.0	TBD	μA	2.0	T1OSC Current
		—	4.6	TBD	μA	3.0	
		—	6.0	TBD	μA	5.0	
D026E		—	0.30	1.6	μA	3.0	A/D Current ⁽¹⁾ , no conversion in progress
		—	0.36	1.9	μA	5.0	
D027E		—	TBD	TBD	μA	3.0	VP6 Current
		—	TBD	TBD	μA	5.0	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The test conditions for all IDD measurements in Active Operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; MCLR = VDD; WDT disabled.
- 2:** The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
- 3:** For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula $IR = VDD/2REXT$ (mA) with REXT in kΩ.
- 4:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 5:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-I (Industrial) PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-E (Extended)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)				
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
D030 D030A D031 D032 D033 D033A	VIL	Input Low Voltage I/O Port: with TTL buffer	Vss	—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	Vss	—	0.15 VDD	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 4.5V
		MCLR, OSC1 (RC mode) ⁽¹⁾	Vss	—	0.2 VDD	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		OSC1 (XT and LP modes)	Vss	—	0.2 VDD	V	
		OSC1 (HS mode)	Vss	—	0.3	V	
		OSC1 (RC mode)	Vss	—	0.3 VDD	V	
D040 D040A D041 D042 D043 D043A D043B	VIH	Input High Voltage I/O Ports: with TTL buffer	2.0	—	VDD	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.25 VDD + 0.8	—	VDD	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 4.5V
		MCLR	0.8 VDD	—	VDD	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		OSC1 (XT and LP modes)	1.6	—	VDD	V	
		OSC1 (HS mode)	0.7 VDD	—	VDD	V	
		OSC1 (RC mode)	0.9 VDD	—	VDD	V	(Note 1)
D060 D061 D063	IIL	Input Leakage Current⁽²⁾ I/O ports	—	± 0.1	± 1	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, Pin at high-impedance
		MCLR ⁽³⁾	—	± 0.1	± 5	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
		OSC1	—	± 0.1	± 5	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, XT, HS and LP oscillator configuration
D070*	IPUR	PORTA Weak Pull-up Current	50	250	400	µA	VDD = 5.0V, VPIN = VSS
D080	VOL	Output Low Voltage⁽⁵⁾ I/O ports	—	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V (Ind.)
D090	VOH	Output High Voltage⁽⁵⁾ I/O ports	VDD – 0.7	—	—	V	IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V (Ind.)

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.

2: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

3: The leakage current on the MCLR pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

4: See **Section 10.2.1 “Using the Data EEPROM”** for additional information.

5: Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-I (Industrial) PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690-E (Extended) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)				
			Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
D100	IULP	Ultra Low-Power Wake-up Current	—	200	—	nA	See Application Note AN879, "Using the Microchip Ultra Low-Power Wake-up Module" (DS00879)
D101*	COSC2	Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins OSC2 pin	—	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101A*	CIO	All I/O pins	—	—	50	pF	
Data EEPROM Memory							
D120	ED	Byte Endurance	100K	1M	—	E/W	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
D120A	ED	Byte Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	+85°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
D121	VDRW	VDD for Read/Write	VMIN	—	5.5	V	Using EECON1 to read/write VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D122	TDEW	Erase/Write Cycle Time	—	5	6	ms	
D123	TRTD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated
D124	TREF	Number of Total Erase/Write Cycles before Refresh ⁽⁴⁾	1M	10M	—	E/W	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
Program Flash Memory							
D130	EP	Cell Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
D130A	ED	Cell Endurance	1K	10K	—	E/W	+85°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
D131	VPR	VDD for Read	VMIN	—	5.5	V	VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D132	VPEW	VDD for Erase/Write	4.5	—	5.5	V	
D133	TPEW	Erase/Write cycle time	—	2	2.5	ms	
D134	TRTD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.
- 2:** Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.
- 3:** The leakage current on the MCLR pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.
- 4:** See **Section 10.2.1 "Using the Data EEPROM"** for additional information.
- 5:** Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.5 Thermal Considerations

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)					
Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$					
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Typ	Units	Conditions
TH01	θ_{JA}	Thermal Resistance Junction to Ambient	62.4	C/W	20-pin PDIP package
			85.2	C/W	20-pin SOIC package
			108.1	C/W	20-pin SSOP package
			40	C/W	20-pin QFN 4x4mm package
TH02	θ_{JC}	Thermal Resistance Junction to Case	28.1	C/W	20-pin PDIP package
			24.2	C/W	20-pin SOIC package
			32.2	C/W	20-pin SSOP package
			2.5	C/W	20-pin QFN 4x4mm package
TH03	T_{DIE}	Die Temperature	150	C	For derated power calculations
TH04	PD	Power Dissipation	—	W	$PD = P_{INTERNAL} + P_{I/O}$
TH05	$P_{INTERNAL}$	Internal Power Dissipation	—	W	$P_{INTERNAL} = IDD \times VDD$ (NOTE 1)
TH06	$P_{I/O}$	I/O Power Dissipation	—	W	$P_{I/O} = \sum (I_{OL} \times V_{OL}) + \sum (I_{OH} \times (V_{DD} - V_{OH}))$
TH07	P_{DER}	Derated Power	—	W	$P_{DER} = PD_{MAX} (T_{DIE} - TA) / \theta_{JA}$ (NOTE 2, 3)

Note 1: IDD is current to run the chip alone without driving any load on the output pins.

2: TA = Ambient Temperature.

3: Maximum allowable power dissipation is the lower value of either the absolute maximum total power dissipation or derated power.

17.6 Timing Parameter Symbology

The timing parameter symbols have been created with one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS

2. TppS

T	
F	Frequency

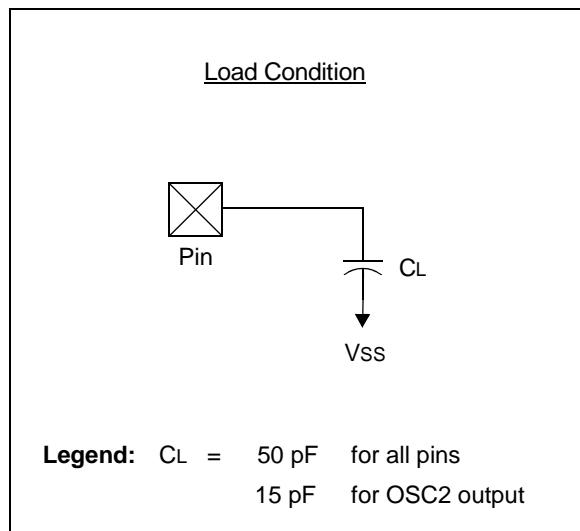
Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKOUT	rd	<u>RD</u>
cs	<u>CS</u>	rw	<u>RD or WR</u>
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	<u>SS</u>
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O Port	t1	T1CKI
mc	<u>MCLR</u>	wr	<u>WR</u>

Uppercase letters and their meanings:

S		P	
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (High-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	High-impedance

FIGURE 17-3: LOAD CONDITIONS



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

17.7 AC Characteristics: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 (Industrial, Extended)

FIGURE 17-4: CLOCK TIMING

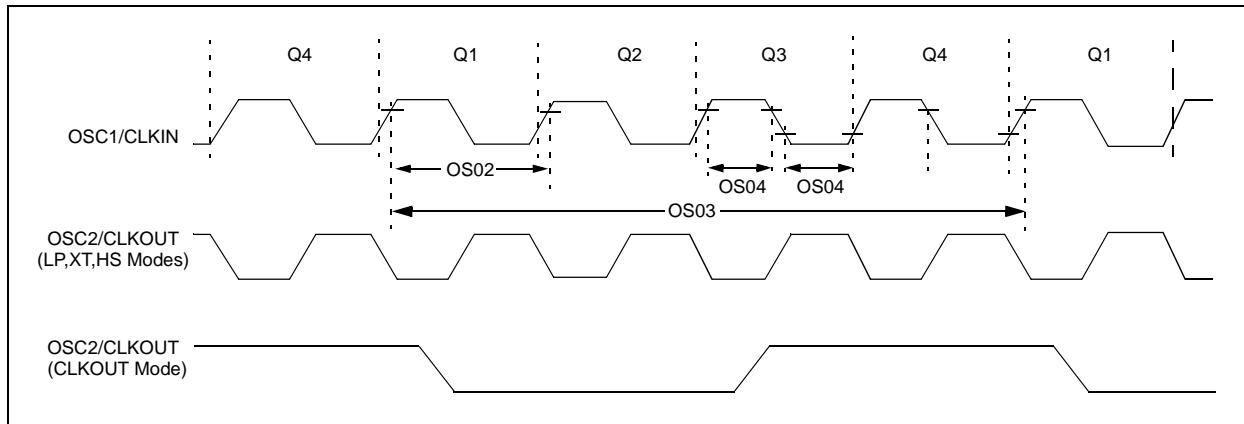


TABLE 17-1: CLOCK OSCILLATOR TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
OS01	Fosc	External CLKIN Frequency ⁽¹⁾	DC	—	37	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
			DC	—	4	MHz	XT Oscillator mode
			DC	—	20	MHz	HS Oscillator mode
			DC	—	20	MHz	EC Oscillator mode
		Oscillator Frequency ⁽¹⁾	—	32.768	—	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
			0.1	—	4	MHz	XT Oscillator mode
			1	—	20	MHz	HS Oscillator mode
			DC	—	4	MHz	RC Oscillator mode
OS02	Tosc	External CLKIN Period ⁽¹⁾	27	—	∞	μs	LP Oscillator mode
			250	—	∞	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			50	—	∞	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			50	—	∞	ns	EC Oscillator mode
		Oscillator Period ⁽¹⁾	—	30.5	—	μs	LP Oscillator mode
			250	—	10,000	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			50	—	1,000	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			250	—	—	ns	RC Oscillator mode
OS03	Tcy	Instruction Cycle Time ⁽¹⁾	200	Tcy	DC	ns	Tcy = 4/Fosc
OS04*	TosH, TosL	External CLKIN High, External CLKIN Low	2	—	—	μs	LP oscillator
			100	—	—	ns	XT oscillator
			20	—	—	ns	HS oscillator
OS05*	TosR, TosF	External CLKIN Rise, External CLKIN Fall	0	—	∞	ns	LP oscillator
			0	—	∞	ns	XT oscillator
			0	—	∞	ns	HS oscillator

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (Tcy) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at 'min' values with an external clock applied to OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the 'max' cycle time limit is 'DC' (no clock) for all devices.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-2: OSCILLATOR PARAMETERS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)								
Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$								
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Freq Tolerance	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
OS06	TWARM	Internal Oscillator Switch when running ⁽³⁾	—	—	—	2	Tosc	Slowest clock
OS07	Tsc	Fail-Safe Sample Clock Period ⁽¹⁾	—	—	21	—	ms	LFINTOSC/64
OS08	HFosc	Internal Calibrated HFINTOSC Frequency ⁽²⁾	$\pm 1\%$ $\pm 2\%$ $\pm 5\%$	7.92 7.84 7.60	8.0 8.0 8.0	8.08 8.16 8.40	MHz MHz MHz	VDD = 3.5V, 25°C $2.5V \leq \text{VDD} \leq 5.5V$, $0^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ $2.0V \leq \text{VDD} \leq 5.5V$, $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ (Ind.), $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ (Ext.)
OS09*	LFosc	Internal Uncalibrated LFINTOSC Frequency	—	15	31	45	kHz	
OS10*	TOSC ST	HFINTOSC Oscillator Wake-up from Sleep Start-up Time	—	5.5	12	24	μs	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$
			—	3.5	7	14	μs	VDD = 3.0V, -40°C to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$
			—	3	6	11	μs	VDD = 5.0V, -40°C to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at 'min' values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the 'max' cycle time limit is 'DC' (no clock) for all devices.
- 2:** To ensure these oscillator frequency tolerances, VDD and Vss must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1 μF and 0.01 μF values in parallel are recommended.
- 3:** By design.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-5: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING

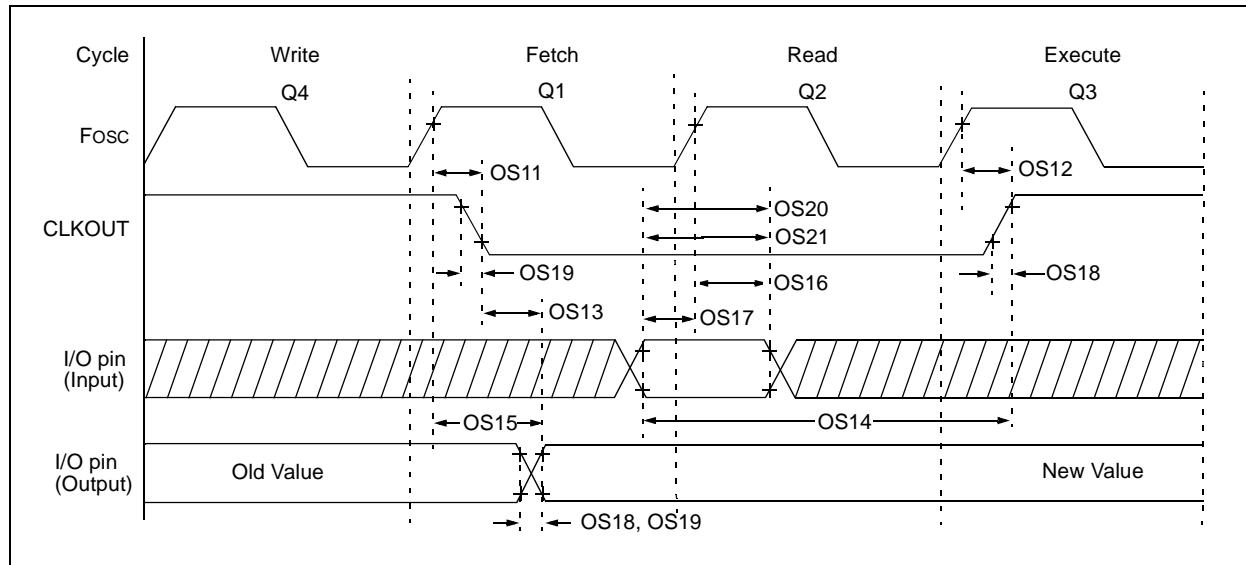


TABLE 17-3: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING PARAMETERS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)							
Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
OS11	TosH2ckL	Fosc↑ to CLKOUT↓ ⁽¹⁾	—	—	70	ns	VDD = 5.0V
OS12	TosH2ckH	Fosc↑ to CLKOUT↑ ⁽¹⁾	—	—	72	ns	VDD = 5.0V
OS13	TckL2IoV	CLKOUT↓ to port out valid ⁽¹⁾	—	—	20	ns	
OS14	TioV2ckH	Port input valid before CLKOUT↑ ⁽¹⁾	Tosc + 200 ns	—	—	ns	
OS15	TosH2IoV	Fosc↑ (Q1 cycle) to port out valid	—	50	70*	ns	VDD = 5.0V
OS16	TosH2IoI	Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) to port input invalid (I/O in hold time)	50	—	—	ns	VDD = 5.0V
OS17	TioV2osH	Port input valid to Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) (I/O in setup time)	20	—	—	ns	
OS18	TioR	Port output rise time ⁽²⁾	—	15 40	72 32	ns	VDD = 2.0V VDD = 5.0V
OS19	TioF	Port output fall time ⁽²⁾	—	28 15	55 30	ns	VDD = 2.0V VDD = 5.0V
OS20*	TINP	INT pin input high or low time	25	—	—	ns	
OS21*	TRAP	PORATA interrupt-on-change new input level time	Tcy	—	—	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode where CLKOUT output is 4 x Tosc.

2: Includes OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-6: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING

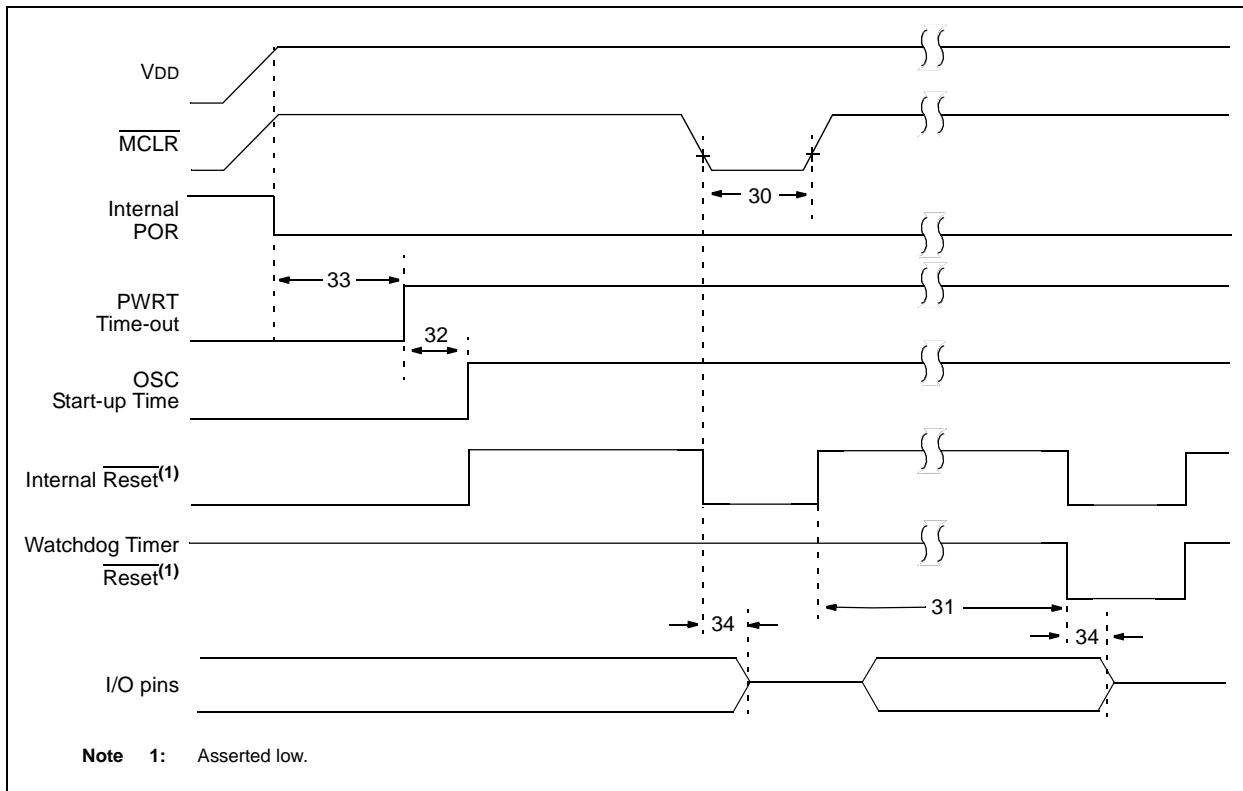
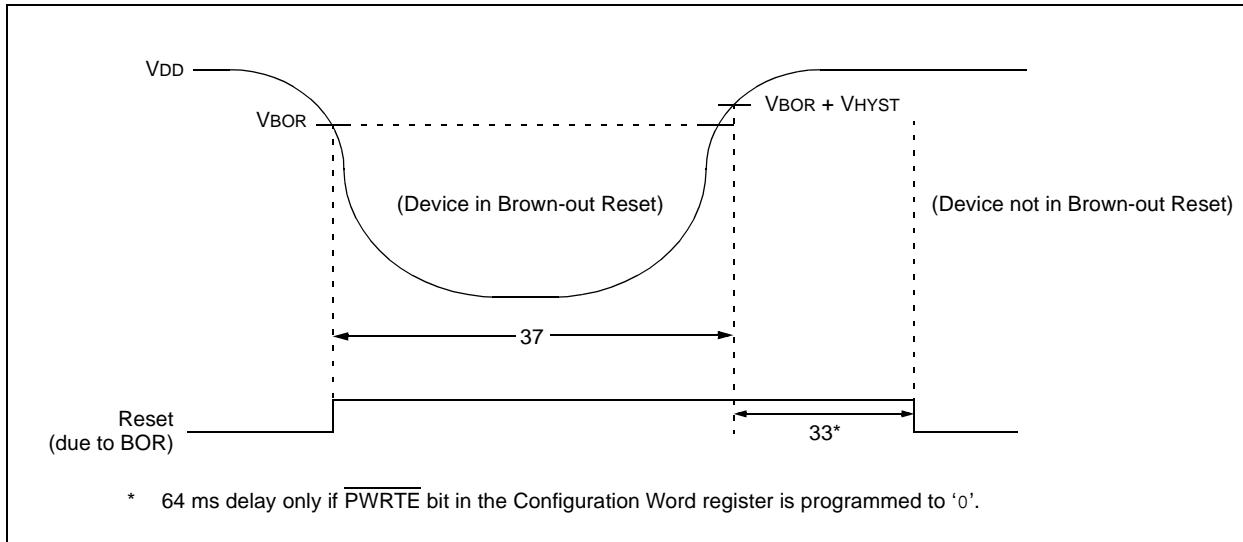


FIGURE 17-7: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING AND CHARACTERISTICS



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-4: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET PARAMETERS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)							
Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TMCL	MCLR Pulse Width (low)	2 5	— —	— —	μs μs	VDD = 5V, -40°C to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$ VDD = 5V
31	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (No Prescaler)	10 10	17 17	25 30	ms ms	VDD = 5V, -40°C to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$ VDD = 5V
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period ^(1, 2)	—	1024	—	TOSC	(NOTE 3)
33*	TPWRT	Power-up Timer Period	40	65	140	ms	
34*	TIOZ	I/O High-impedance from MCLR Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	—	2.0	μs	
35	VBOR	Brown-out Reset Voltage	2.0	—	2.2	V	(NOTE 4)
36*	VHYST	Brown-out Reset Hysteresis	—	50	—	mV	
37*	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Minimum Detection Period	100	—	—	μs	VDD \leq VBOR

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at 'min' values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the 'max' cycle time limit is 'DC' (no clock) for all devices.

2: By design.

3: Period of the slower clock.

4: To ensure these voltage tolerances, VDD and Vss must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1 μF and 0.01 μF values in parallel are recommended.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-8: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS

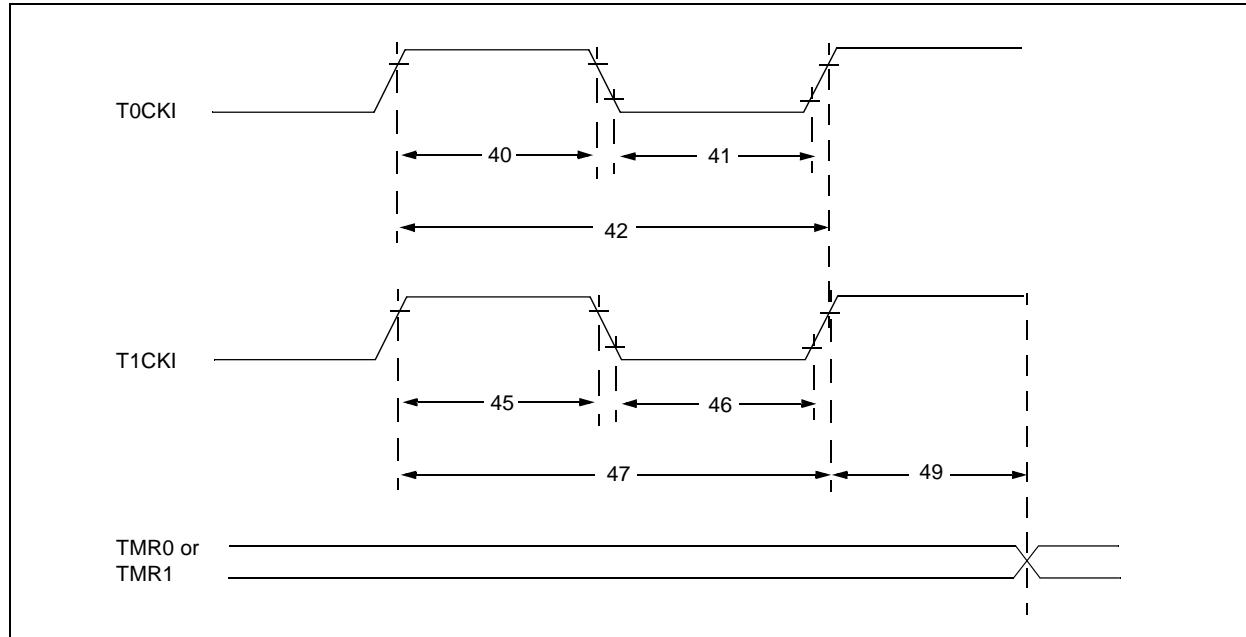


TABLE 17-5: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

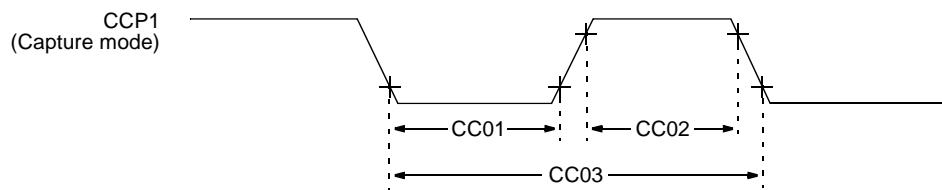
Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)								
Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$								
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
40*	TT0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width	No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
41*	TT0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width	No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
42*	TT0P	T0CKI Period		Greater of: 20 or $\frac{\text{TCY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (2, 4, ..., 256)
45*	TT1H	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with Prescaler	15	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	30	—	—	ns	
46*	TT1L	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, No Prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with Prescaler	15	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	30	—	—	ns	
47*	TT1P	T1CKI Input Period	Synchronous	Greater of: 30 or $\frac{\text{TCY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous	60	—	—	ns	
48	F _{T1}	Timer1 Oscillator Input Frequency Range (oscillator enabled by setting bit T1OSCEN)		—	32.768	—	kHz	
49*	TCKEZTMR1	Delay from External Clock Edge to Timer Increment		2 Tosc	—	7 Tosc	—	Timers in Sync mode

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-9: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (ECCP)



Note: Refer to Figure 17-3 for load conditions.

TABLE 17-6: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (ECCP)

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units
CC01*	TccL	CCP1 Input Low Time	No Prescaler	$0.5\text{Tcy} + 20$	—	—	ns
			With Prescaler	20	—	—	ns
CC02*	TccH	CCP1 Input High Time	No Prescaler	$0.5\text{Tcy} + 20$	—	—	ns
			With Prescaler	20	—	—	ns
CC03*	TccP	CCP1 Input Period		$\frac{3\text{Tcy} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns
							N = prescale value (1, 4 or 16)

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-7: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Comparator Specifications			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C				
Param. No.	Sym	Characteristics	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Comments
CM01	Vos	Input Offset Voltage	—	± 5.0	± 10	mV	
CM02	VCM	Input Common Mode Voltage	0	—	VDD - 1.5	V	
CM03	CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	+55*	—	—	db	
CM04	TRT	Response Time ⁽¹⁾	—	150	400*	ns	
CM05	TMC2COV	Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid	—	—	10*	μs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: Response time measured with one comparator input at (VDD - 1.5)/2 while the other input transitions from VSS to VDD - 1.5V.

TABLE 17-8: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE (CVREF) SPECIFICATIONS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C							
Param. No.	Sym	Characteristics	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Comments
CV01*	CLSB	Step Size ⁽²⁾	— —	VDD/24 VDD/32	— —	V V	Low Range (VRR = 1) High Range (VRR = 0)
CV02*	CACC	Absolute Accuracy	— —	— —	± 1/4 ± 1/2	LSb LSb	Low Range (VRR = 1) High Range (VRR = 0)
CV03*	CR	Unit Resistor Value (R)	—	2k	—	Ω	
CV04*	CST	Settling Time ⁽¹⁾	—	—	10	μs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Settling time measured while VRR = 1 and VR<3:0> transitions from '0000' to '1111'.

2: See **Section 8.10 “Comparator Voltage Reference”** for more information.

TABLE 17-9: VOLTAGE (VR) REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS

VR Voltage Reference Specifications			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C				
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristics	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Comments
VR01	VROUT	VR voltage output	TBD	0.6	TBD	V	
VR02	TCVOUT	Voltage drift temperature coefficient	—	150	TBD	ppm/°C	
VR03	ΔVROUT/ ΔVDD	Voltage drift with respect to VDD regulation	—	200	—	μV/V	
VR04	TSTABLE	Settling Time	—	10	100*	μs	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-10: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

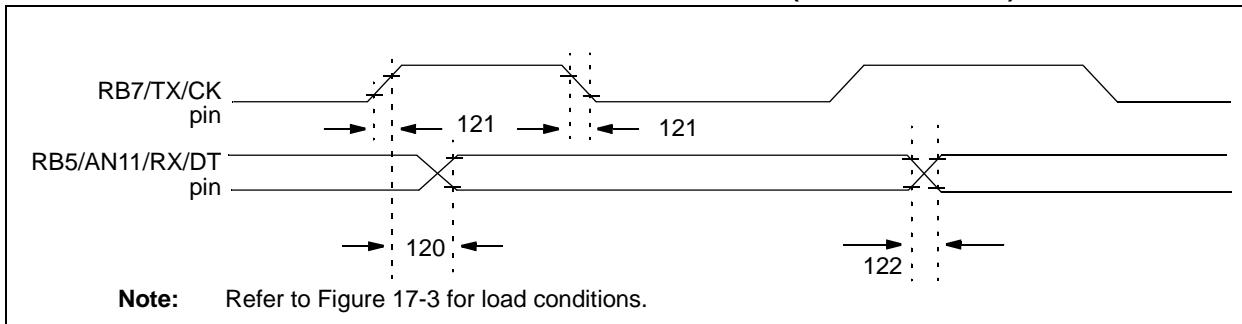


TABLE 17-10: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)						
Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$						
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TckH2DTV	SYNC XMIT (Master & Slave) Clock high to data-out valid	—	40	ns	
121	TCKRF	Clock out rise time and fall time (Master mode)	—	20	ns	
122	TDTRF	Data-out rise time and fall time	—	20	ns	

FIGURE 17-11: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

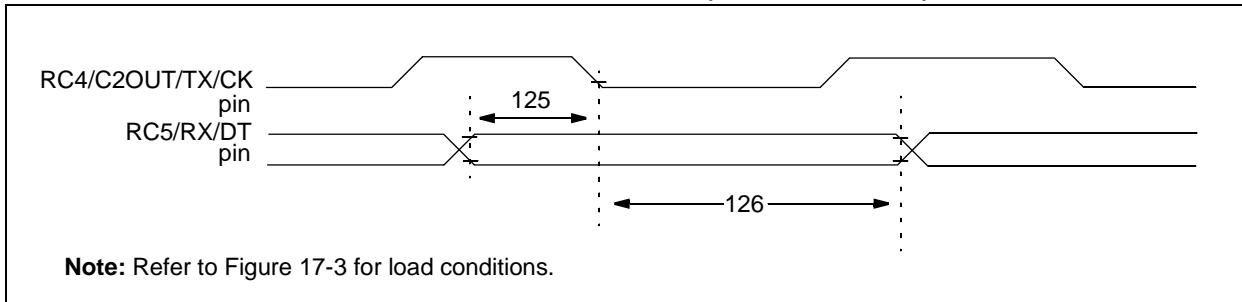


TABLE 17-11: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)						
Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$						
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TDTV2CKL	SYNC RCV (Master & Slave) Data-hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)	10	—	ns	
126	TCKL2DTL	Data-hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	ns	

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-12: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0, SMP = 0)

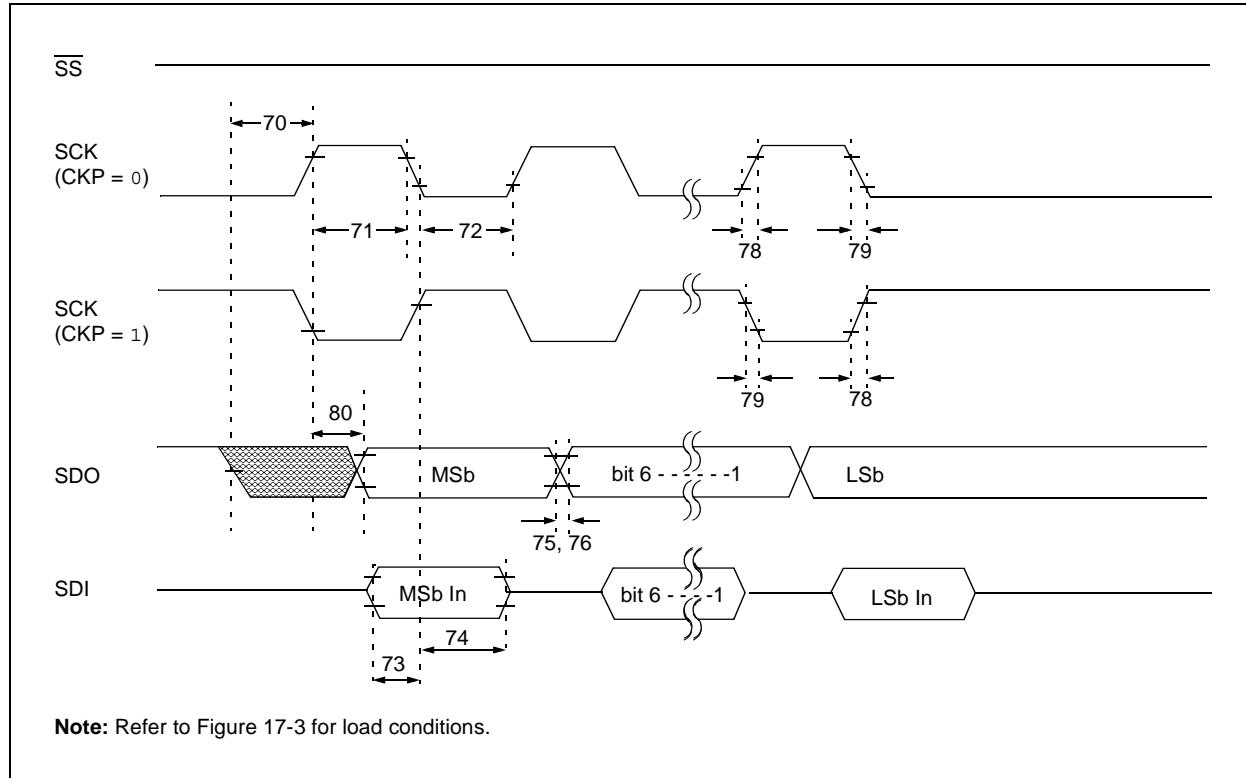
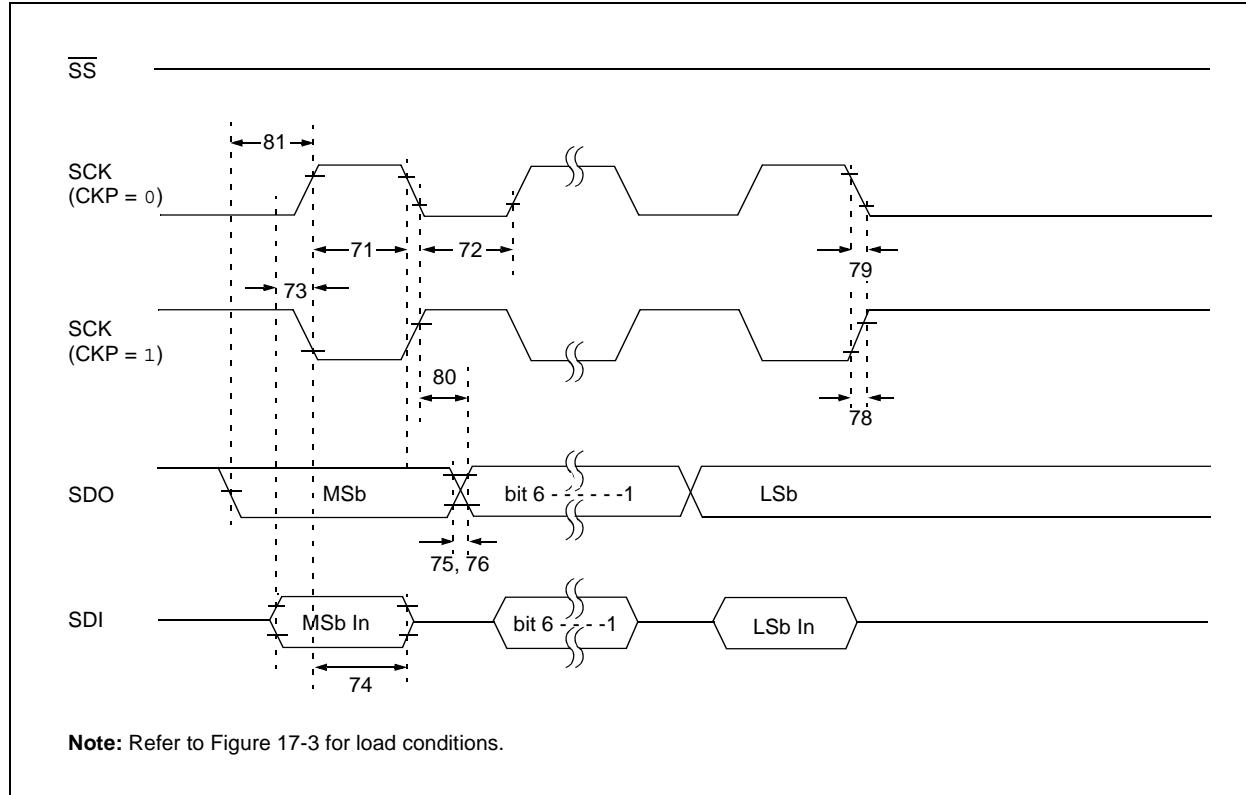


FIGURE 17-13: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1, SMP = 1)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-14: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)

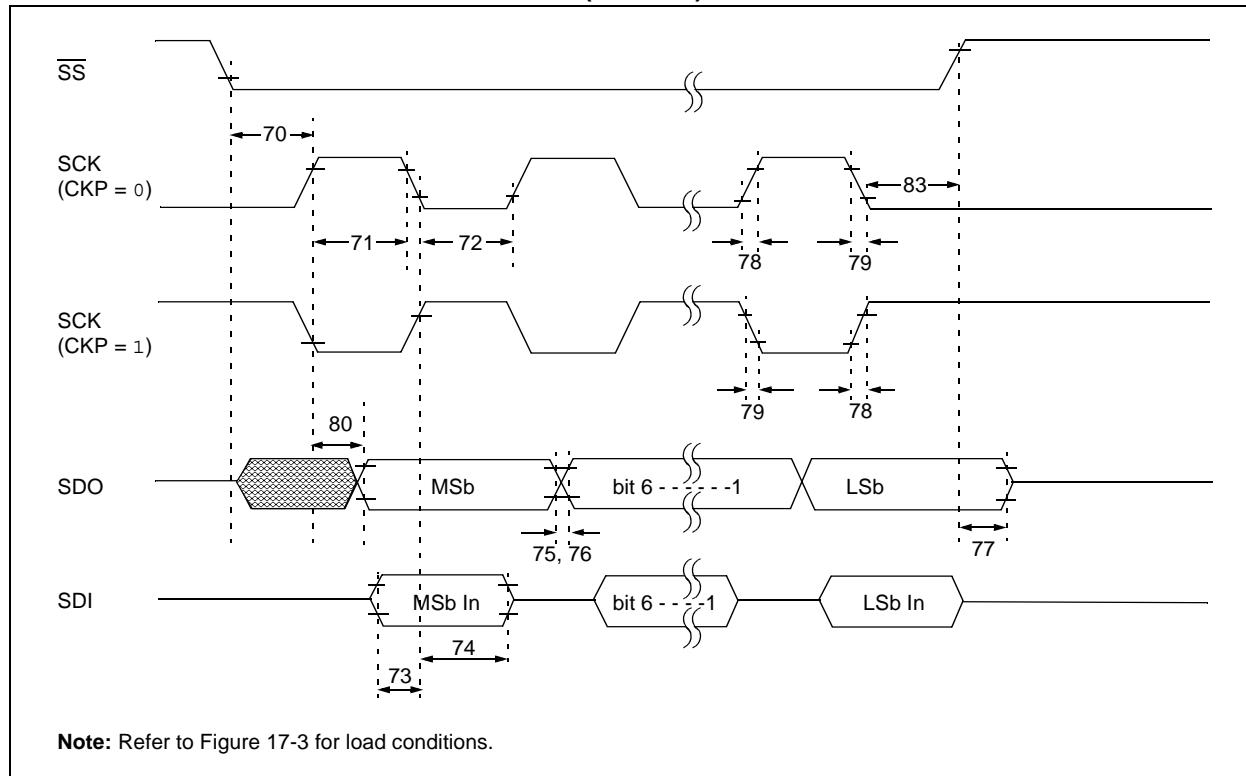


FIGURE 17-15: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)

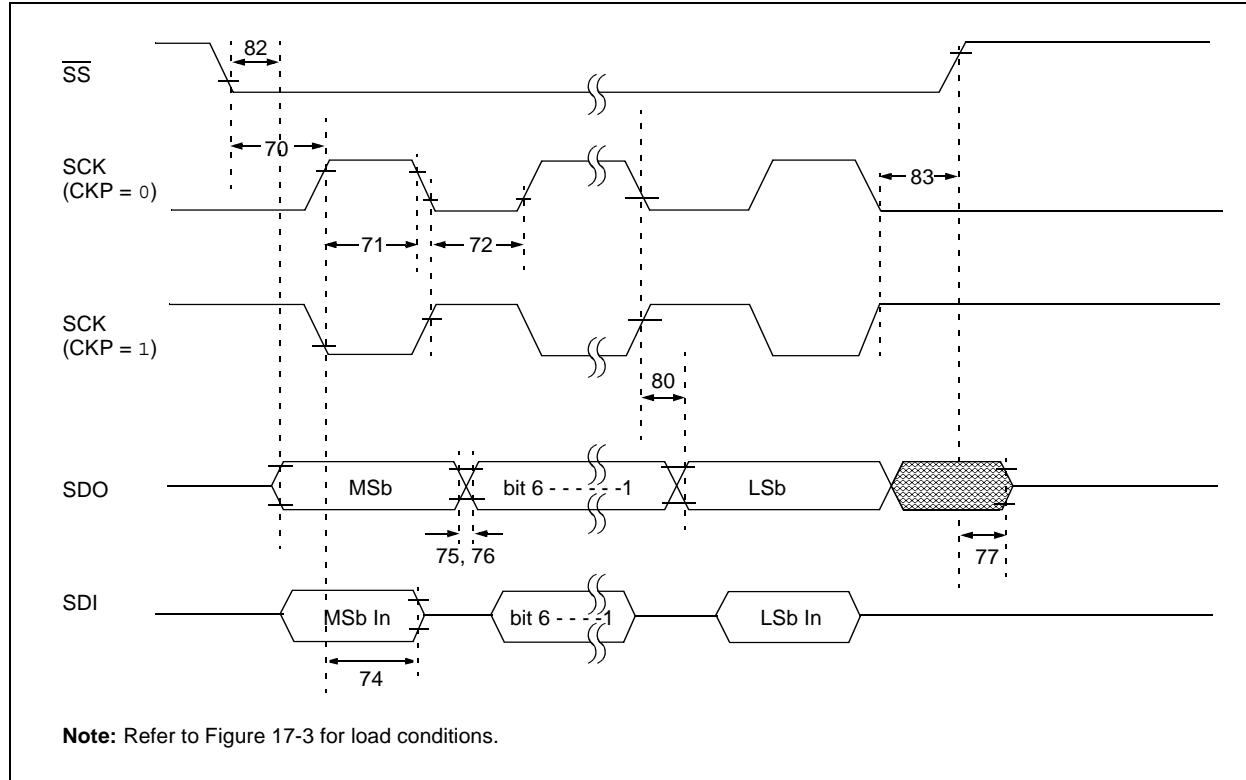


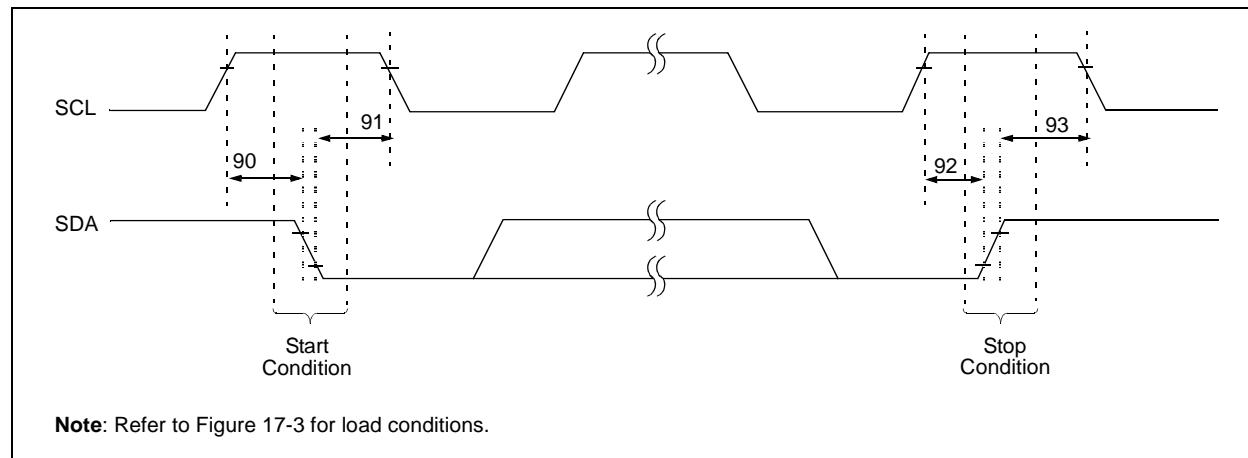
TABLE 17-12: SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typt	Max	Units	Conditions
70*	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	SS _l to SCK _l or SCK _h input		TCY	—	—	ns	
71*	TsCH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)		TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
72*	TsCL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)		TCY + 20	—	—	ns	
73*	TdIV2scH, TdIV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	—	ns	
74*	TsCH2DIL, TsCL2DIL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	—	ns	
75*	TDO _R	SDO data output rise time	3.0-5.5V	—	10	25	ns	
			2.0-5.5V	—	25	50	ns	
76*	TDO _F	SDO data output fall time		—	10	25	ns	
77*	TsSH2doZ	SS _h to SDO output high-impedance		10	—	50	ns	
78*	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	3.0-5.5V	—	10	25	ns	
			2.0-5.5V	—	25	50	ns	
79*	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	10	25	ns	
80*	TscH2DoV, TsCL2DoV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	3.0-5.5V	—	—	50	ns	
			2.0-5.5V	—	—	145	ns	
81*	TDoV2scH, TDoV2scL	SDO data output setup to SCK edge		Tcy	—	—	ns	
82*	TssL2DoV	SDO data output valid after SS _l edge		—	—	50	ns	
83*	TscH2ssH, TsCL2ssH	SS _h after SCK edge		1.5TCY + 40	—	—	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 17-16: I²CTM BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING



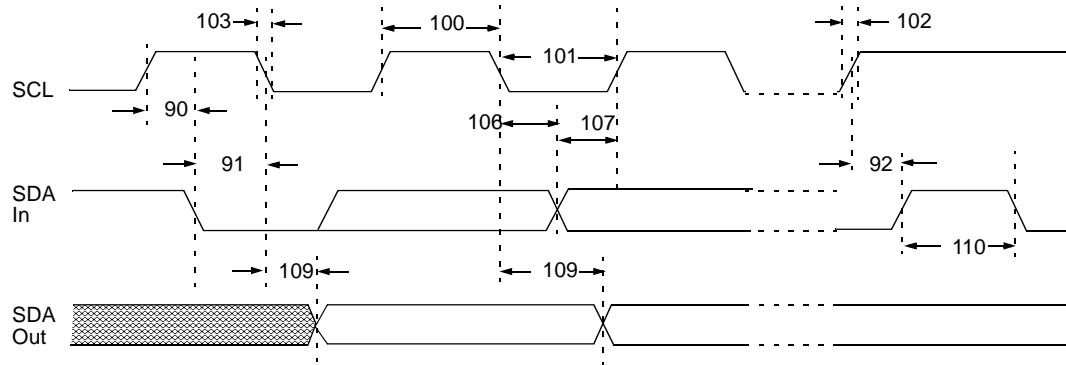
PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-13: I²C™ BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
90*	TSU:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
91*	THD:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
92*	TSU:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
93	THD:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

FIGURE 17-17: I²C™ BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 17-3 for load conditions.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-14: I²C™ BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100*	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP Module	1.5TCY	—		
101*	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP Module	1.5TCY	—		
102*	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
103*	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
90*	TSU:STA	Start condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
91*	THD:STA	Start condition hold time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	μs	After this period the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
106*	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	μs	
107*	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	(Note 2)
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92*	TSU:STO	Stop condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
109*	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	(Note 1)
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
110*	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	
	CB	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of Start or Stop conditions.

2: A Fast mode (400 kHz) I²C bus device can be used in a Standard mode (100 kHz) I²C bus system, but the requirement $TSU:DAT \geq 250$ ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the low period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the low period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line TR max. + $TSU:DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250$ ns (according to the Standard mode I²C bus specification), before the SCL line is released.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

TABLE 17-15: A/D CONVERTER (ADC) CHARACTERISTICS:

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)							
Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
AD01	NR	Resolution	—	—	10 bits	bit	
AD02	EIL	Integral Error	—	—	± 1	Lsb	VREF = 5.12V
AD03	EDL	Differential Error	—	—	± 1	Lsb	No missing codes to 10 bits VREF = 5.12V
AD04	EOFF	Offset Error	—	—	± 1	Lsb	VREF = 5.12V
AD04A			—	1.5	—	Lsb	(PIC16F677 only)
AD07	EGN	Gain Error	—	—	± 1	Lsb	VREF = 5.12V
AD06	VREF	Reference Voltage ⁽³⁾	2.2	—	—	V	Absolute minimum to ensure 1 Lsb accuracy
AD06A			2.5	—	VDD	V	
AD07	VAIN	Full-Scale Range	Vss	—	VREF	V	
AD08	ZAIN	Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source	—	—	10	kΩ	
AD09*	IREF	VREF Input Current ⁽³⁾	10	—	1000	μA	During VAIN acquisition. Based on differential of VHOLD to VAIN.
			—	—	50	μA	During A/D conversion cycle

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

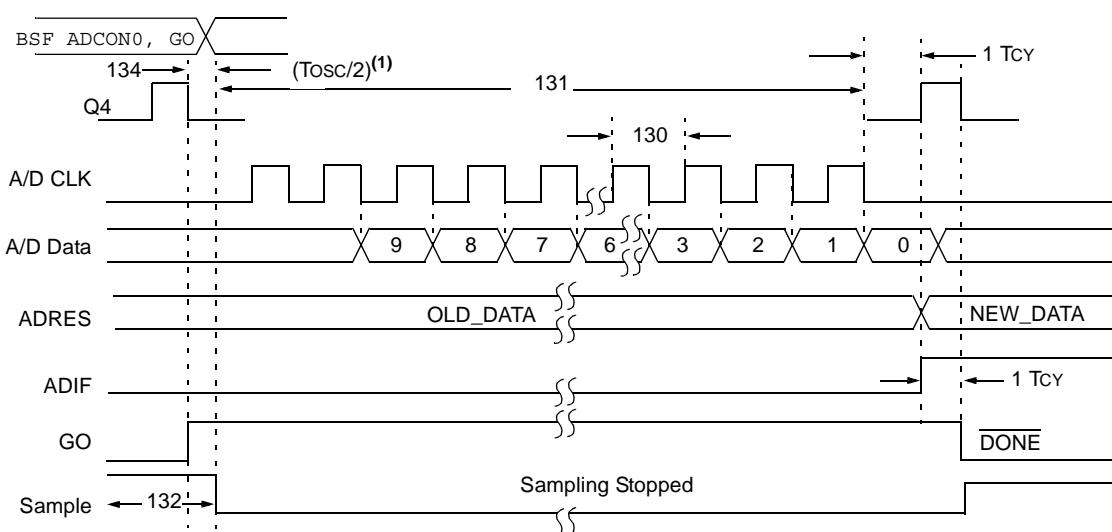
Note 1: Total Absolute Error includes integral, differential, offset and gain errors.

2: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.

3: ADC VREF is from external VREF or VDD pin, whichever is selected as reference input.

4: When ADC is off, it will not consume any current other than leakage current. The power-down current specification includes any such leakage from the ADC module.

FIGURE 17-18: A/D CONVERSION TIMING (NORMAL MODE)



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

TABLE 17-16: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{TA} \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
130	TAD	A/D Clock Period	1.5 3.0*	—	—	μs	TOSC-based, VREF $\geq 2.5\text{V}$
130	TAD	A/D Internal RC Oscillator Period	3.0* 2.0*	6.0 4.0	9.0* 6.0*	μs	TOSC-based, VREF full range ADCS<1:0> = 11 (RC mode) At VDD = 2.5V At VDD = 5.0V
131	TCNV	Conversion Time (not including Acquisition Time) ⁽¹⁾	—	11	—	TAD	Set GO bit to new data in A/D Result register
132	TACQ	Acquisition Time	(2) 5*	11.5 —	—	μs	The minimum time is the amplifier settling time. This may be used if the "new" input voltage has not changed by more than 1 LSb (i.e., 4.1 mV @ 4.096V) from the last sampled voltage (as stored on CHOLD).
134	TGO	Q4 to A/D Clock Start	—	Tosc/2	—	—	If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

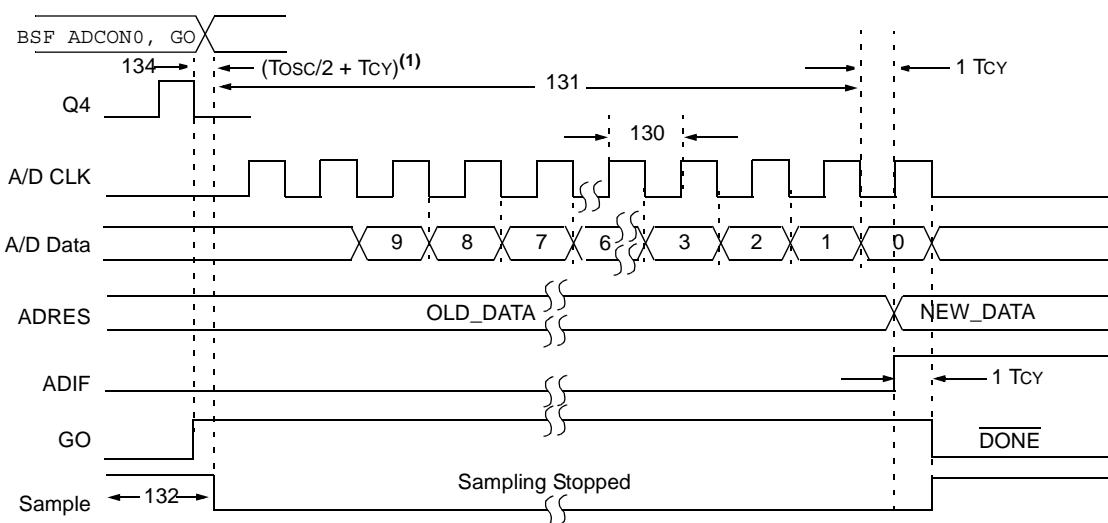
† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: ADRESH and ADRESL registers may be read on the following TCY cycle.

2: See Table 9-1 for minimum conditions.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 17-19: A/D CONVERSION TIMING (SLEEP MODE)



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

TABLE 17-17: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS (SLEEP MODE)

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq TA \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$							
Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
130	TAD	A/D Internal RC Oscillator Period	3.0*	6.0	9.0*	μs	ADCS<1:0> = 11 (RC mode) At $V_{DD} = 2.5\text{V}$ At $V_{DD} = 5.0\text{V}$
131	TCNV	Conversion Time (not including Acquisition Time) ⁽¹⁾	—	11	—	TAD	
132	TACQ	Acquisition Time	(2)	11.5	—	μs	The minimum time is the amplifier settling time. This may be used if the “new” input voltage has not changed by more than 1 Lsb (i.e., 4.1 mV @ 4.096V) from the last sampled voltage (as stored on CHOLD).
134	TGO	Q4 to A/D Clock Start	—	$T_{osc}/2 + TCY$	—	—	If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: ADRES register may be read on the following TCY cycle.

2: See Table 9-1 for minimum conditions.

18.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

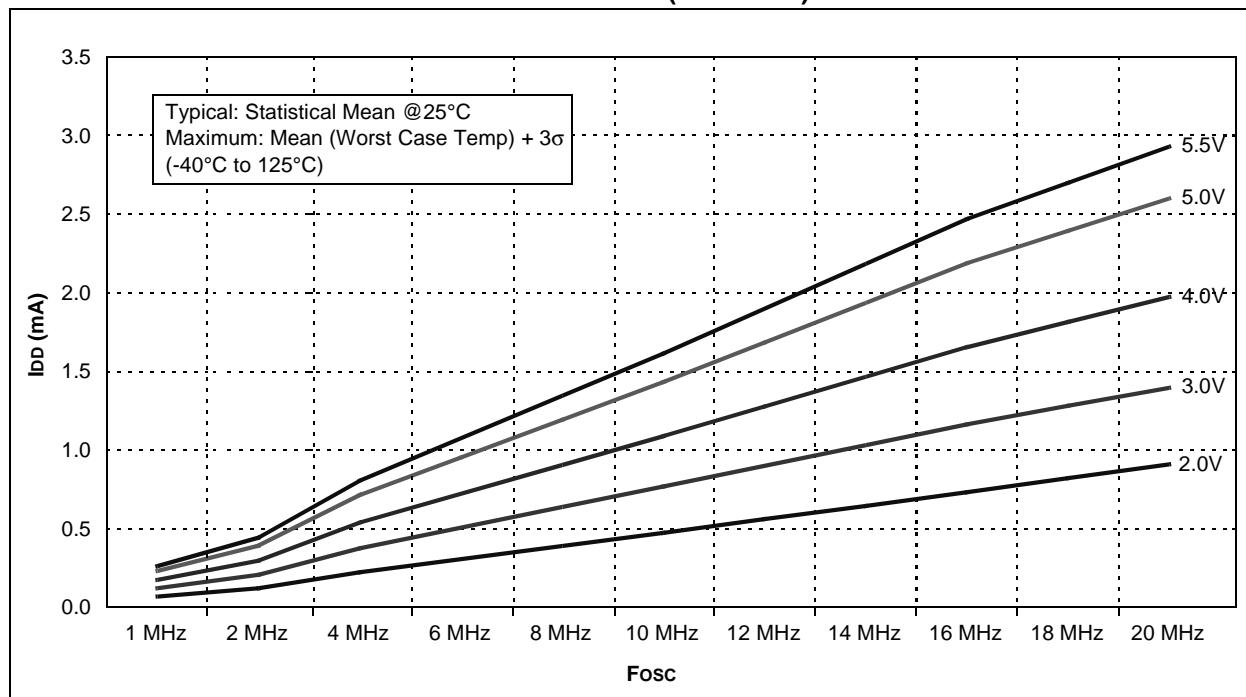
The graphs and tables provided in this section are for **design guidance** and are **not tested**.

In some graphs or tables, the data presented are **outside specified operating range** (i.e., outside specified V_{DD} range). This is for **information only** and devices are ensured to operate properly only within the specified range.

Note: The graphs and tables provided following this note are a statistical summary based on a limited number of samples and are provided for informational purposes only. The performance characteristics listed herein are not tested or guaranteed. In some graphs or tables, the data presented may be outside the specified operating range (e.g., outside specified power supply range) and therefore, outside the warranted range.

"Typical" represents the mean of the distribution at 25°C. "Maximum" or "minimum" represents (mean + 3σ) or (mean - 3σ) respectively, where σ is a standard deviation, over each temperature range.

FIGURE 18-1: TYPICAL I_{DD} vs. Fosc OVER V_{DD} (EC MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-2: MAXIMUM IDD VS. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

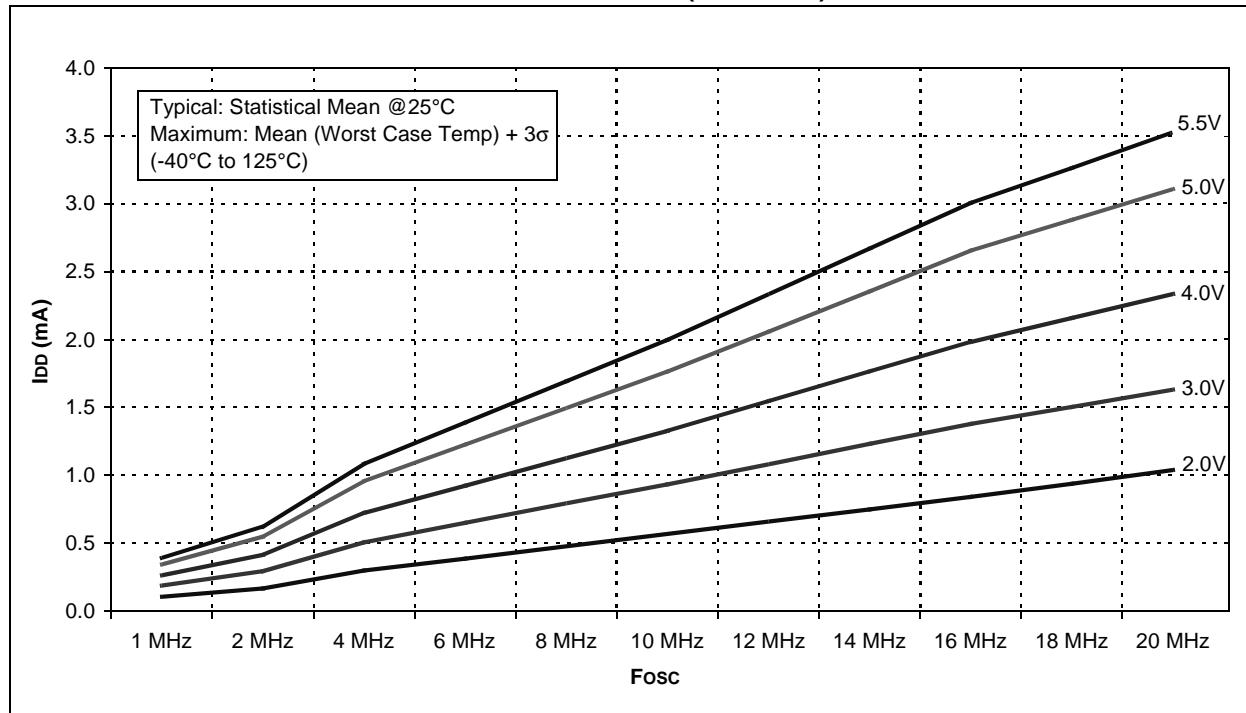
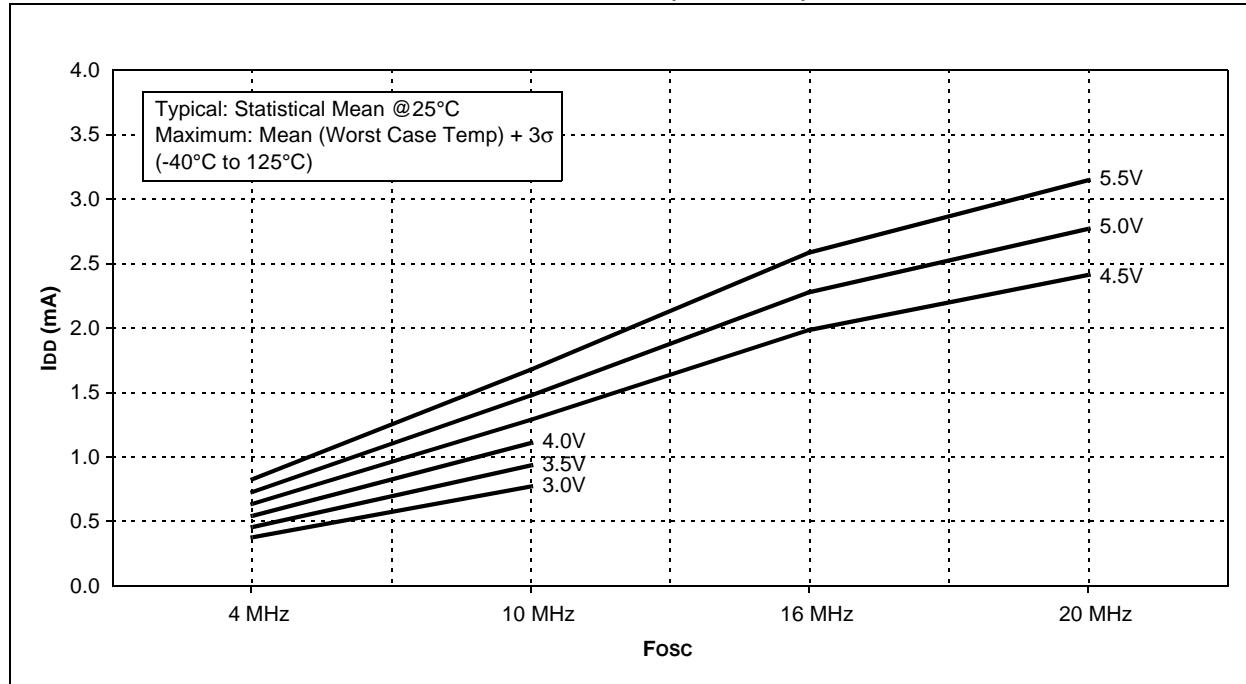


FIGURE 18-3: TYPICAL IDD VS. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-4: MAXIMUM IDD VS. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE)

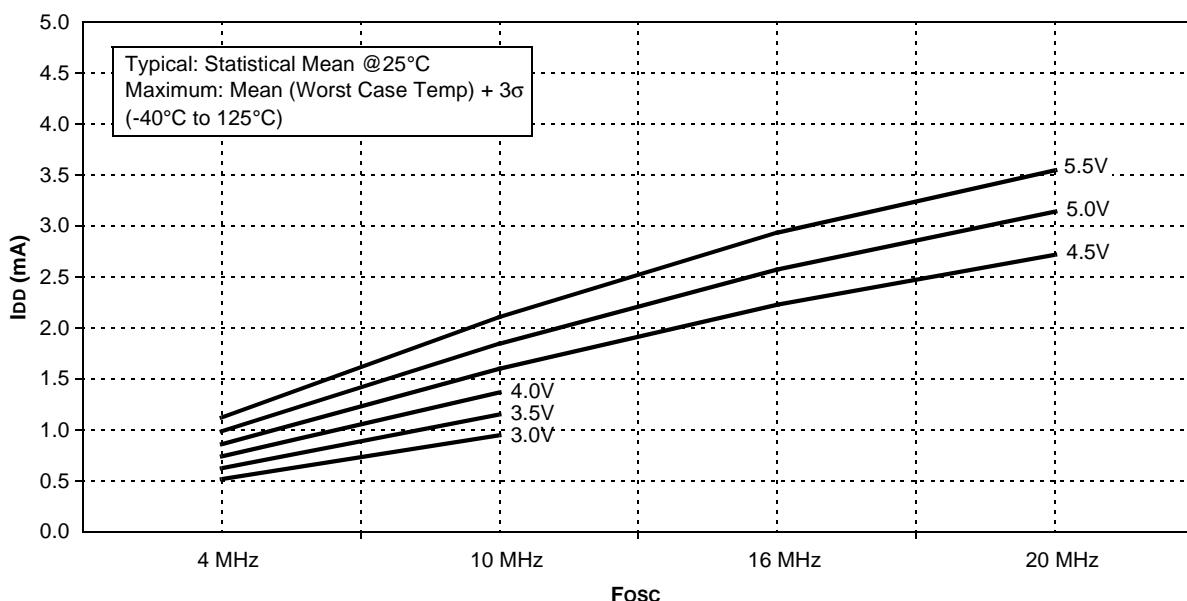
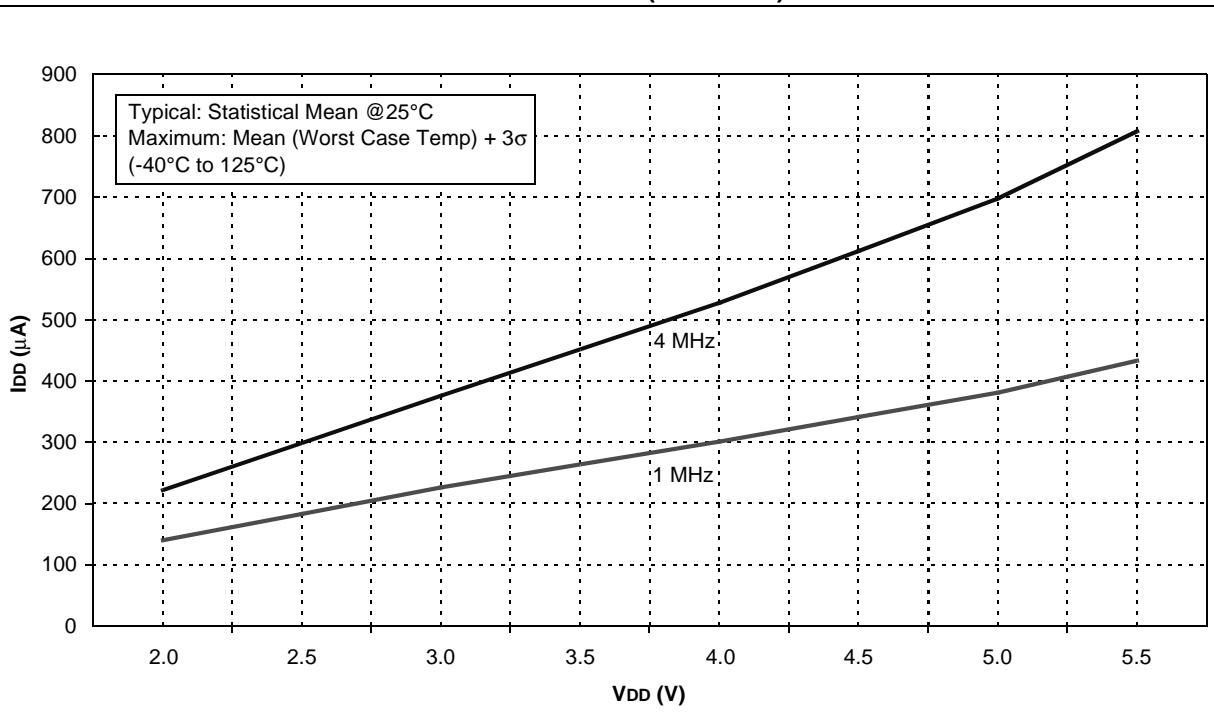


FIGURE 18-5: TYPICAL IDD VS. VDD OVER FOSC (XT MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-6: MAXIMUM IDD VS. VDD OVER Fosc (XT MODE)

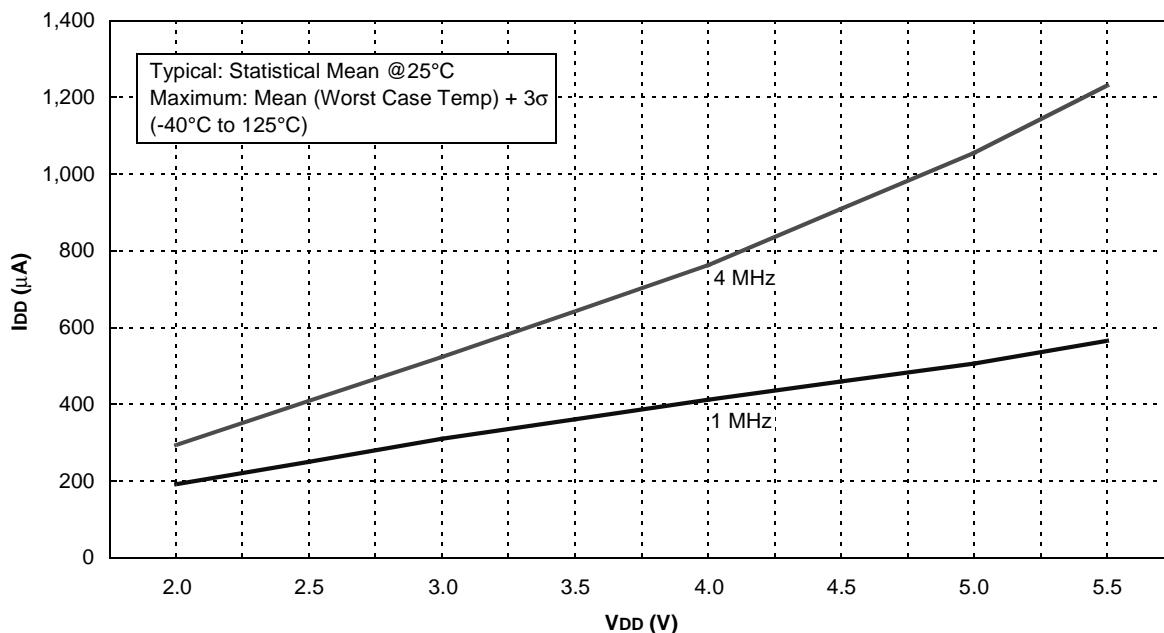
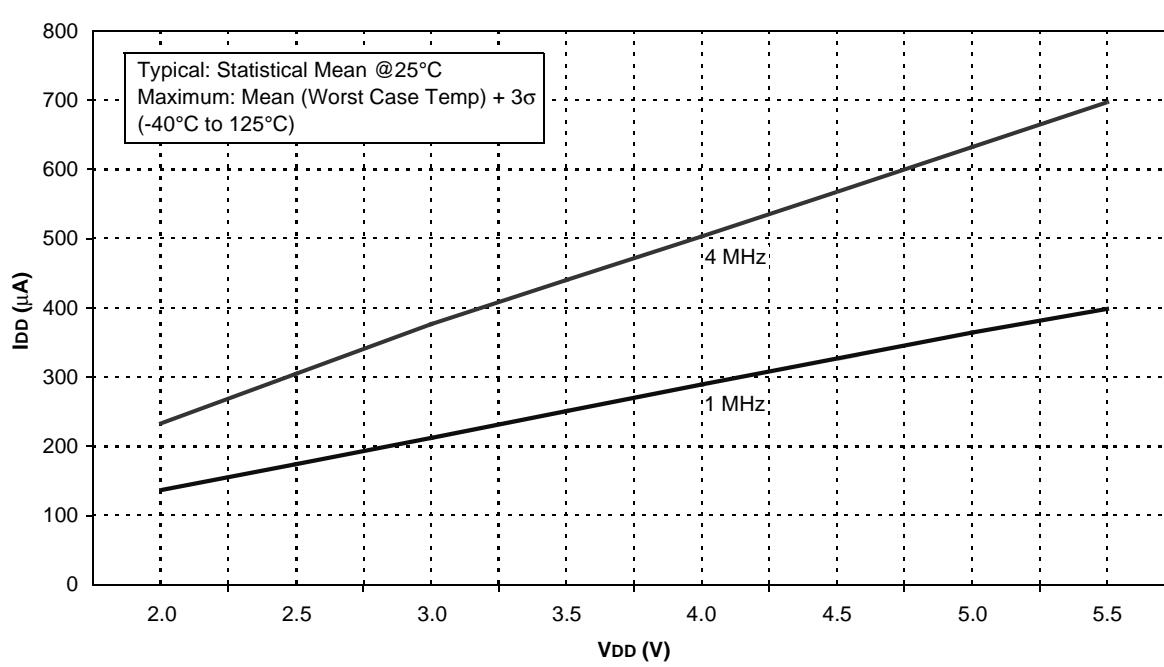


FIGURE 18-7: TYPICAL IDD VS. VDD OVER Fosc (EXT RC MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-8: MAXIMUM IDD VS. VDD OVER FOSC (EXTRC MODE)

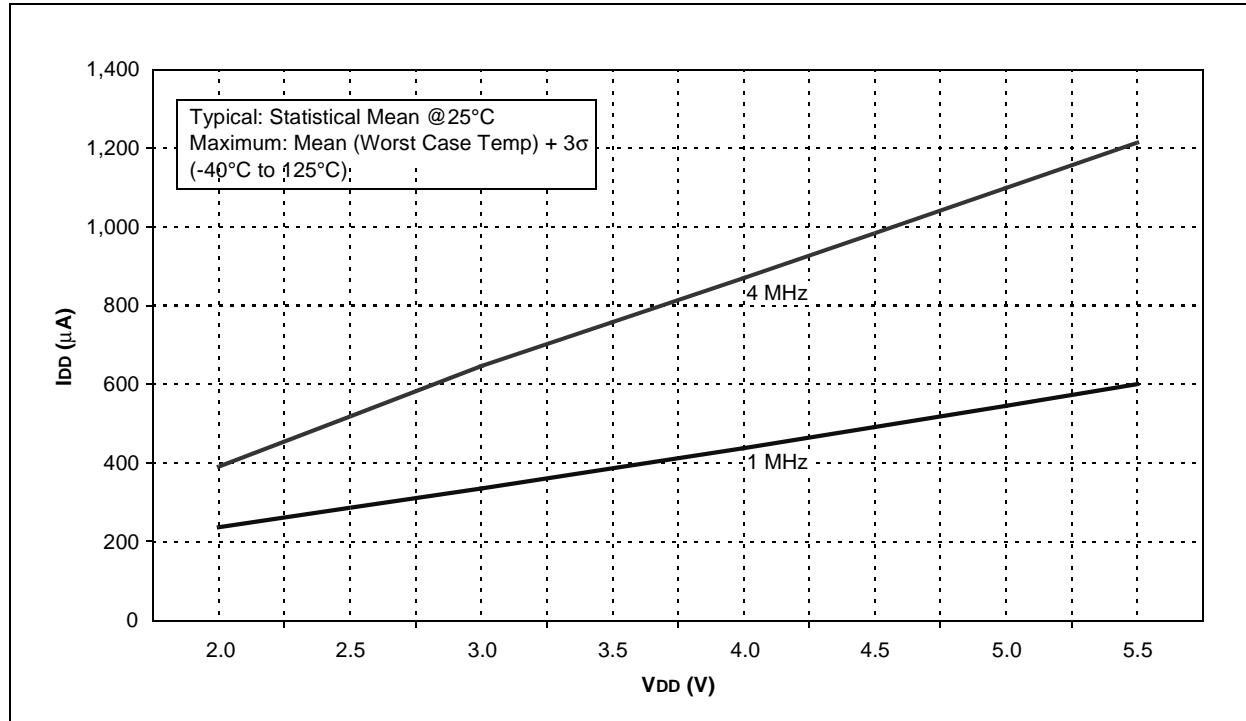
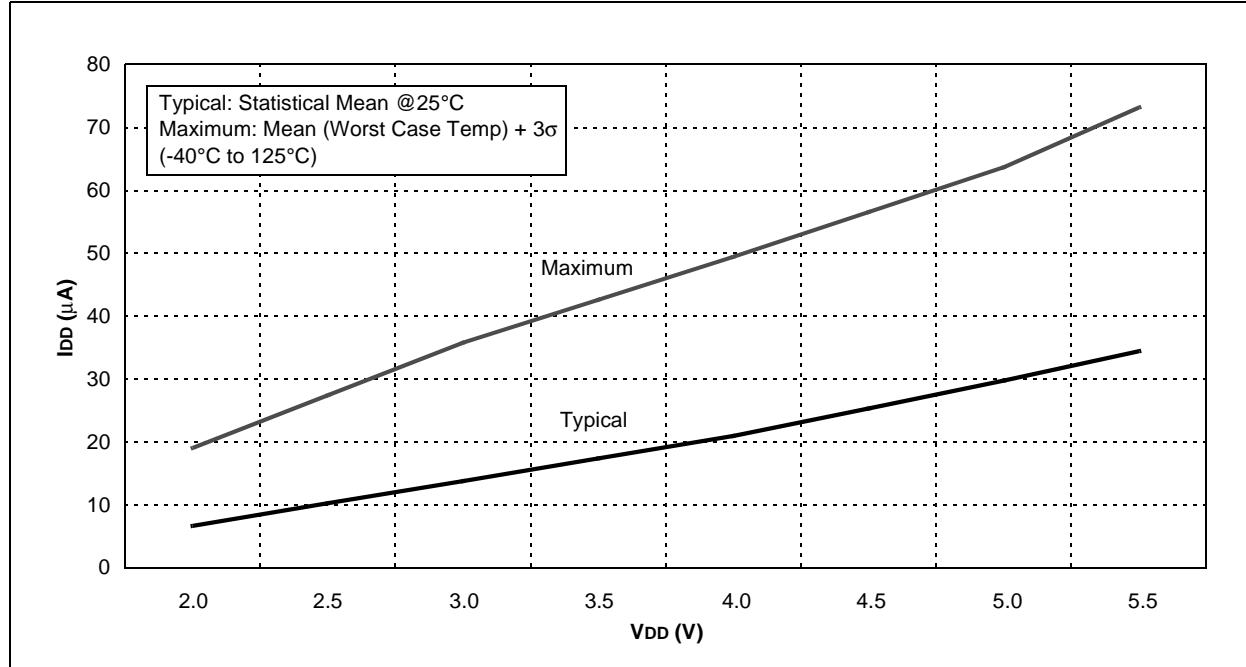


FIGURE 18-9: IDD VS. VDD OVER FOSC (LFINTOSC MODE, 31 kHz)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-10: TYPICAL IDD vs. Fosc OVER VDD (HFINTOSC MODE)

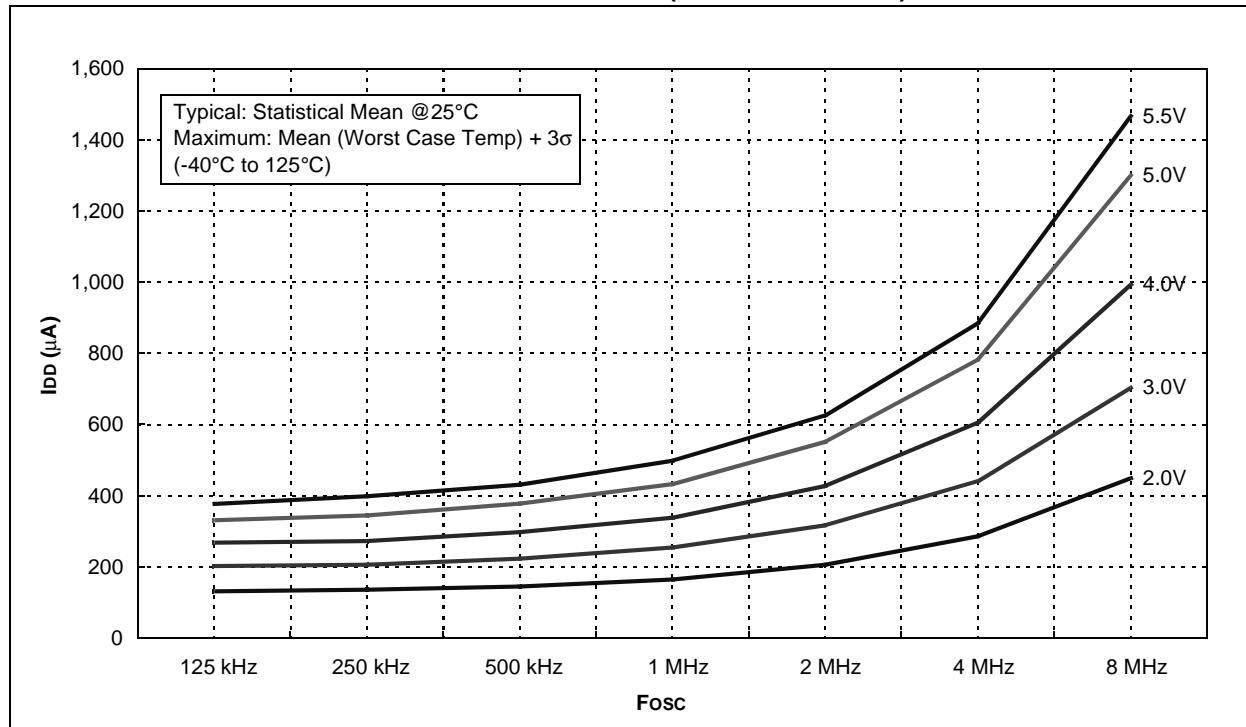
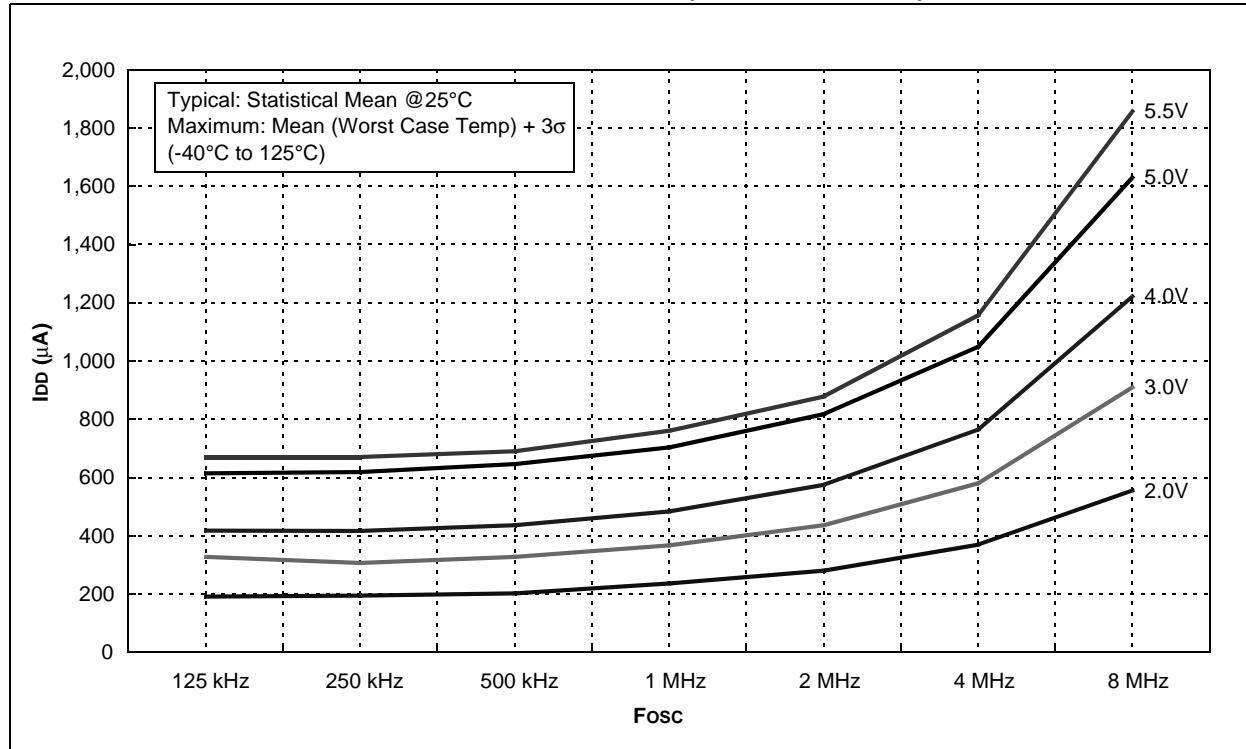


FIGURE 18-11: MAXIMUM IDD vs. Fosc OVER VDD (HFINTOSC MODE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-12: TYPICAL IPD VS. VDD (SLEEP MODE, ALL PERIPHERALS DISABLED)

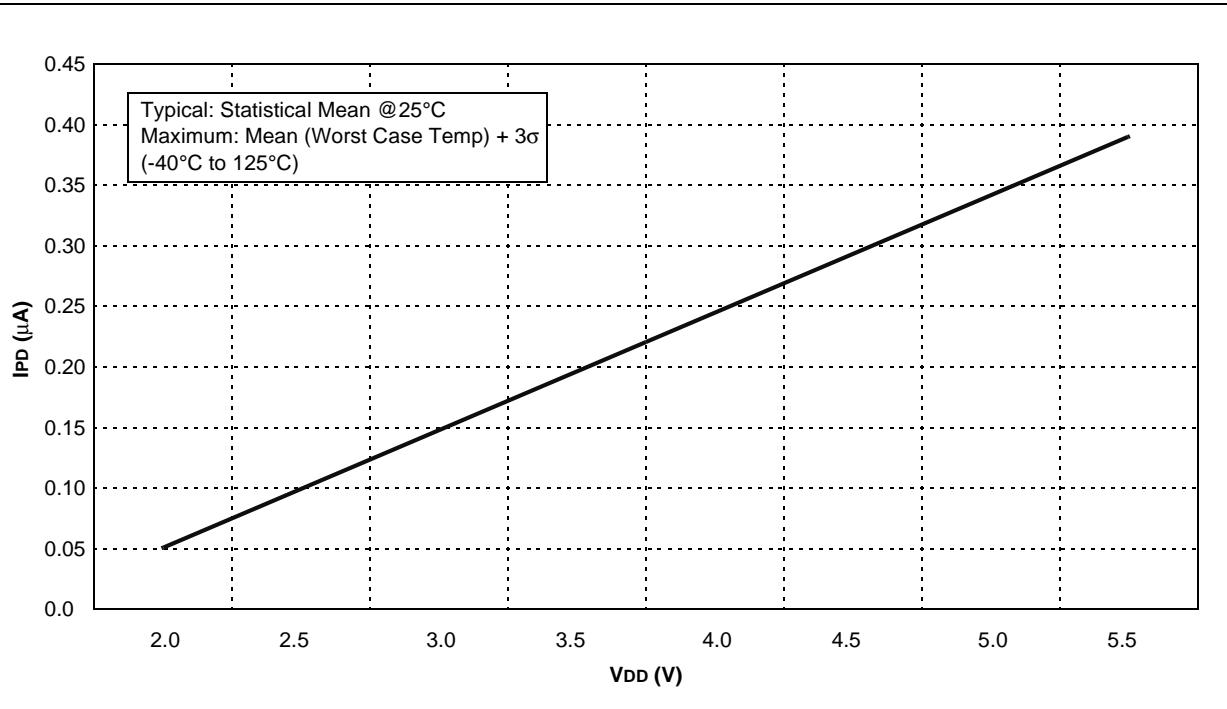
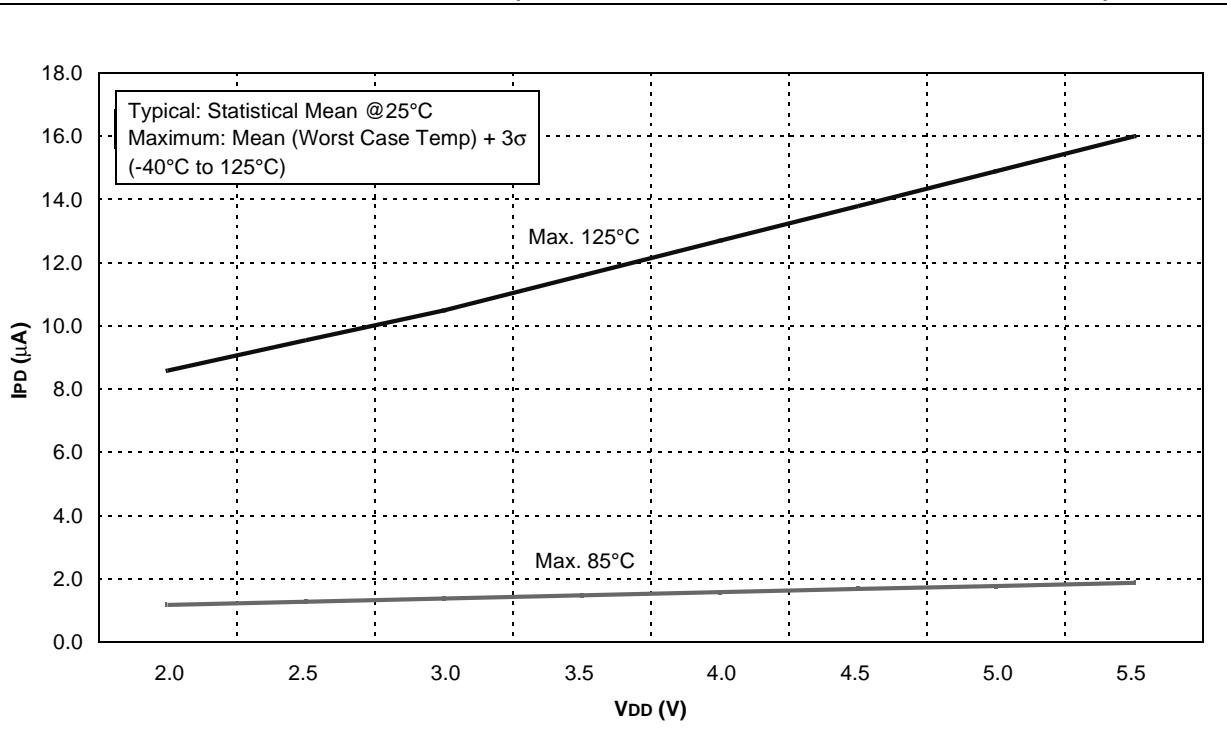


FIGURE 18-13: MAXIMUM IPD VS. VDD (SLEEP MODE, ALL PERIPHERALS DISABLED)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-14: COMPARATOR IPD VS. VDD (BOTH COMPARATORS ENABLED)

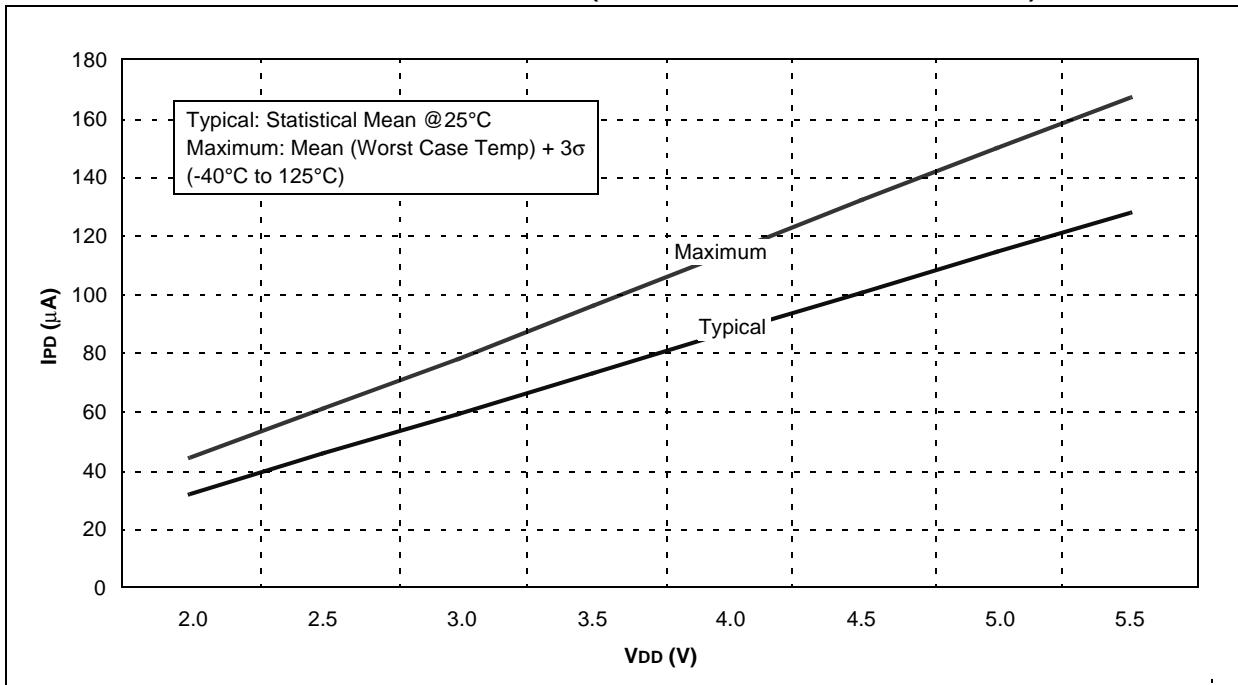
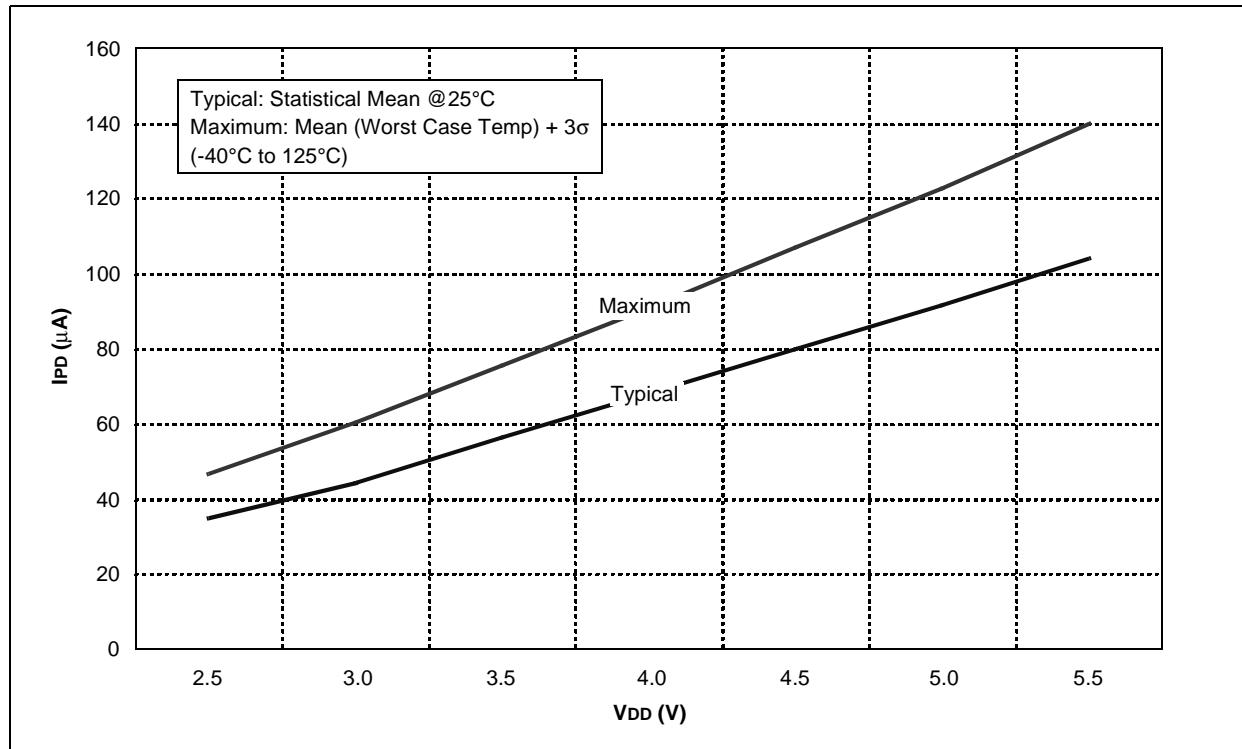


FIGURE 18-15: BOR IPD VS. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-16: TYPICAL WDT IPD VS. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

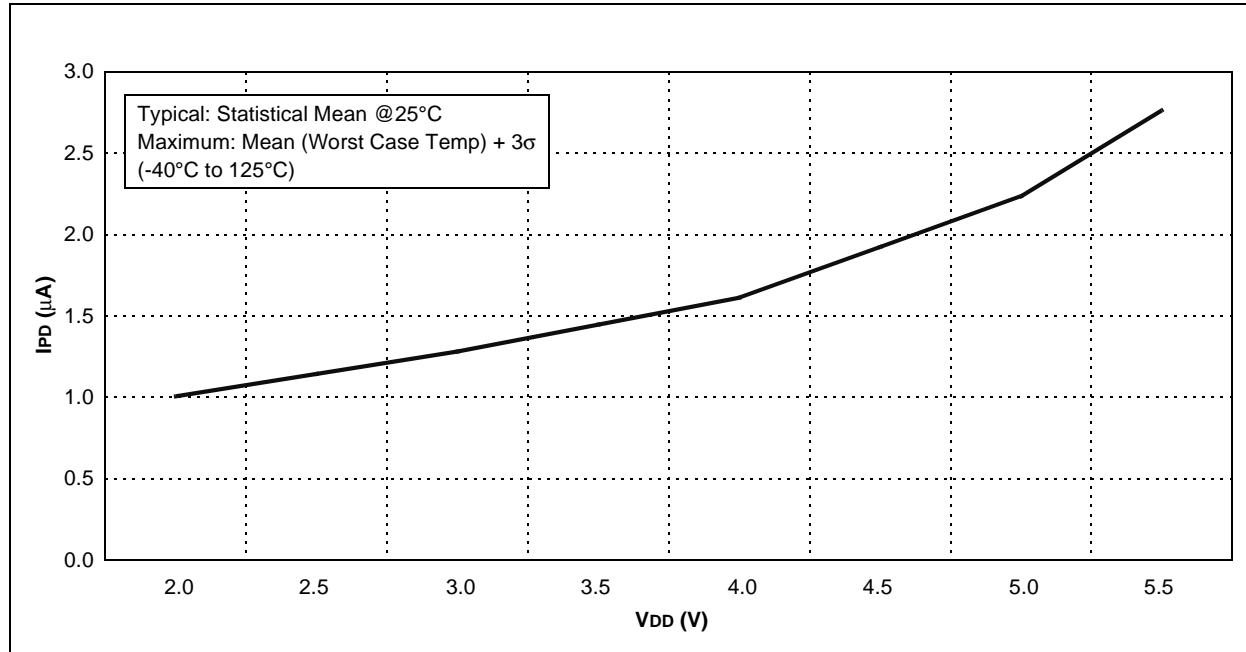
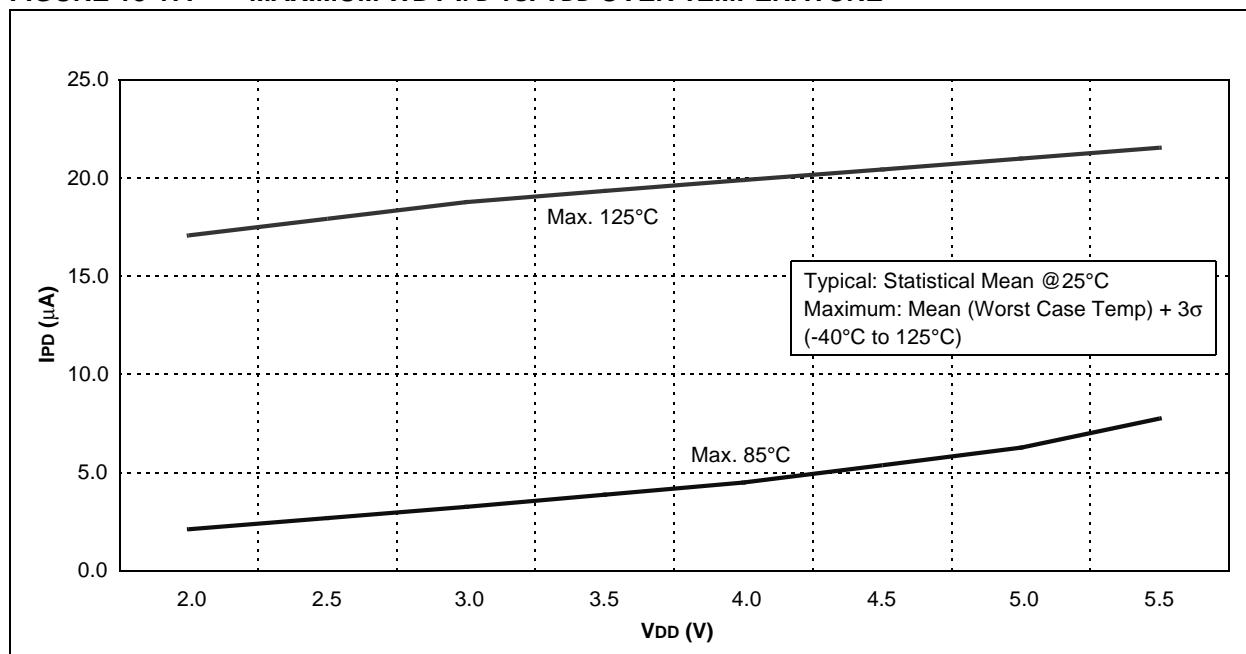


FIGURE 18-17: MAXIMUM WDT IPD VS. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-18: WDT PERIOD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

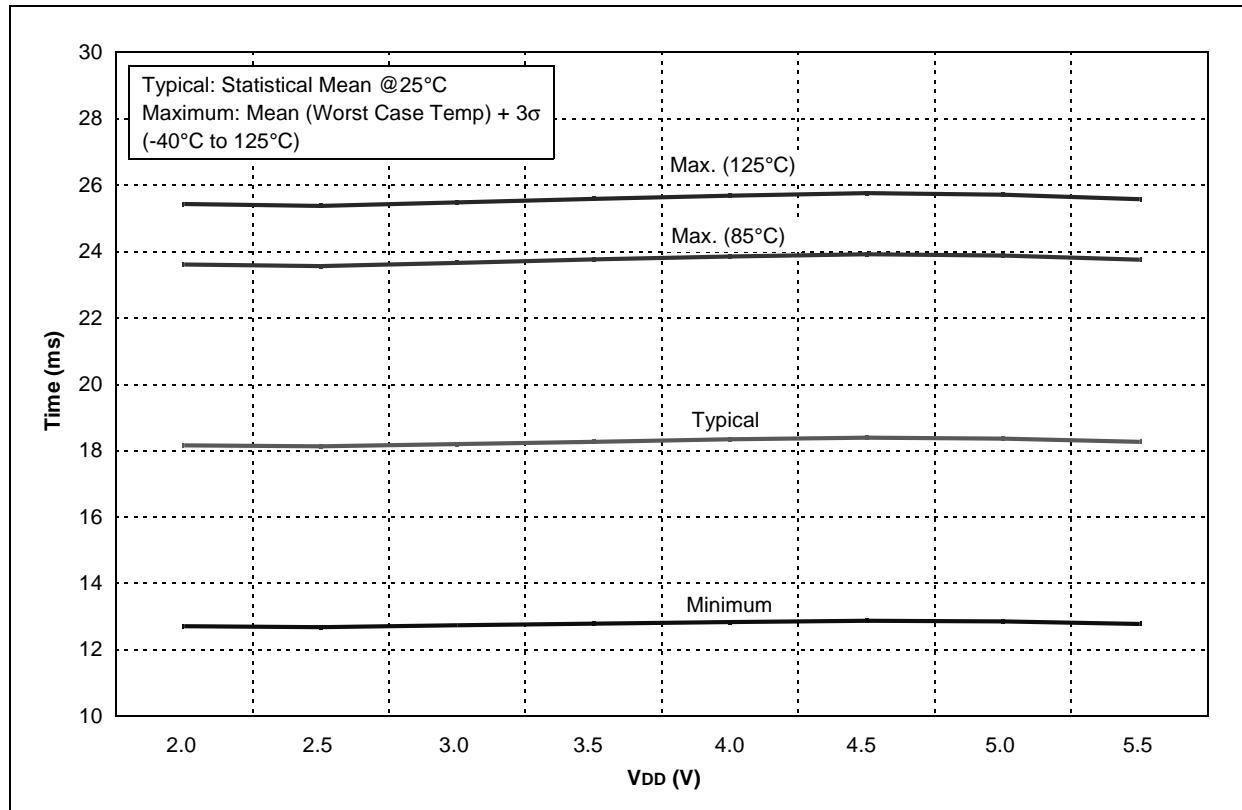
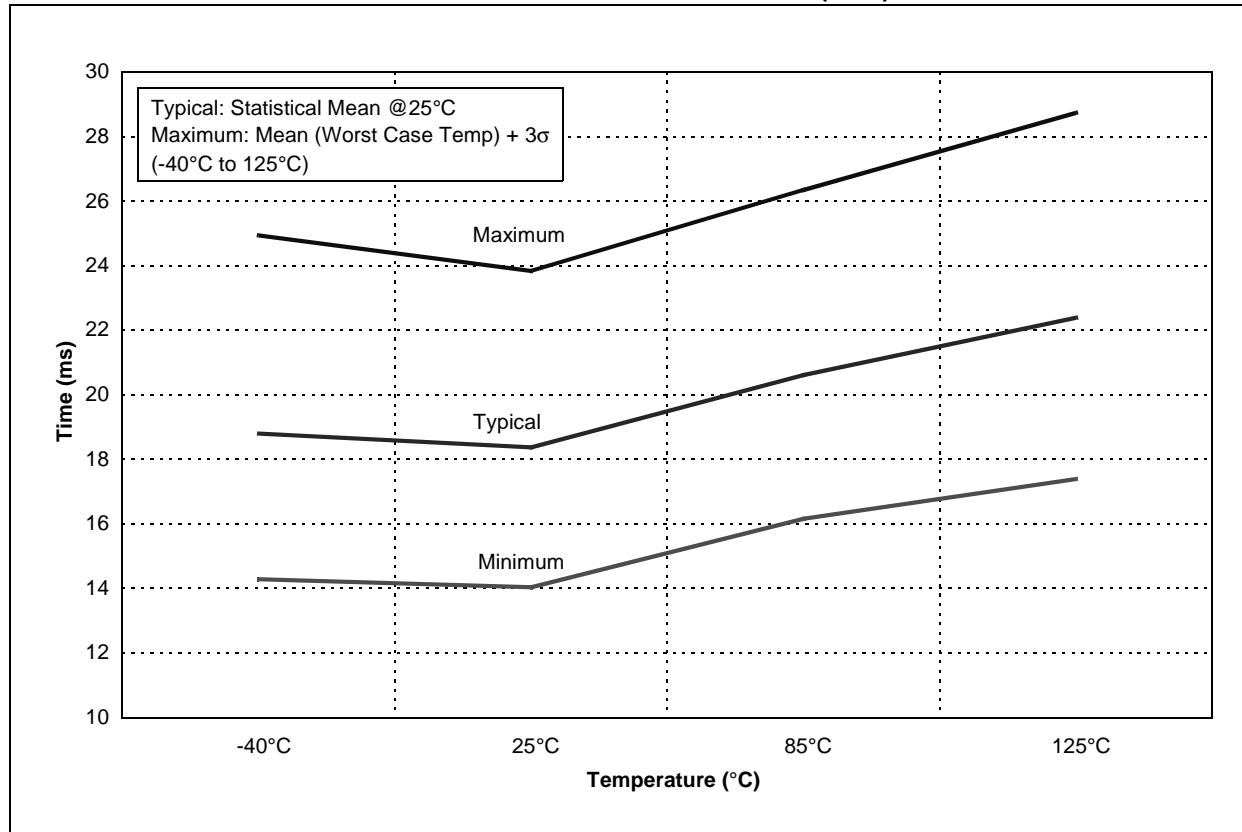


FIGURE 18-19: WDT PERIOD vs. TEMPERATURE OVER VDD (5.0V)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-20: CVREF IPD VS. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (HIGH RANGE)

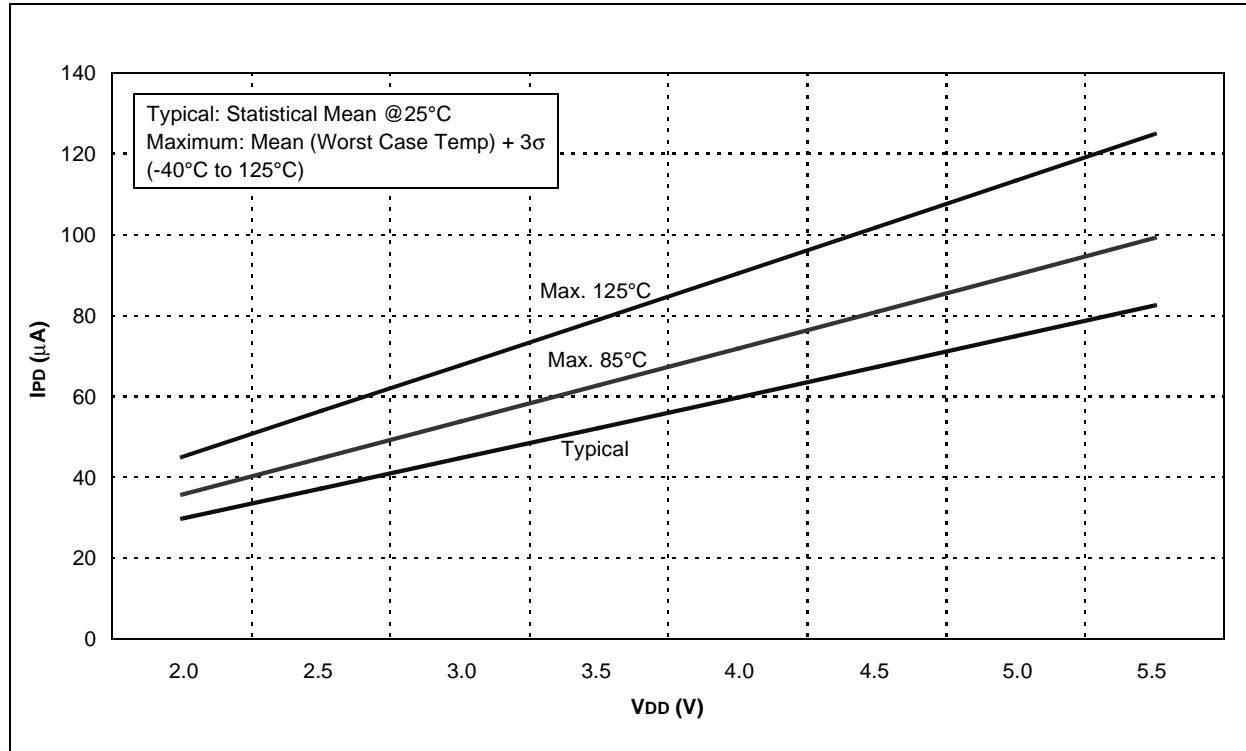
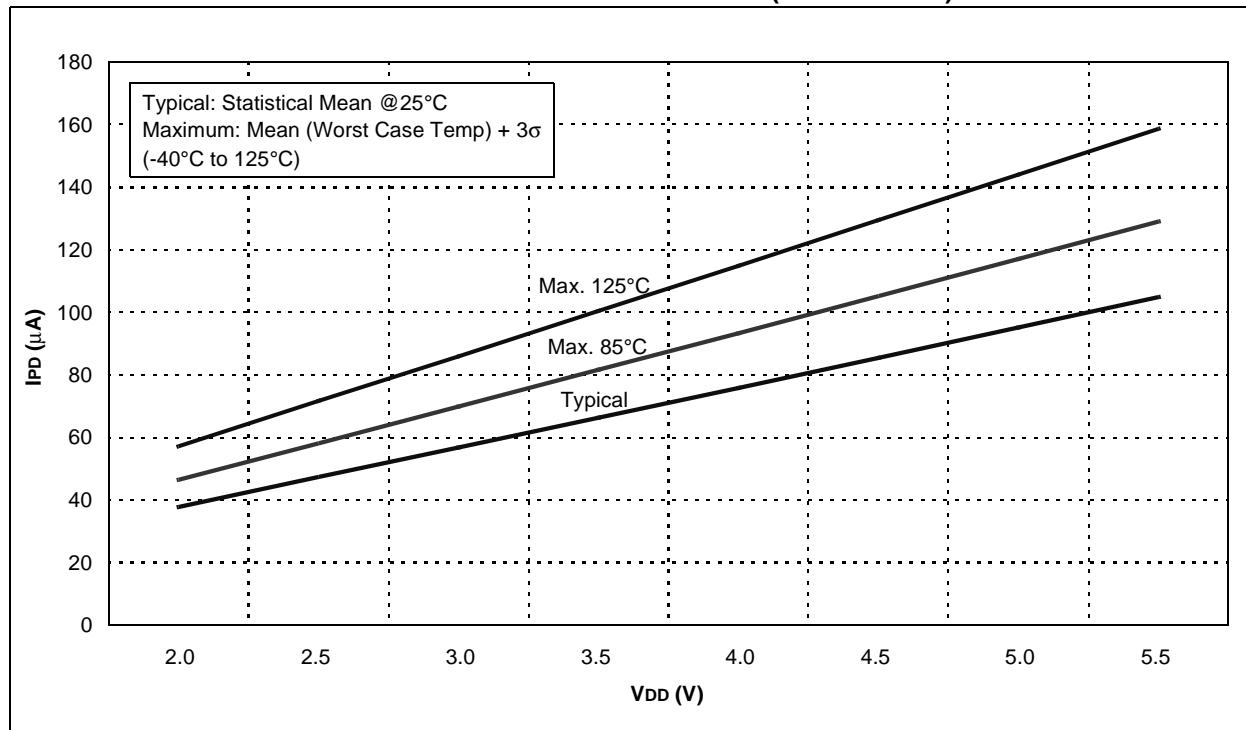


FIGURE 18-21: CVREF IPD VS. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (LOW RANGE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-22: VOL vs. IOL OVER TEMPERATURE (VDD = 3.0V)

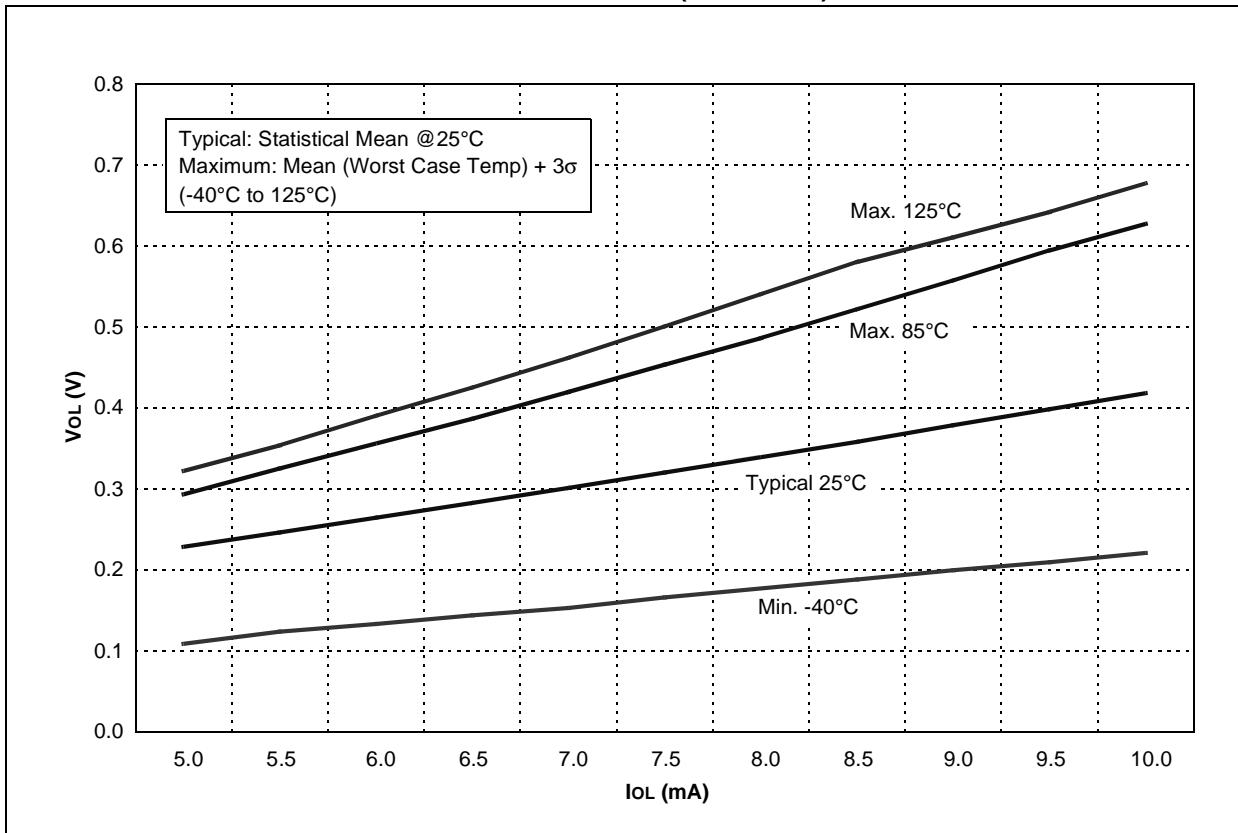
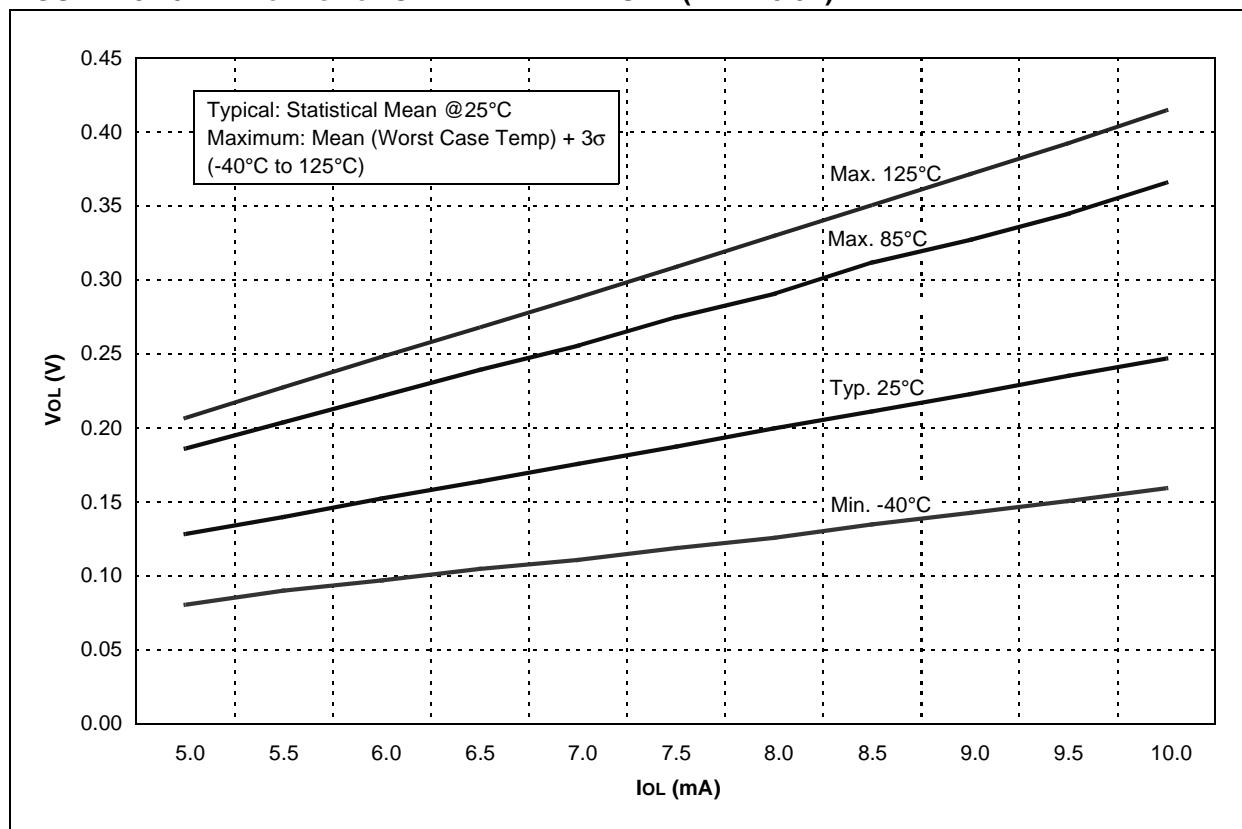


FIGURE 18-23: VOL vs. IOL OVER TEMPERATURE (VDD = 5.0V)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-24: V_{OH} vs. I_{OH} OVER TEMPERATURE (V_{DD} = 3.0V)

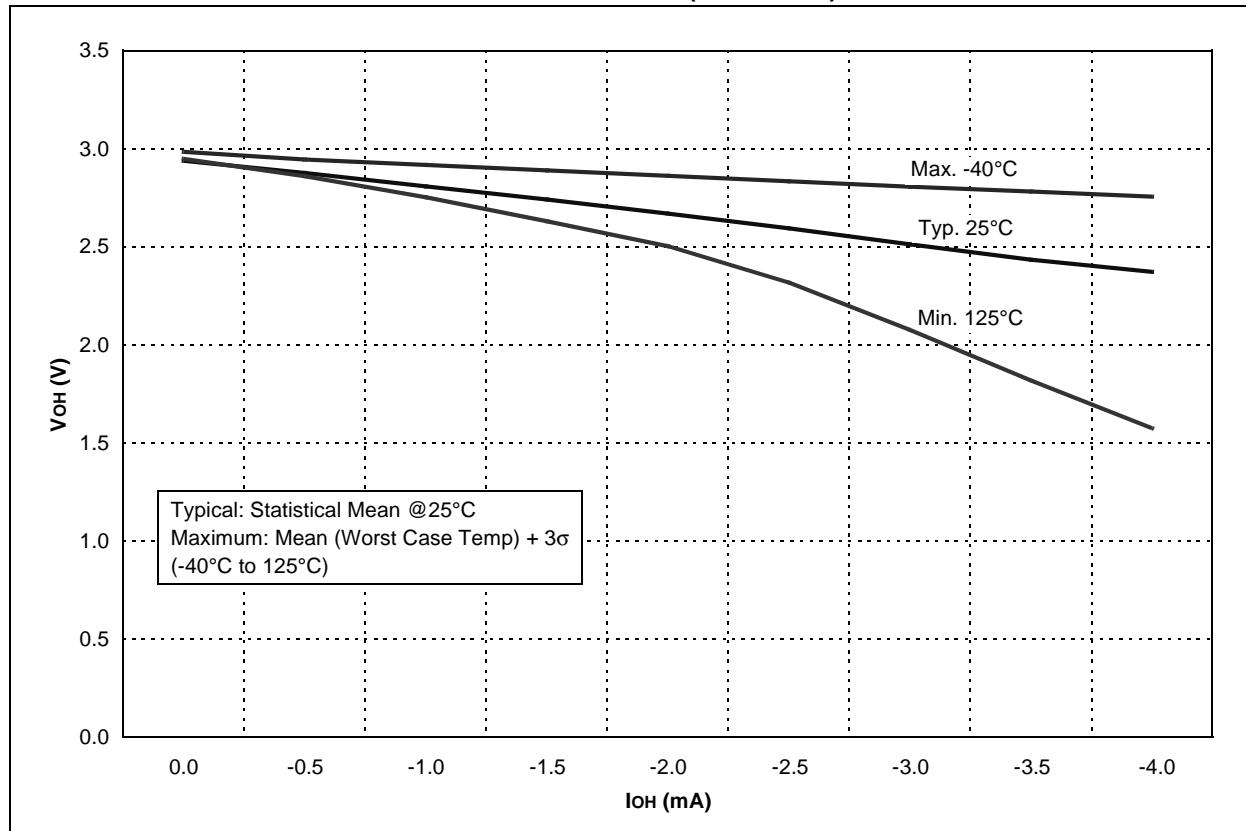
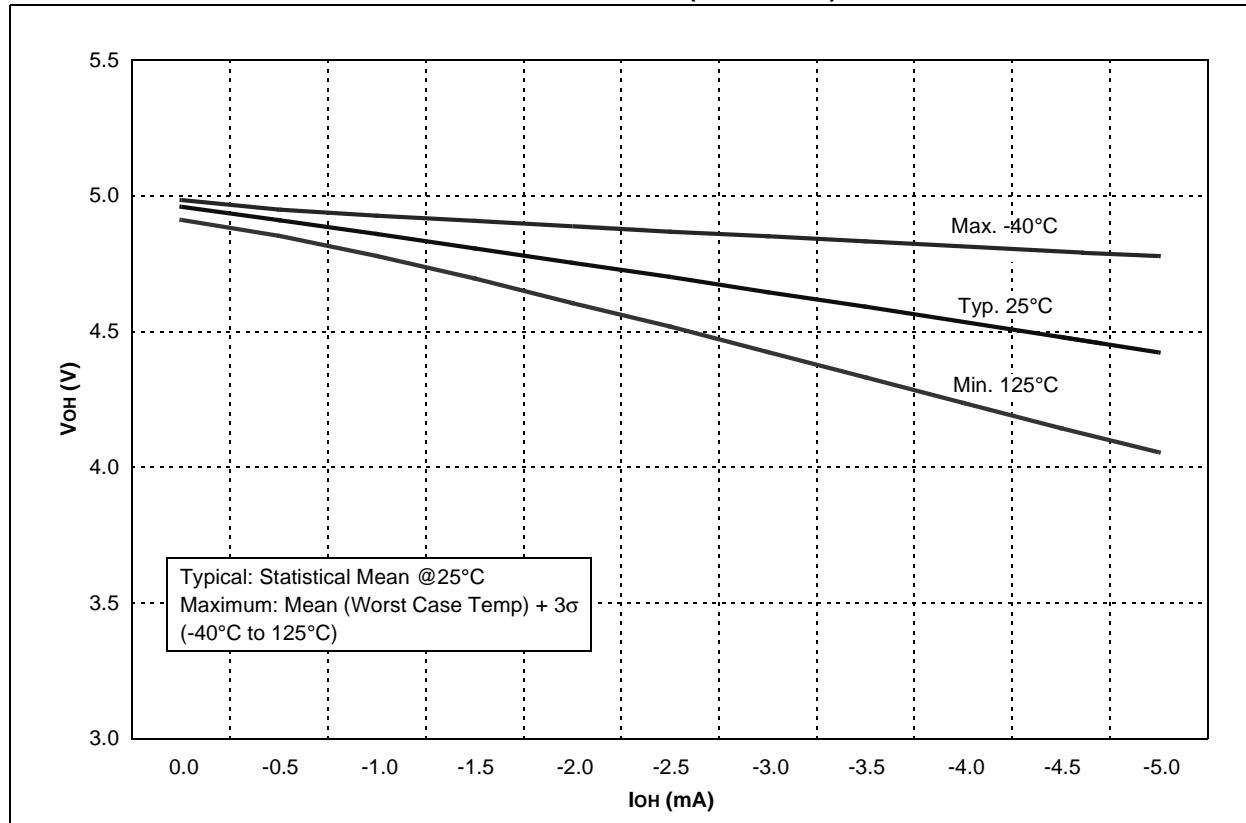


FIGURE 18-25: V_{OH} vs. I_{OH} OVER TEMPERATURE (V_{DD} = 5.0V)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-26: TTL INPUT THRESHOLD V_{IN} vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE

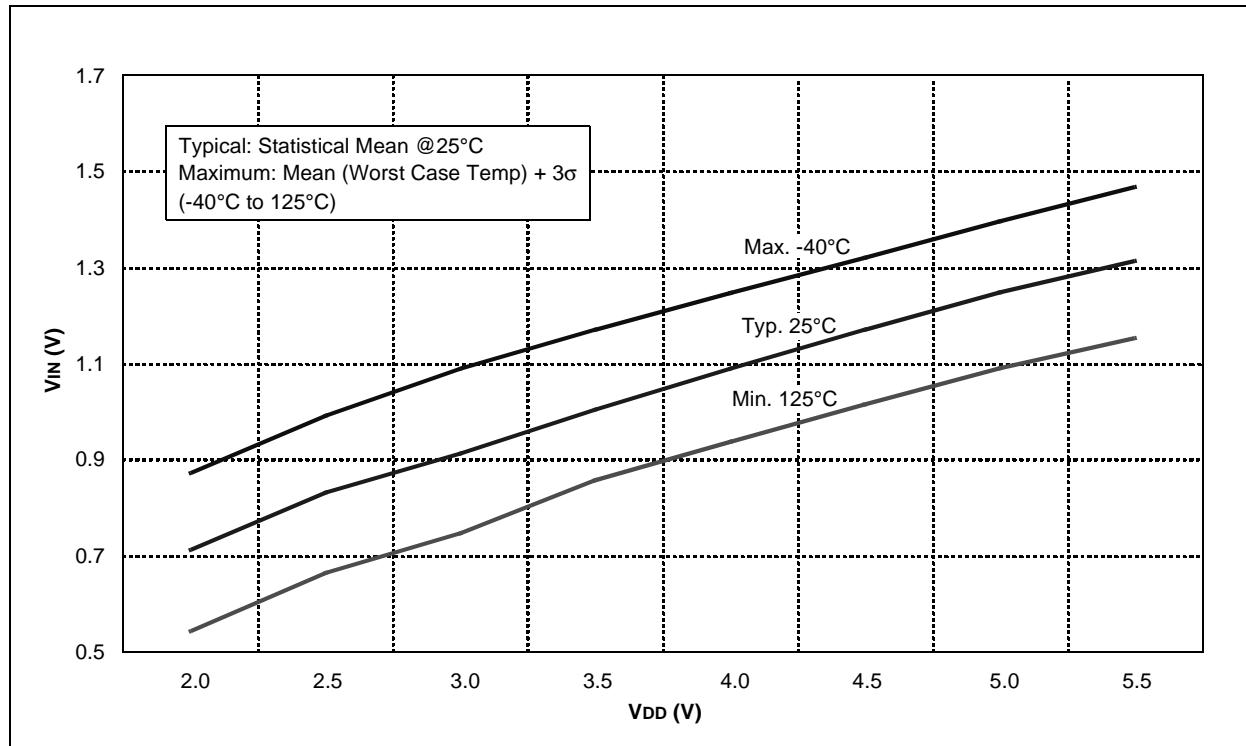
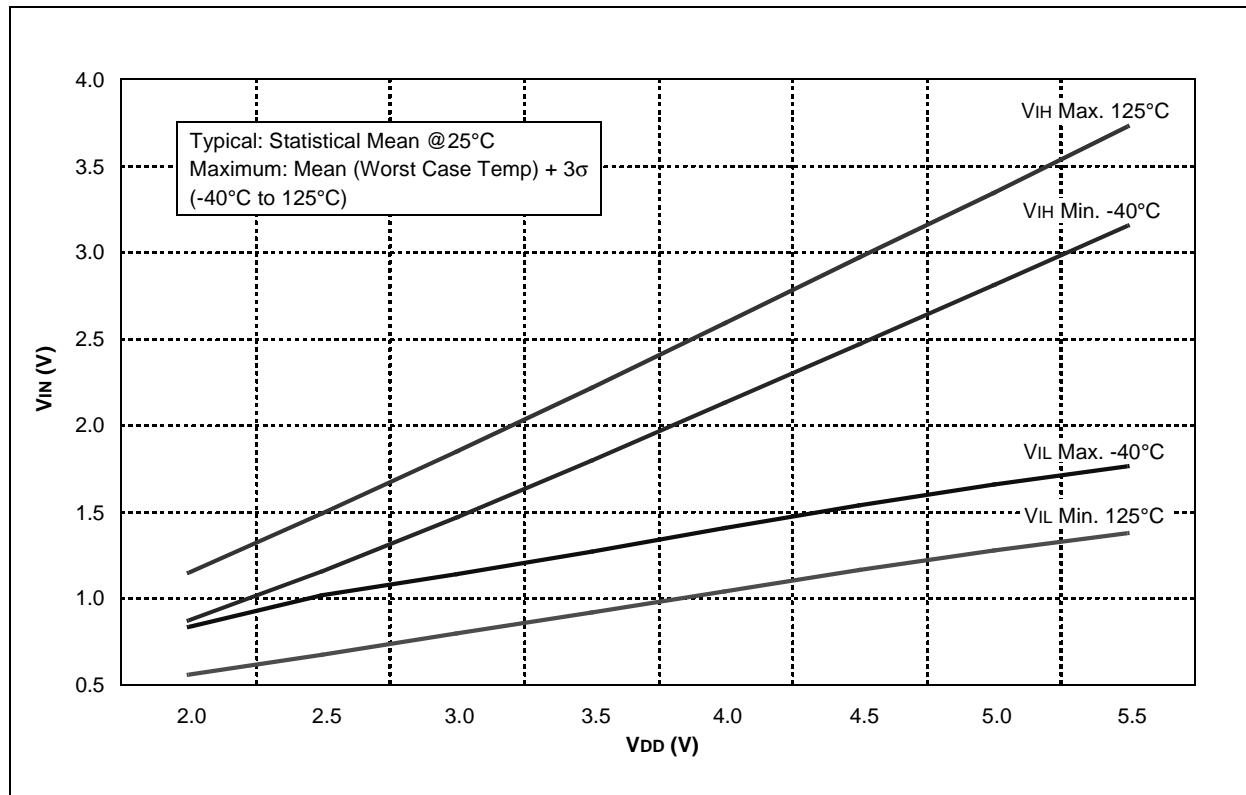


FIGURE 18-27: SCHMITT TRIGGER INPUT THRESHOLD V_{IN} vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-28: COMPARATOR RESPONSE TIME (RISING EDGE)

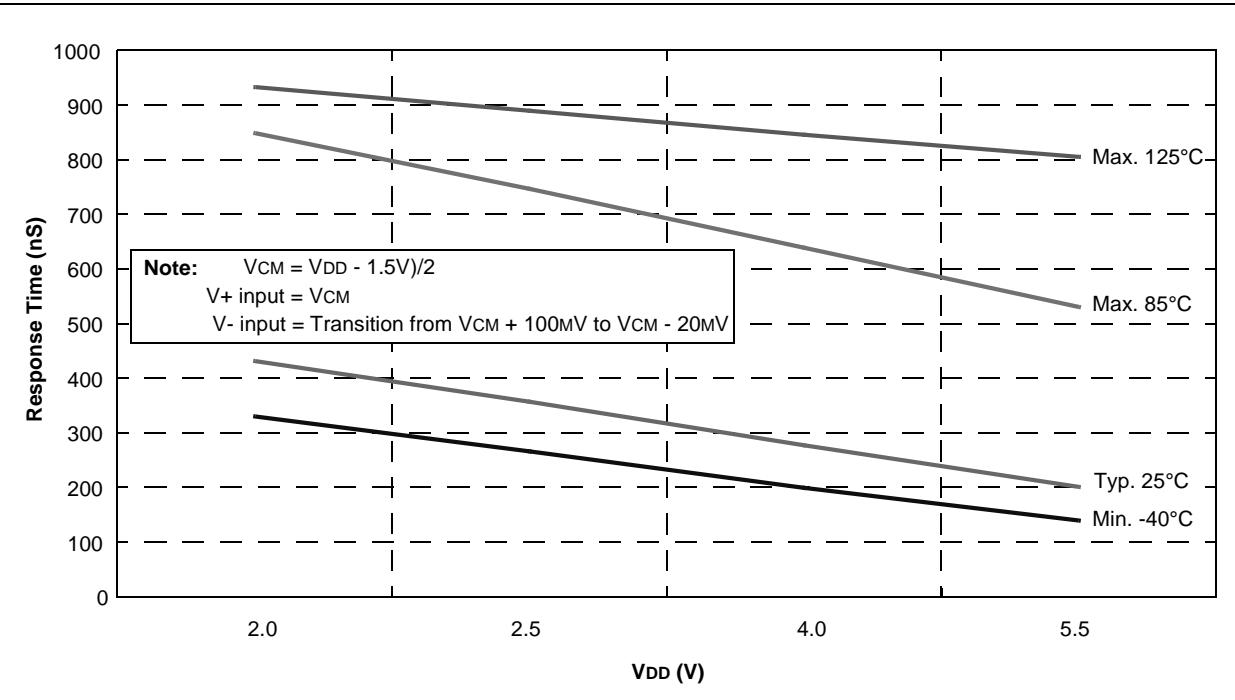
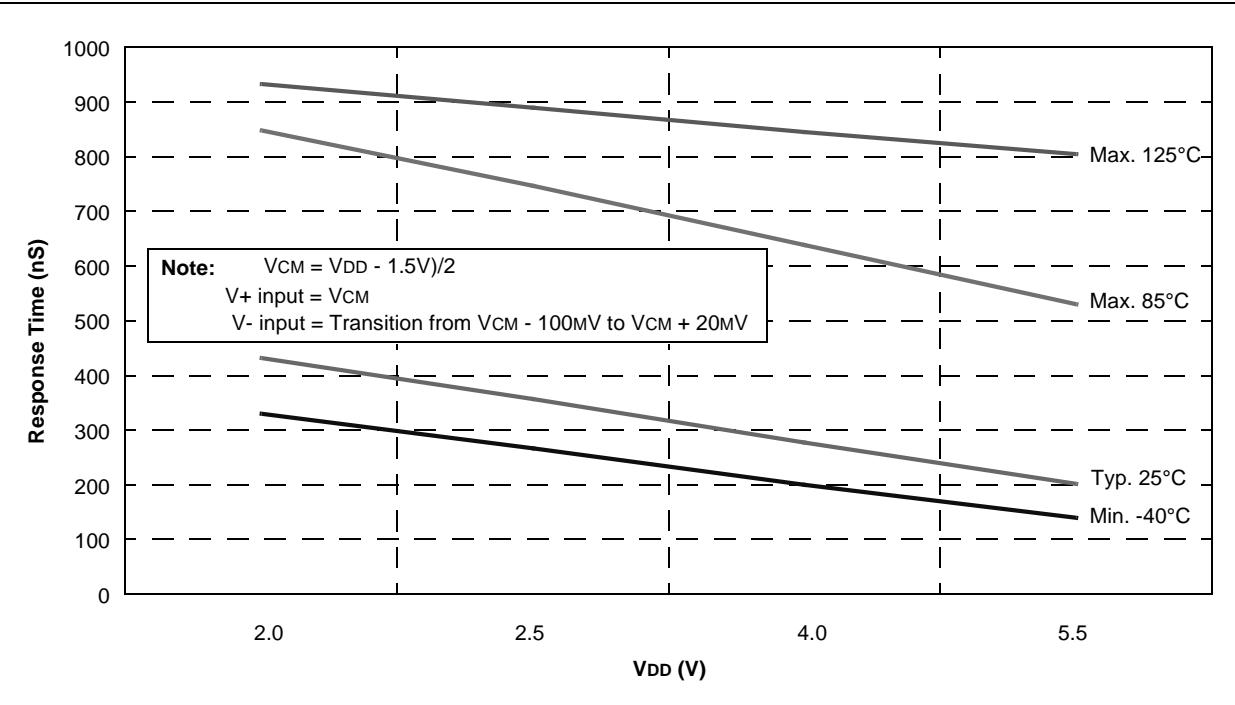


FIGURE 18-29: COMPARATOR RESPONSE TIME (FALLING EDGE)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-30: LFINTOSC FREQUENCY vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (31 kHz)

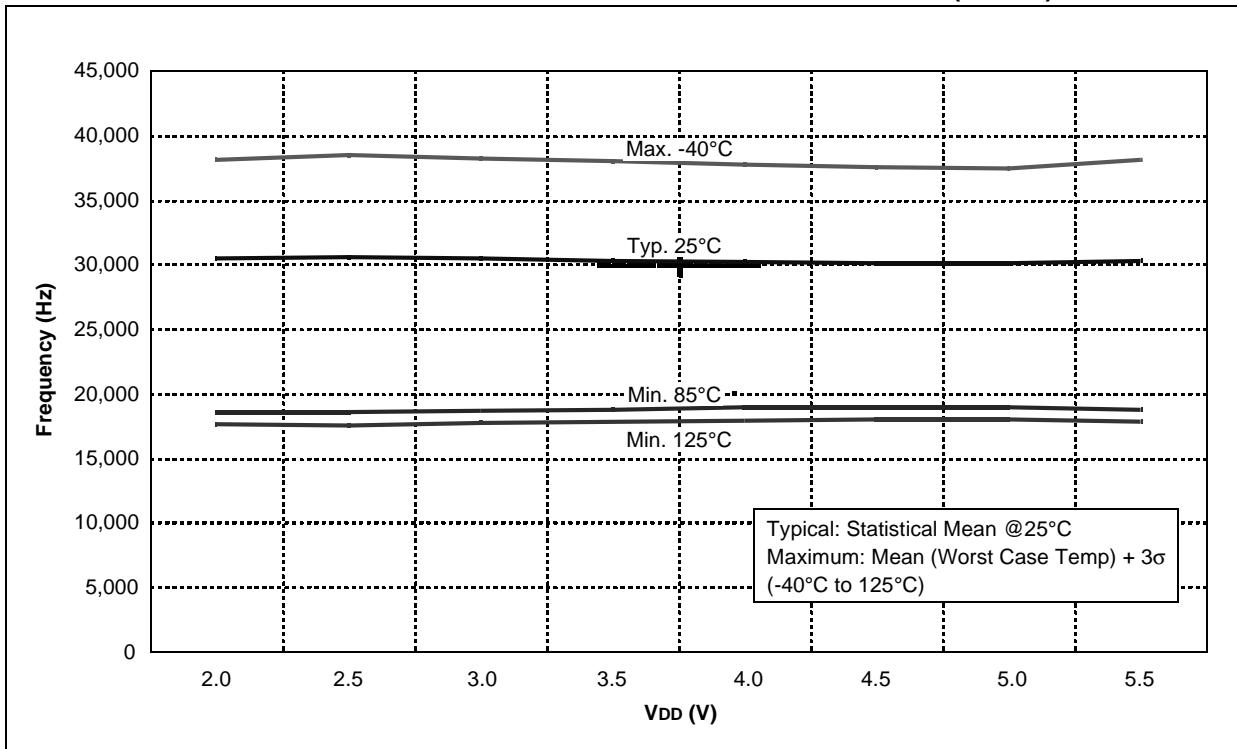
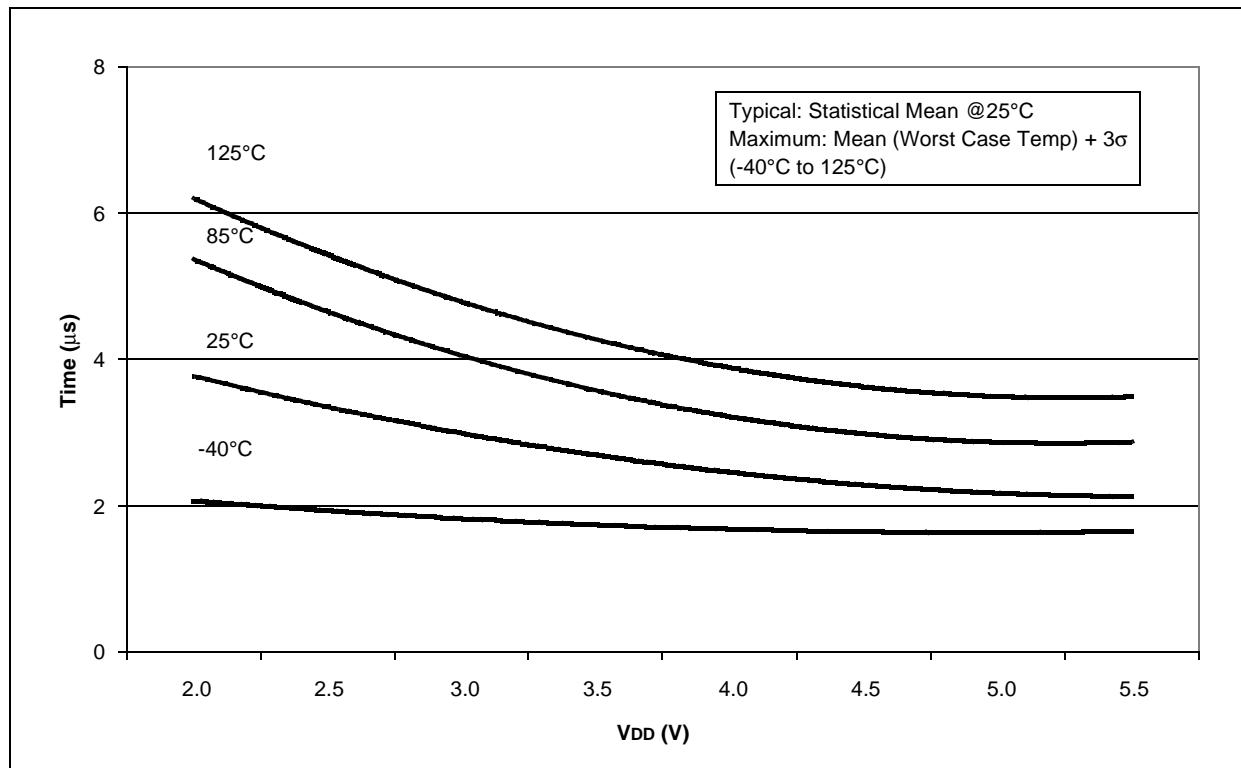


FIGURE 18-31: ADC CLOCK PERIOD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-32: TYPICAL HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE

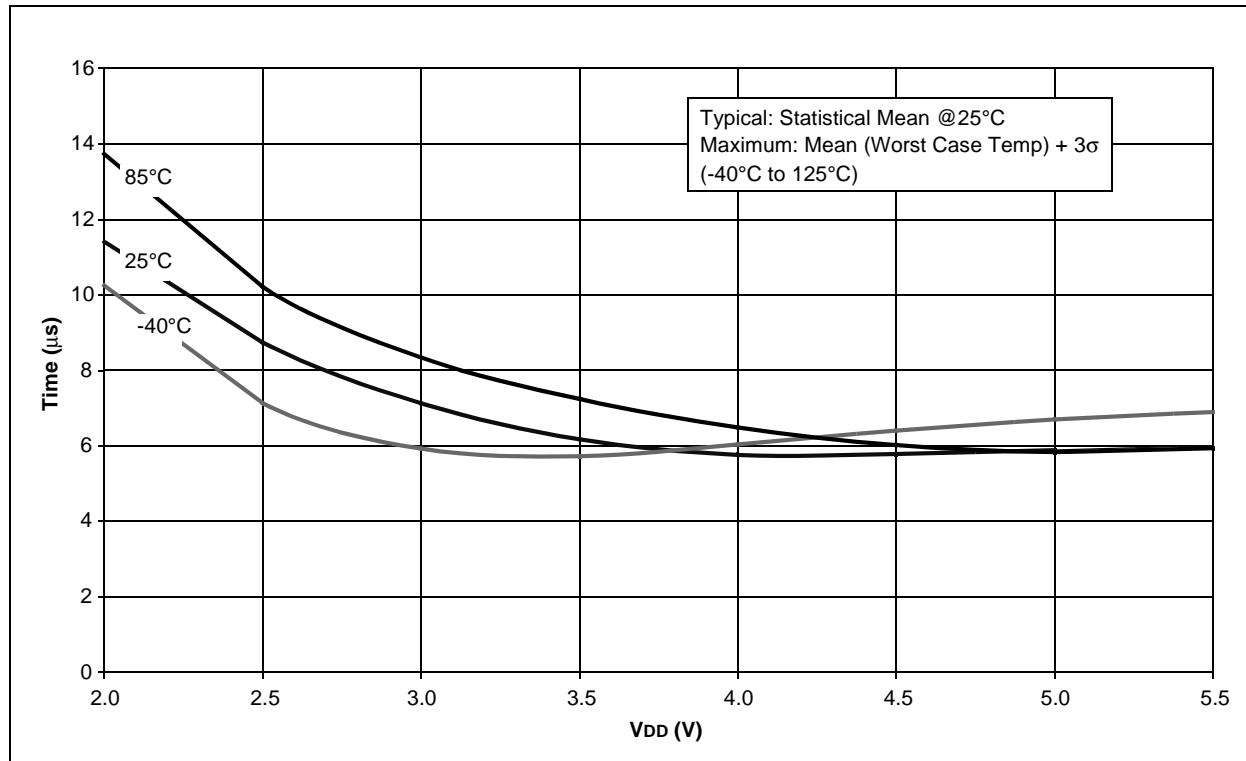
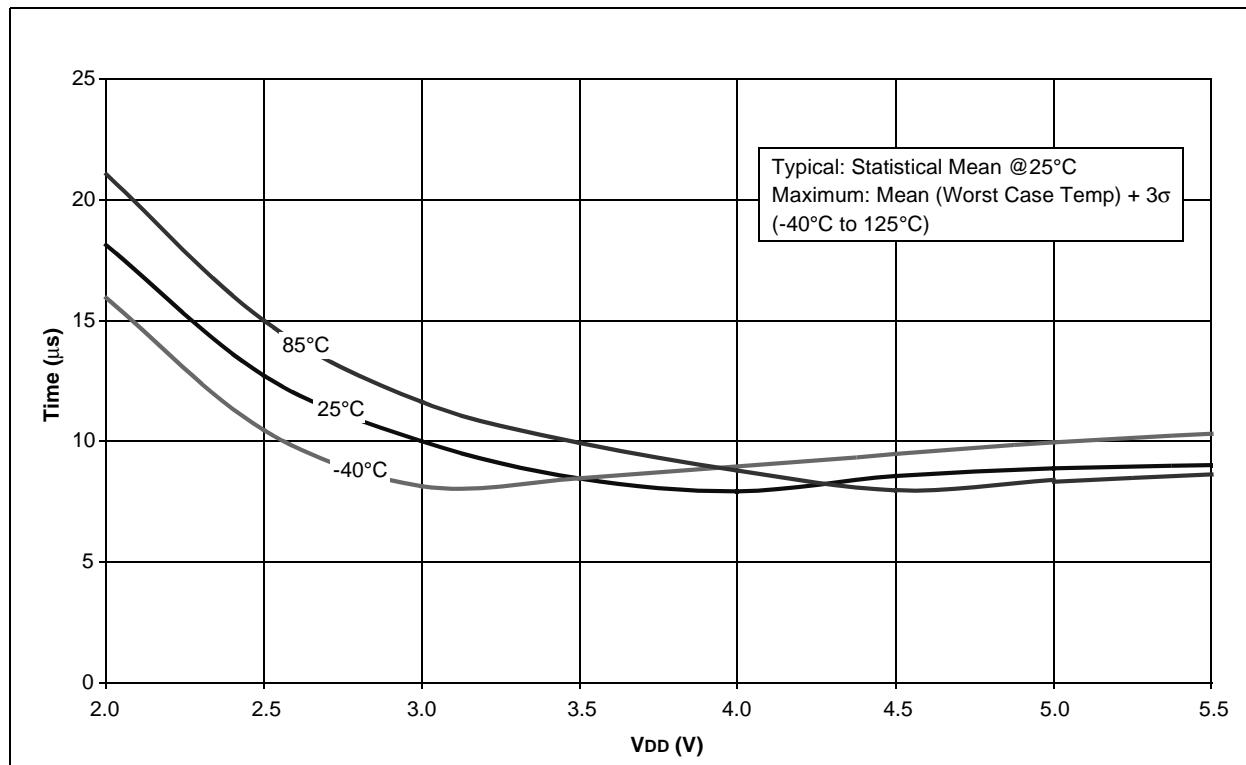


FIGURE 18-33: MAXIMUM HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-34: MINIMUM HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

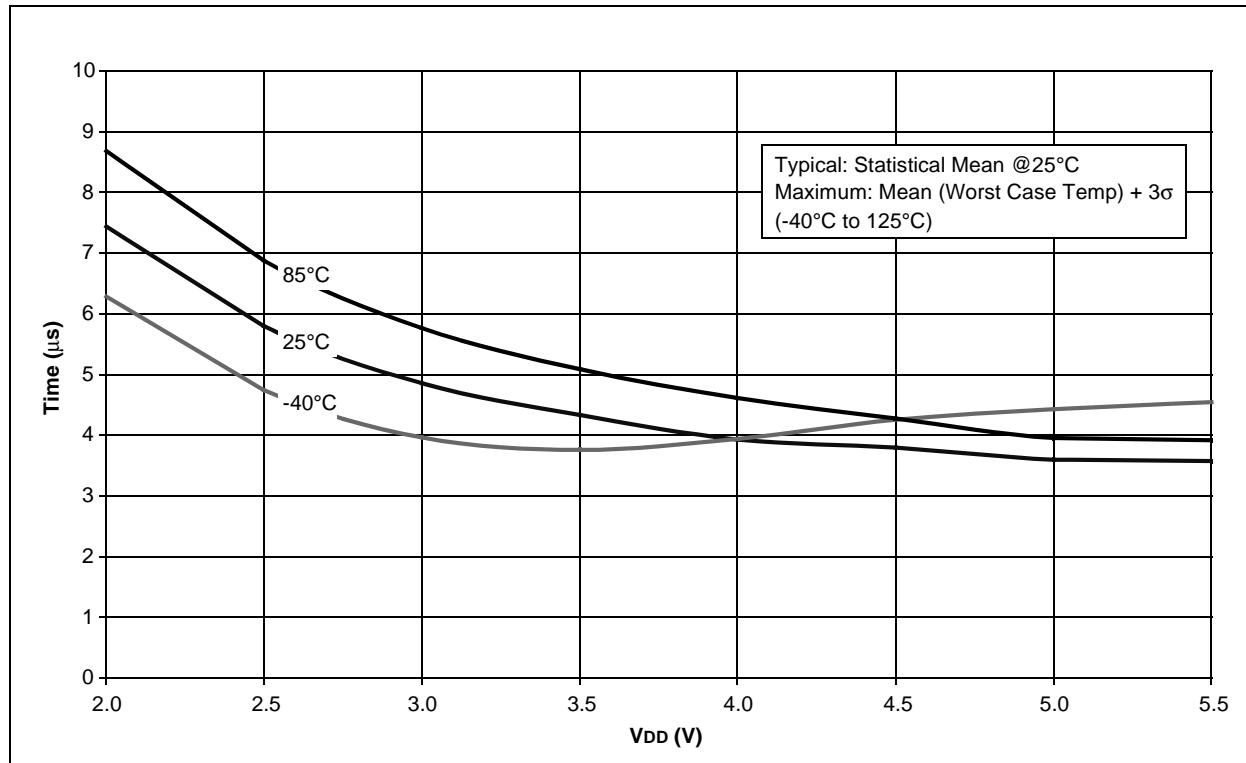
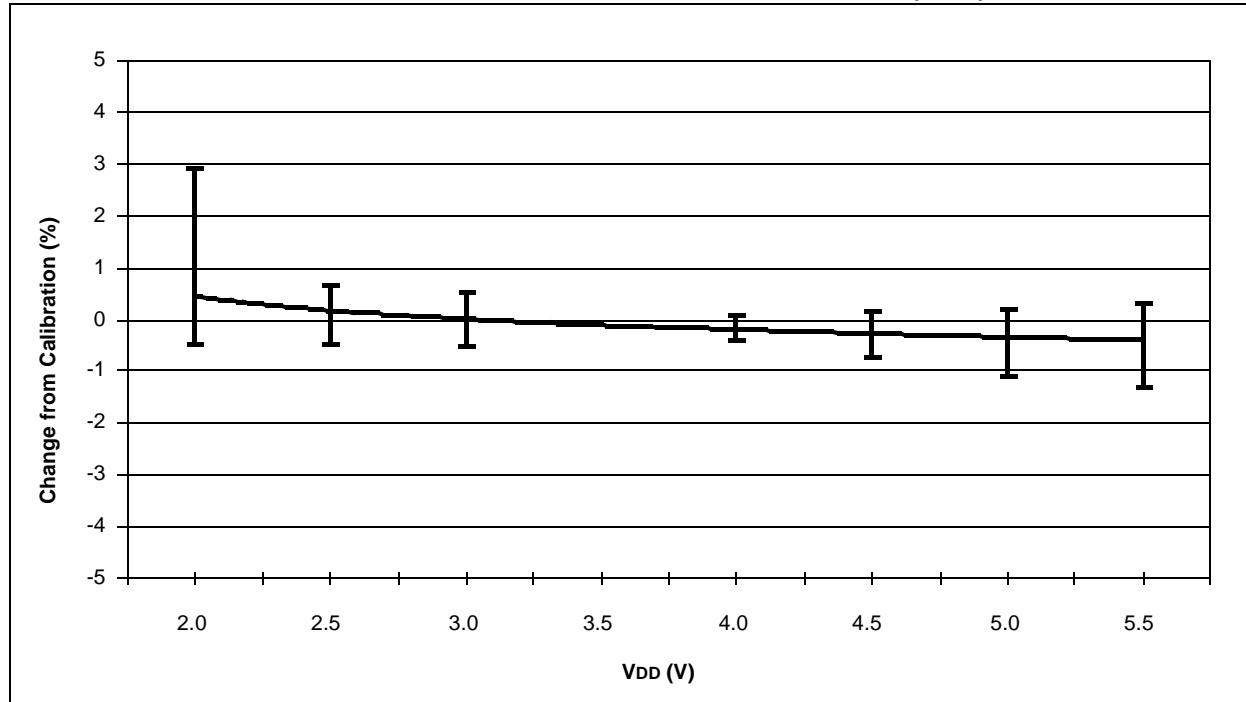


FIGURE 18-35: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. VDD (25°C)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-36: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE OVER DEVICE V_{DD} (85°C)

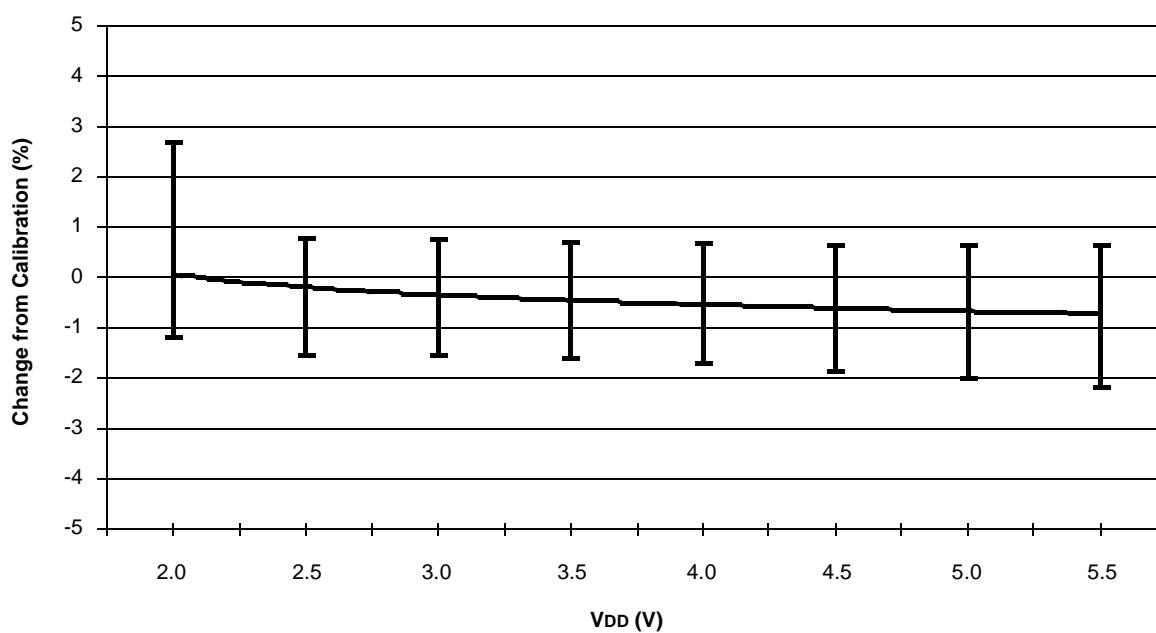
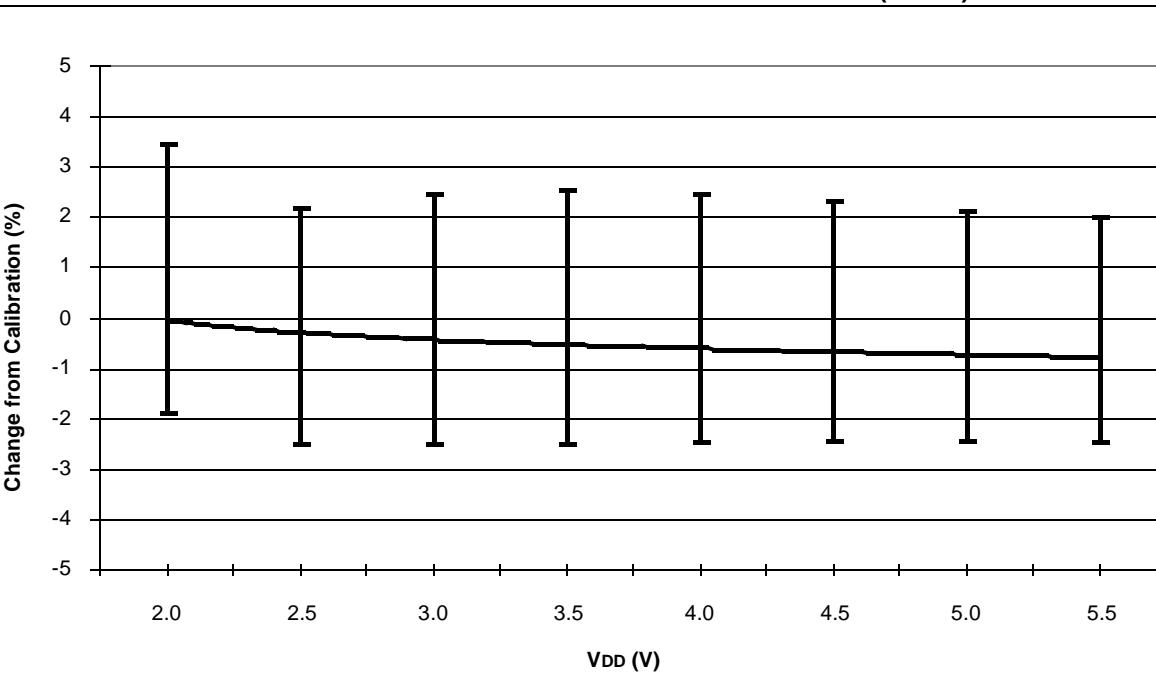
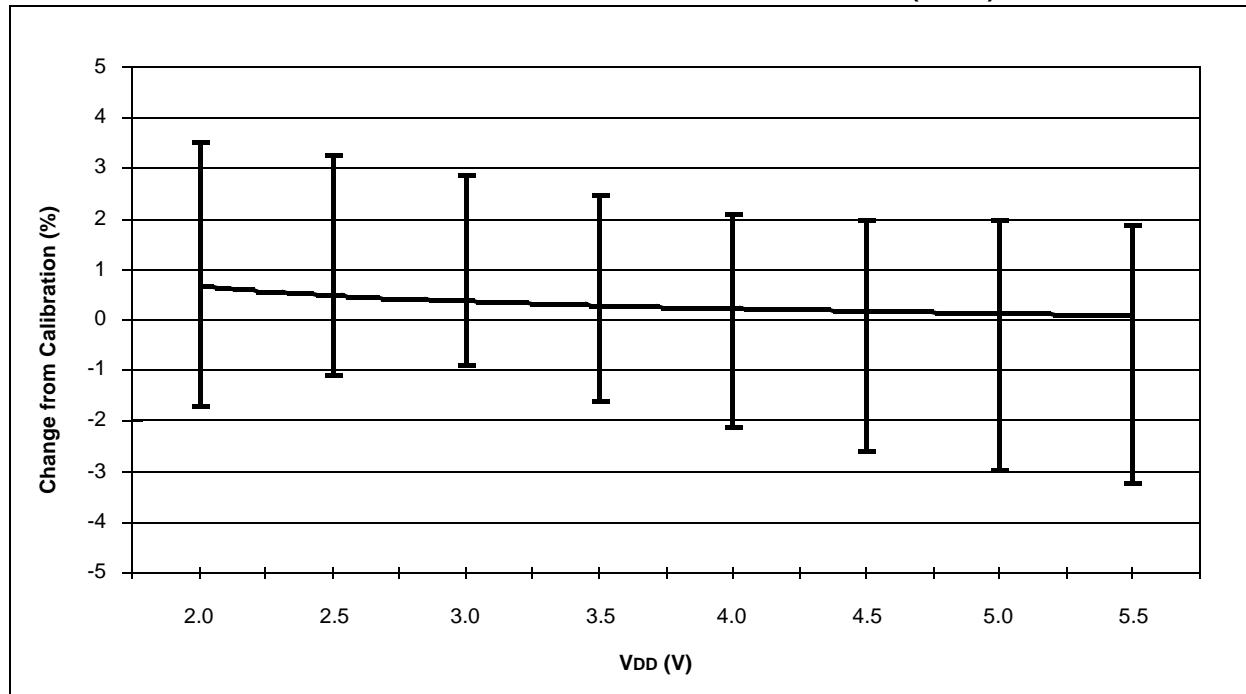


FIGURE 18-37: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. V_{DD} (125°C)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

FIGURE 18-38: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. VDD (-40°C)



PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

19.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

19.1 Package Marking Information

20-Lead PDIP



Example



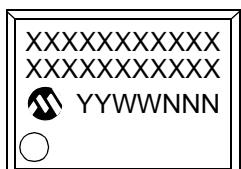
20-Lead SOIC (.300")



Example



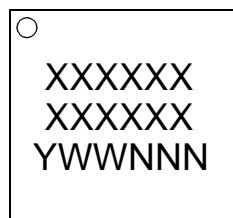
20-Lead SSOP



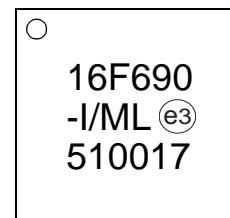
Example



20-Lead QFN



Example



Legend:

XX...X	Customer-specific information
Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')
NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code
(e3)	Pb-free JEDEC designator for Matte Tin (Sn)
*	This package is Pb-free. The Pb-free JEDEC designator (e3) can be found on the outer packaging for this package.

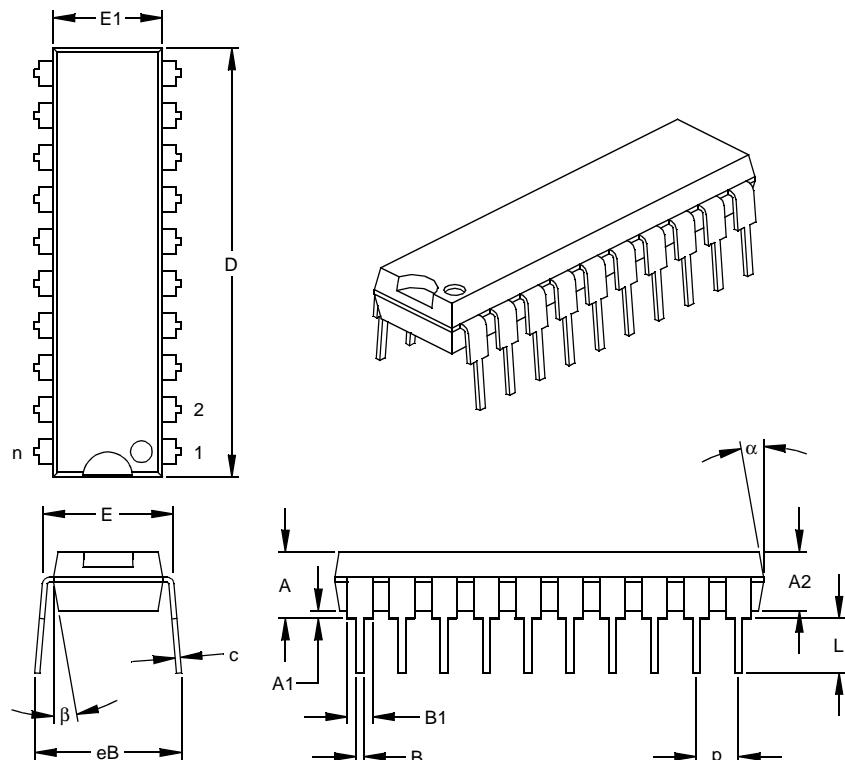
Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

19.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

20-Lead Plastic Dual In-line (P) – 300 mil Body (PDIP)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS			
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Number of Pins	n		20			20		
Pitch	p		.100			2.54		
Top to Seating Plane	A	.140	.155	.170	3.56	3.94	4.32	
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.115	.130	.145	2.92	3.30	3.68	
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38			
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.295	.310	.325	7.49	7.87	8.26	
Molded Package Width	E1	.240	.250	.260	6.10	6.35	6.60	
Overall Length	D	1.025	1.033	1.040	26.04	26.24	26.42	
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.120	.130	.140	3.05	3.30	3.56	
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38	
Upper Lead Width	B1	.055	.060	.065	1.40	1.52	1.65	
Lower Lead Width	B	.014	.018	.022	0.36	0.46	0.56	
Overall Row Spacing	§	eB	.310	.370	.430	7.87	9.40	10.92
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15	
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15	

* Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

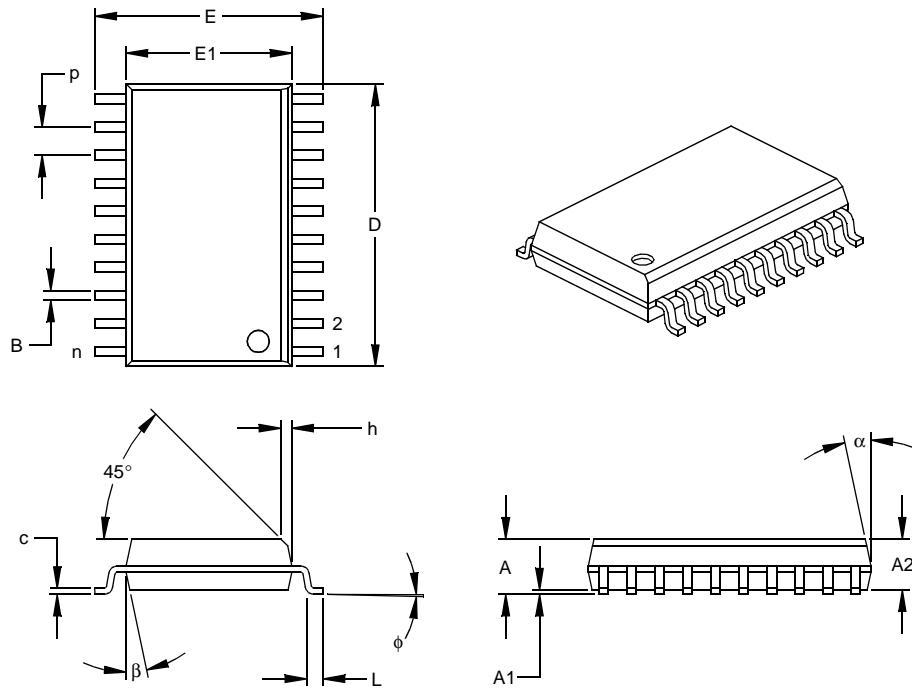
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

JEDEC Equivalent: MS-001

Drawing No. C04-019

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

20-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) – Wide, 300 mil Body (SOIC)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n	20			20		
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Overall Height	A	.093	.099	.104	2.36	2.50	2.64
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.088	.091	.094	2.24	2.31	2.39
Standoff §	A1	.004	.008	.012	0.10	0.20	0.30
Overall Width	E	.394	.407	.420	10.01	10.34	10.67
Molded Package Width	E1	.291	.295	.299	7.39	7.49	7.59
Overall Length	D	.496	.504	.512	12.60	12.80	13.00
Chamfer Distance	h	.010	.020	.029	0.25	0.50	0.74
Foot Length	L	.016	.033	.050	0.41	0.84	1.27
Foot Angle	φ	0	4	8	0	4	8
Lead Thickness	c	.009	.011	.013	0.23	0.28	0.33
Lead Width	B	.014	.017	.020	0.36	0.42	0.51
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	12	15	0	12	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	12	15	0	12	15

* Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

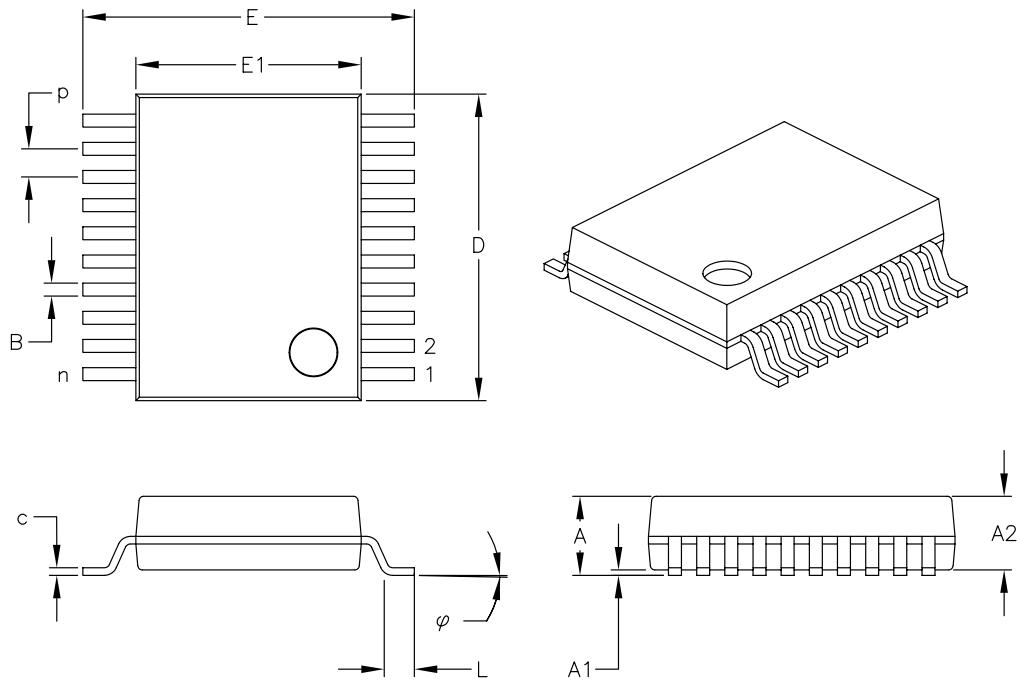
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

JEDEC Equivalent: MS-013

Drawing No. C04-094

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

20-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) – 209 mil Body, 5.30 mm (SSOP)



Dimension	Units	INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		20			20	
Pitch	p		.026			0.65	
Overall Height	A	—	—	.079	—	—	2.00
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.065	.069	.073	1.65	1.75	1.85
Standoff	A1	.002	—	—	0.05	—	—
Overall Width	E	.291	.307	.323	7.40	7.80	8.20
Molded Package Width	E1	.201	.207	.212	5.11	5.25	5.38
Overall Length	D	.272	.283	.295	6.90	7.20	7.50
Foot Length	L	.022	.030	.037	0.55	0.75	0.95
Lead Thickness	c	.004	—	.010	0.09	—	0.25
Foot Angle	φ	0°	4°	8°	0°	4°	8°
Lead Width	B	.009	—	.015	0.22	—	0.38

*Controlling Parameter

Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

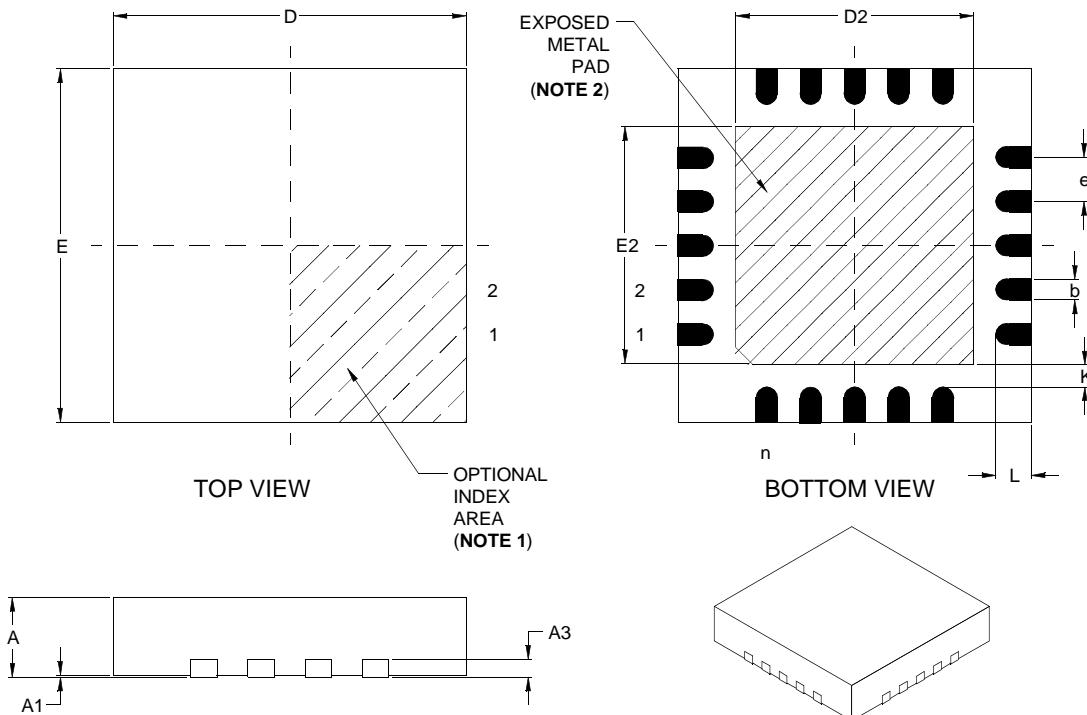
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-150

Drawing No. C04-072

Revised 04-28-06

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

20-Lead Plastic Quad Flat No Lead Package (ML) 4x4x0.9 mm Body (QFN) – Saw Singulated



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		20			20	
Pitch	e		.020 BSC			0.50 BSC	
Overall Height	A	.031	.035	.039	0.80	0.90	1.00
Standoff	A1	.000	.001	.002	0.00	0.02	0.05
Contact Thickness	A3	.008 REF			0.20 REF		
Overall Width	E	.157 BSC			4.00 BSC		
Exposed Pad Width	E2	.102	.106	.110	2.60	2.70	2.80
Overall Length	D	.157 BSC			4.00 BSC		
Exposed Pad Length	D2	.102	.106	.110	2.60	2.70	2.80
Contact Width	b	.007	.010	.012	0.18	0.25	0.30
Contact Length §	L	.012	.016	.020	0.30	0.40	0.50
Contact-to-Exposed Pad §	K	.008	—	—	0.20	—	—

* Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Exposed pad varies according to die attach paddle size.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

See ASME Y14.5M

REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

See ASME Y14.5M

JEDEC equivalent: Not Registered

Drawing No. C04-126

Revised 09-12-05

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

APPENDIX A: DATA SHEET REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (March 2005)

This is a new data sheet.

Revision B (May 2006)

Added 631/677 part numbers; Added pin summary tables after pin diagrams; Incorporated Golden Chapters.

Revision C (July 2006)

Revised Section 4.2.1, ANSEL and ANSELH Registers; Register 4-3, ANSEL Analog Select; Added Register 4-4, ANSELH Analog Select High; Section 11.3.2, Revised CCP1<1:0> to DC1B<1:0>; Section 11.3.7, Number 4 - Revised CCP1 to DC1B; Figure 11-5, Revised CCP1 to DC1B; Table 11-4, Revised P1M to P1M<1:0>; Section 12.3.1, Revised Paragraph 3; Revised Note 2; Revised Figure 12-6 Title.

APPENDIX B: MIGRATING FROM OTHER PICmicro® DEVICES

This discusses some of the issues in migrating from other PICmicro devices to the PIC16F6XX Family of devices.

B.1 PIC16F676 to PIC16F685

TABLE B-1: FEATURE COMPARISON

Feature	PIC16F676	PIC16F685
Max Operating Speed	20 MHz	20 MHz
Max Program Memory (Words)	1024	4096
SRAM (bytes)	64	128
A/D Resolution	10-bit	10-bit
Data EEPROM (Bytes)	128	256
Timers (8/16-bit)	1/1	2/1
Oscillator Modes	8	8
Brown-out Reset	Y	Y
Internal Pull-ups	RA0/1/2/4/5	RA0/1/2/4/5, MCLR
Interrupt-on-change	RA0/1/2/3/4/5	RA0/1/2/3/4/5
Comparator	1	2
ECCP+	N	Y
Ultra Low-Power Wake-up	N	Y
Extended WDT	N	Y
Software Control Option of WDT/BOR	N	Y
INTOSC Frequencies	4 MHz	31 kHz-8 MHz
Clock Switching	N	Y

Note: This device has been designed to perform to the parameters of its data sheet. It has been tested to an electrical specification designed to determine its conformance with these parameters. Due to process differences in the manufacture of this device, this device may have different performance characteristics than its earlier version. These differences may cause this device to perform differently in your application than the earlier version of this device.

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

NOTES:

INDEX

A

A/D

Specifications.....	252, 253, 254
Absolute Maximum Ratings	227
AC Characteristics	
Industrial and Extended	238
Load Conditions	237
ACK pulse	184
ADC	107
Acquisition Requirements	116
Associated registers.....	118
Block Diagram.....	107
Calculating Acquisition Time.....	116
Channel Selection.....	108
Configuration.....	108
Configuring Interrupt	111
Conversion Clock.....	108
Conversion Procedure	111
Internal Sampling Switch (Rss) Impedance	116
Interrupts.....	109
Operation	111
Operation During Sleep	111
Port Configuration	108
Reference Voltage (VREF).....	108
Result Formatting.....	110
Source Impedance.....	116
Special Event Trigger.....	111
Starting an A/D Conversion	110
ADCON0 Register.....	113
ADCON1 Register.....	114
ADRESH Register (ADFM = 0)	115
ADRESH Register (ADFM = 1)	115
ADRESL Register (ADFM = 0).....	115
ADRESL Register (ADFM = 1)	115
Analog Input Connection Considerations.....	100
Analog-to-Digital Converter. See ADC	
ANSEL Register	61
ANSELH Register	61
Assembler	
MPASM Assembler.....	224

B

BAUDCTL Register.....	160
BF bit.....	176
Block Diagrams	
(CCP) Capture Mode Operation	128
ADC	107
ADC Transfer Function	117
Analog Input Model	100, 117
CCP PWM.....	130
Clock Source.....	47
Comparator C1	94
Comparator C2	94
Compare	129
Crystal Operation.....	50
EUSART Receive	150
EUSART Transmit	149
External RC Mode.....	51
Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM)	57
In-Circuit Serial Programming Connections.....	212
Interrupt Logic	205
On-Chip Reset Circuit	196
PIC16F631	9
PIC16F677	10

PIC16F685	11
PIC16F687/689	12
PIC16F690	13
PWM (Enhanced)	133
RA0 Pins.....	64
RA1 Pins.....	65
RA2 Pin	65
RA3 Pin	66
RA4 Pin	66
RA5 Pin	67
RB4 Pin	71
RB5 Pin	72
RB6 Pin	73
RB7 Pin	74
RC0 and RC1 Pins	77
RC2 and RC3 Pins	77
RC4 Pin	78
RC5 Pin	78
RC6 Pin	79
RC7 Pin	79
Resonator Operation	50
SSP (I ² C Mode).....	184
SSP (SPI Mode)	175
Timer1	84
Timer2	91
TMR0/WDT Prescaler	81
Watchdog Timer (WDT).....	208
Break Character (12-bit) Transmit and Receive	167
Brown-out Reset (BOR).....	198
Associated	199
Specifications	242
Timing and Characteristics	241

C

C Compilers

MPLAB C18.....	224
MPLAB C30.....	224

Capture Module. See Enhanced Capture/Compare/
PWM(ECCP)

Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP)

 Associated registers w/ Capture/Compare/PWM 148

 Capture Mode..... 128

 CCPx Pin Configuration..... 128

 Compare Mode..... 129

 CCPx Pin Configuration..... 129

 Software Interrupt Mode..... 128, 129

 Special Event Trigger 129 || Timer1 Mode Selection..... | 128, 129 |
Prescaler	128
PWM Mode.....	130
Duty Cycle	131
Effects of Reset	132
Example PWM Frequencies and Resolutions, 20 MHZ.....	131
Example PWM Frequencies and Resolutions, 8 MHz	131
Operation in Sleep Mode.....	132
Setup for Operation	132
System Clock Frequency Changes	132
PWM Period	131
Setup for PWM Operation	132
CCPxCON (Enhanced) Register	127
CKE bit	176
CKP bit	177

 Resolutions, 8 MHz 131 || Operation in Sleep Mode..... | 132 |
Setup for Operation	132
System Clock Frequency Changes	132
PWM Period	131
Setup for PWM Operation	132
CCPxCON (Enhanced) Register	127
CKE bit	176
CKP bit	177

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Clock Accuracy with Asynchronous Operation	158
Clock Sources	
External Modes	49
EC	49
HS	50
LP	50
OST	49
RC	51
XT	50
Internal Modes	51
Frequency Selection	53
HFINTOSC.....	51
HFINTOSC/LFINTOSC Switch Timing	53
INTOSC	51
INTOSCI.....	51
LFINTOSC	53
Clock Switching.....	55
CM1CON0 Register	98
CM2CON0 Register	99
CM2CON1 Register	101
Code Examples	
A/D Conversion	112
Assigning Prescaler to Timer0	82
Assigning Prescaler to WDT	82
Changing Between Capture Prescalers.....	128
Indirect Addressing	44
Initializing PORTA	59
Initializing PORTB	69
Initializing PORTC.....	76
Loading the SSPBUF (SSPSR) Register	178
Saving STATUS and W Registers in RAM	207
Ultra Low-Power Wake-up Initialization	63
Write Verify	125
Code Protection	211
Comparator	
C2OUT as T1 Gate	101
Operation	93
Operation During Sleep	97
Response Time	95
Synchronizing COUT w/Timer1	101
Comparator Module	93
Associated registers.....	106
C1 Output State Versus Input Conditions	95
Comparator Voltage Reference (CVREF)	
Response Time	95
Comparator Voltage Reference (CVREF)	104
Effects of a Reset.....	97
Specifications	245
Comparators	
C2OUT as T1 Gate	85
Effects of a Reset.....	97
Specifications	245
Compare Module. See Enhanced Capture/ Compare/PWM (ECCP)	
CONFIG Register	195
Configuration Bits	194
CPU Features	193
Customer Change Notification Service	289
Customer Notification Service	289
Customer Support	289
D	
D/A bit	176
Data EEPROM Memory	119
Associated Registers	126
Code Protection	125
Reading	122
Writing	122
Data Memory	26
Data/Address bit (D/A).....	176
DC Characteristics	
Extended	232
Extended and Industrial.....	234
Industrial	230
Industrial and Extended..	229
Development Support	223
Device Overview.....	9
E	
ECCP. See Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM	
ECCPAS Register.....	141
EEADR Register	120
EEADRH Registers	119
EEADRH Registers.....	119
EECON1 Register	119, 121
EECON2 Register.....	119
EEDAT Register	120
EEDATH Register.....	120
EEPROM Data Memory	
Avoiding Spurious Write	125
Write Verify	125
Effects of Reset	
PWM mode	132
Electrical Specifications	227
Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM	127
Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM (ECCP)	
Enhanced PWM Mode	133
Auto-Restart	142
Auto-shutdown.....	141
Direction Change in Full-Bridge Output Mode ..	139
Full-Bridge Application	137
Full-Bridge Mode	137
Half-Bridge Application	136
Half-Bridge Application Examples	143
Half-Bridge Mode.....	136
Output Relationships (Active-High and Active-Low).....	134
Output Relationships Diagram.....	135
Programmable Dead Band Delay	143
Shoot-through Current	143
Start-up Considerations.....	140
Specifications	244
Timer Resources	127
Enhanced Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (EUSART)	149
Errata	8
EUSART	149
Associated Registers	
Baud Rate Generator	161
Asynchronous Mode	151
12-bit Break Transmit and Receive	167
Associated Registers	
Receive	157
Transmit.....	153
Auto-Wake-up on Break	166
Baud Rate Generator (BRG)	161
Clock Accuracy	158
Receiver	154
Setting up 9-bit Mode with Address Detect	156
Transmitter	151
Baud Rate Generator (BRG)	
Auto Baud Rate Detect.....	165

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Baud Rate Error, Calculating	161	GOTO	217
Baud Rates, Asynchronous Modes	162	INCF	217
Formulas	161	INCFSZ	217
High Baud Rate Select (BRGH Bit)	161	IORLW	217
Synchronous Master Mode	169	IORWF	217
Associated Registers		MOVF	218
Receive	172	MOVLW	218
Transmit	170	MOVWF	218
Reception	171	NOP	218
Requirements, Synchronous Receive	246	RETFIE	219
Requirements, Synchronous Transmission	246	RETLW	219
Timing Diagram, Synchronous Receive	246	RETURN	219
Timing Diagram, Synchronous Transmission	246	RLF	220
Transmission	169	RRF	220
Synchronous Slave Mode	173	SLEEP	220
Associated Registers		SUBLW	220
Receive	174	SUBWF	221
Transmit	173	SWAPF	221
Reception	174	XORLW	221
Transmission	173	XORWF	221
F		Summary Table	214
Fail-Safe Clock Monitor	57	INTCON Register	38
Fail-Safe Condition Clearing	57	Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C). See I^2C Mode	
Fail-Safe Detection	57	Internal Oscillator Block	
Fail-Safe Operation	57	INTOSC	
Reset or Wake-up from Sleep	57	Specifications	239
Firmware Instructions	213	Internal Sampling Switch (RSS) Impedance	116
Flash Program Memory	119	Internet Address	289
Fuses. See Configuration Bits		Interrupts	204
G		ADC	111
General Purpose Register File	26	Associated Registers	206
I		Context Saving	207
I^2C Mode		Interrupt-on-Change	60
Addressing	185	Interrupt-on-change	69
Associated Registers	192	PORTA/PORPB Interrupt-on-Change	205
Master Mode	191	RA2/INT	204
Mode Selection	184	TMR0	205
Multi-Master Mode	191	TMR1	86
Operation	184	INTOSC Specifications	239
Reception	186	IOCA Register	62
Slave Mode		IOCB Register	70
SCL and SDA pins	184	L	
Transmission	189	Load Conditions	237
ID Locations	211	M	
In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP)	211	MCLR	197
Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR registers	44	Internal	197
Instruction Format	213	Memory Organization	25
Instruction Set	213	Data	26
ADDLW	215	Program	25
ADDWF	215	Microchip Internet Web Site	289
ANDLW	215	Migrating from other PICmicro Devices	281
ANDWF	215	MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker, Librarian	224
BCF	215	MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger	225
BSF	215	MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance Universal	
BTFSC	215	In-Circuit Emulator	225
BTFSS	216	MPLAB ICE 4000 High-Performance Universal	
CALL	216	In-Circuit Emulator	225
CLRF	216	MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software ..	223
CLRW	216	MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer	225
CLRWDT	216	MPLINK Object Linker/MPLIB Object Librarian	224
COMF	216		
DECFL	216		
DECFSZ	217		

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

O

OPCODE Field Descriptions	213
OPTION Register	37, 83
OSCCON Register	48
Oscillator	
Associated registers.....	58, 89
Oscillator Module	47
EC	47
HFINTOSC.....	47
HS	47
INTOSC	47
INTOSCIO.....	47
LFINTOSC	47
LP	47
RC	47
RCIO	47
XT	47
Oscillator Parameters.....	239
Oscillator Specifications	238
Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)	
Specifications.....	242
Oscillator Switching	
Fail-Safe Clock Monitor.....	57
Two-Speed Clock Start-up.....	55
OSCTUNE Register	52

P

P (Stop) bit	176
P1A/P1B/P1C/P1D. See Enhanced Capture/ Compare/PWM (ECCP)	133
Packaging	275
Marking	275
PDIP Details.....	276
PCL and PCLATH	44
Stack	44
PCON Register	43, 199
PICKit 2 Development Programmer	226
PICSTART Plus Development Programmer	226
PIE1 Register	39
PIE2 Register	40
Pin Diagram	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
PIR1 Register	41
PIR2 Register	42
PORTA	
Additional Pin Functions	60
ANSEL Register.....	60
ANSELH Register	60
Interrupt-on-Change.....	60
Ultra Low-Power Wake-up	60, 63
Weak Pull-Up	60
Associated Registers	68
Pin Descriptions and Diagrams.....	64
RA0	64
RA1	65
RA2	65
RA3	66
RA4	66
RA5	67
Registers	59
Specifications.....	240
PORTA Register	59
PORTB	
Additional Pin Functions	69
Weak Pull-Up	69
Associated Registers	75

Interrupt-on-change	69
Pin Descriptions and Diagrams	71
RB4	71
RB5	72
RB6	73
RB7	74
Registers	69
PORTB Register	69
PORTC	76
Associated registers	80
P1A/P1B/P1C/P1D. See Enhanced Capture/ Compare/PWM+ (ECCP+)	76
RC0	77
RC1	77
RC2	77
RC3	77
RC4	78
RC5	78
RC6	79
RC7	79
Registers	76
Specifications	240
PORTC Register	76
Power-Down Mode (Sleep)	210
Power-on Reset (POR)	197
Power-up Timer (PWRT)	197
Specifications	242
Prescaler	
Shared WDT/Timer0.....	82
Switching Prescaler Assignment	82
Program Memory	25
Map and Stack.....	25, 26
Programming, Device Instructions	213
PSTRCON Register	145
Pulse Steering	145
PWM (ECCP Module)	
Pulse Steering	145
Steering Synchronization	147
PWM Mode. See Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM	133
PWMxCON Register	144
R	
R/W bit	176
RCREG	156
RCSTA Register	159
Reader Response	290
Read-Modify-Write Operations	213
Receive Overflow Indicator bit (SSPOV)	177
Register	
RCREG Register	165
Registers	
ADCON0 (ADC Control 0)	113
ADCON1 (ADC Control 1)	114
ADRESH (ADC Result High) with ADFM = 0)	115
ADRESH (ADC Result High) with ADFM = 1)	115
ADRESL (ADC Result Low) with ADFM = 0)	115
ADRESL (ADC Result Low) with ADFM = 1)	115
ANSEL (Analog Select)	61
ANSELH (Analog Select High)	61
BAUDCTL (Baud Rate Control)	160
CCPxCON (Enhanced CCPx Control)	127
CM1CON0 (C1 Control)	98
CM2CON0 (C2 Control)	99
CM2CON1 (C2 Control)	101
CONFIG (Configuration Word)	195
ECCPAS (Enhanced CCP Auto-shutdown Control) ..	141

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

EEADR (EEPROM Address)	120	SPI Mode	175, 181
EECON1 (EEPROM Control 1)	121	Associated Registers	183
EEDAT (EEPROM Data)	120	Bus Mode Compatibility	183
EEDATH (EEPROM Data)	120	Effects of a Reset	183
INTCON (Interrupt Control)	38	Enabling SPI I/O	179
IOCA (Interrupt-on-Change PORTA)	62	Master Mode	180
IOCB (Interrupt-on-Change PORTB)	70	Master/Slave Connection	179
OPTION_REG (OPTION)	37, 83	Serial Clock (SCK pin)	175
OSCCON (Oscillator Control)	48	Serial Data In (SDI pin)	175
OSCTUNE (Oscillator Tuning)	52	Serial Data Out (SDO pin)	175
PCON (Power Control Register)	43	Slave Select	175
PCON (Power Control)	199	Slave Select Synchronization	181
PIE1 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 1)	39	Sleep Operation	183
PIE2 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 2)	40	SPI Clock	180
PIR1 (Peripheral Interrupt Register 1)	41	Typical Connection	179
PIR2 (Peripheral Interrupt Request 2)	42	SRCON Register	103
PORTA	59	SSP	
PORTB	69	Overview	
PORTC	76	SPI Master/Slave Connection	179
PSTRCON (Pulse Steering Control)	145	SSP I ² C Operation	184
PWMxCON (Enhanced PWM Control)	144	Slave Mode	184
RCSTA (Receive Status and Control)	159	SSP Module	
Reset Values	201	Clock Synchronization and the CKP Bit	191
Reset Values (special registers)	203	SPI Master Mode	180
Special Function Register Map		SPI Slave Mode	181
PIC16F677	28	SSPBUF	180
PIC16F685	27, 29	SSPSR	180
PIC16F687/689	30	SSPCON Register	177
PIC16F690	31	SSPEN bit	177
Special Function Registers	26	SSPM bits	177
Special Register Summary		SSPMSK Register	187
Bank 0	32	SSPOV bit	177
Bank 1	33	SSPSTAT Register	176
Bank 2	34	STATUS Register	36
Bank 3	35	Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit (SSPEN)	177
SRCON (SR Latch Control)	103	Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits (SSPM)	177
SSPCON (Sync Serial Port Control) Register	177	Synchronous Serial Port. See SSP	
SSPMSK (SSP Mask)	187	T	
SSPSTAT (Sync Serial Port Status) Register	176	T1CON Register	88
STATUS	36	T2CON Register	92
T1CON	88	Thermal Considerations	236
T2CON	92	Time-out Sequence	199
TRISA (Tri-State PORTA)	59	Timer0	81
TRISB (Tri-State PORTB)	70	Associated Registers	83
TRISC (Tri-State PORTC)	76	External Clock	82
TXSTA (Transmit Status and Control)	158	Interrupt	83
VRCON (Voltage Reference Control)	106	Operation	81, 84
WDTCON (Watchdog Timer Control)	209	Specifications	243
WPUA (Weak Pull-Up PORTA)	62	T0CKI	82
WPUB (Weak Pull-up PORTB)	70	Timer1	84
Reset	196	Associated registers	89
Revision History	281	Asynchronous Counter Mode	85
S		Reading and Writing	85
S (Start) bit	176	Interrupt	86
Shoot-through Current	143	Modes of Operation	84
Slave Select Synchronization	181	Operation During Sleep	86
Sleep	210	Oscillator	85
Wake-up	210	Prescaler	85
Wake-up Using Interrupts	210	Specifications	243
SMP bit	176	Timer1 Gate	
Software Simulator (MPLAB SIM)	224	Inverting Gate	86
SPBRG	161	Selecting Source	85, 101
SPBRGH	161	Synchronizing COUT w/Timer1	101
Special Event Trigger	111	TMR1H Register	84
Special Function Registers	26	TMR1L Register	84

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

Timer2	
Associated registers.....	92
Timers	
Timer1	
T1CON.....	88
Timer2	
T2CON.....	92
Timing Diagrams	
A/D Conversion	253
A/D Conversion (Sleep Mode)	254
Asynchronous Reception	156
Asynchronous Transmission	152
Asynchronous Transmission (Back to Back)	152
Auto Wake-up Bit (WUE) During Normal Operation .	166
Auto Wake-up Bit (WUE) During Sleep	167
Automatic Baud Rate Calculator	165
Brown-out Reset (BOR)	241
Brown-out Reset Situations	198
CLKOUT and I/O	240
Clock Synchronization	192
Clock Timing	238
Comparator Output	93
Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM (ECCP)	244
EUSART Synchronous Receive (Master/Slave)	246
EUSART Synchronous Transmission (Master/Slave).	246
Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM)	58
Full-Bridge PWM Output	138
Half-Bridge PWM Output	136, 143
I ² C Bus Data	250
I ² C Bus Start/Stop Bits.....	249
I ² C Reception (7-bit Address)	186
I ² C Slave Mode (Transmission, 10-bit Address)	190
I ² C Slave Mode with SEN = 0 (Reception, 10-bit Address).....	188
I ² C Transmission (7-bit Address)	189
INT Pin Interrupt.....	206
Internal Oscillator Switch Timing.....	54
PWM Auto-shutdown	
Auto-restart Enabled	142
Firmware Restart	142
PWM Direction Change	139
PWM Direction Change at Near 100% Duty Cycle ...	140
PWM Output (Active-High).....	134
PWM Output (Active-Low)	135
Reset, WDT, OST and Power-up Timer	241
Send Break Character Sequence	168
Slave Synchronization	181
SPI Master Mode (CKE = 1, SMP = 1)	247
SPI Mode (Master Mode).....	180
SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 0)	182
SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 1)	182
SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 0)	248
SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 1)	248
Synchronous Reception (Master Mode, SREN)	172
Synchronous Transmission.....	170
Synchronous Transmission (Through TXEN)	170
Time-out Sequence	
Case 1.....	200
Case 2.....	200
Case 3.....	200
Timer0 and Timer1 External Clock	243
Timer1 Incrementing Edge	87
Two Speed Start-up	56
Wake-up from Interrupt	211
Timing Parameter Symbology	237
Timing Requirements	
I ² C Bus Data.....	251
I ² C Bus Start/Stop Bits	250
SPI Mode	249
TRISA	
Registers	59
TRISA Register.....	59
TRISB	
Registers	69
TRISB Register.....	70
TRISC	
Registers	76
TRISC Register.....	76
Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode.....	55
TXREG	151
TXSTA Register.....	158
BRGH Bit	161
U	
UA.....	176
Ultra Low-Power Wake-up	14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 60, 63
Update Address bit, UA	176
V	
Voltage Reference (VR)	
Specifications	245
Voltage Reference. See Comparator	
Voltage Reference (CVREF)	
Voltage References	
Associated registers	106
VP6 Stabilization	105
VRCON Register	106
VREF. SEE ADC Reference Voltage	
W	
Wake-up on Break	166
Wake-up Using Interrupts	210
Watchdog Timer (WDT)	208
Associated registers	209
Clock Source	208
Modes	208
Period	208
Specifications	242
WCOL bit	177
WDTCON Register	209
WPUA Register.....	62
WPUB Register.....	70
Write Collision Detect bit (WCOL)	177
WWW Address	289
WWW, On-Line Support	8

THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at www.microchip.com. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at www.microchip.com, click on Customer Change Notification and follow the registration instructions.

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

Technical support is available through the web site at: <http://support.microchip.com>

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager

Total Pages Sent _____

RE: Reader Response

From: Name _____

Company _____

Address _____

City / State / ZIP / Country _____

Telephone: (_____) _____ - _____ FAX: (_____) _____ - _____

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? Y N

Device: PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690 Literature Number: DS41262C

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

7. How would you improve this document?

PIC16F631/677/685/687/689/690

PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	X	XX	XXX	Examples:
Device	Temperature Range	Package	Pattern	
Device:				PIC16F631 ⁽¹⁾ , PIC16F677 ⁽¹⁾ , PIC16F685 ⁽¹⁾ , PIC16F687 ⁽¹⁾ , PIC16F689 ⁽¹⁾ , PIC16F690 ⁽¹⁾ , VDD range 2.0V to 5.5V
Temperature Range:	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)			
Package:		ML = QFN (Quad Flat, no lead) P = PDIP SO = SOIC SS = SSOP		
Pattern:				Note 1: T = in tape and reel SSOP, SOIC and QFN packages only.



MICROCHIP

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support:
<http://support.microchip.com>
Web Address:
www.microchip.com

Asia Pacific Office
Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor
Tower 6, The Gateway
Harbour City, Kowloon
Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

Atlanta
Alpharetta, GA
Tel: 770-640-0034
Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
Westborough, MA
Tel: 774-760-0087
Fax: 774-760-0088

Chicago
Itasca, IL
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
Addison, TX
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Farmington Hills, MI
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Kokomo
Kokomo, IN
Tel: 765-864-8360
Fax: 765-864-8387

Los Angeles
Mission Viejo, CA
Tel: 949-462-9523
Fax: 949-462-9608

San Jose
Mountain View, CA
Tel: 650-215-1444
Fax: 650-961-0286

Toronto
Mississauga, Ontario,
Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Australia - Sydney
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Tel: 86-10-8528-2100
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

China - Chengdu
Tel: 86-28-8676-6200
Fax: 86-28-8676-6599

China - Fuzhou
Tel: 86-591-8750-3506
Fax: 86-591-8750-3521

China - Hong Kong SAR
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Qingdao
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

China - Shanghai
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

China - Shenyang
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

China - Shenzhen
Tel: 86-755-8203-2660
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

China - Shunde
Tel: 86-757-2839-5507
Fax: 86-757-2839-5571

China - Wuhan
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

China - Xian
Tel: 86-29-8833-7250
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

ASIA/PACIFIC

India - Bangalore
Tel: 91-80-4182-8400
Fax: 91-80-4182-8422

India - New Delhi
Tel: 91-11-5160-8631
Fax: 91-11-5160-8632

India - Pune
Tel: 91-20-2566-1512
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

Japan - Yokohama
Tel: 81-45-471-6166
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea - Gumi
Tel: 82-54-473-4301
Fax: 82-54-473-4302

Korea - Seoul
Tel: 82-2-554-7200
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Malaysia - Penang
Tel: 60-4-646-8870
Fax: 60-4-646-5086

Philippines - Manila
Tel: 63-2-634-9065
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

Singapore
Tel: 65-6334-8870
Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan - Hsin Chu
Tel: 886-3-572-9526
Fax: 886-3-572-6459

Taiwan - Kaohsiung
Tel: 886-7-536-4818
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

Taiwan - Taipei
Tel: 886-2-2500-6610
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

Thailand - Bangkok
Tel: 66-2-694-1351
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

EUROPE

Austria - Wels
Tel: 43-7242-2244-3910
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark - Copenhagen
Tel: 45-4450-2828
Fax: 45-4485-2829

France - Paris
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany - Munich
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy - Milan
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands - Drunen
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

Spain - Madrid
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

UK - Wokingham
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

06/08/06

```

/*****************/
/*
Serial_LCD_Test.c
Program for writing to Newhaven Display Serial LCDs

(c)2010 Curt Lagerstam - Newhaven Display International, LLC.

      This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify
      it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as
published by
      the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License,
or
      (at your option) any later version.

      This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
GNU General Public License for more details.

*/
/*****************/

#include "e:\2321_tester\tester_init.h"

/*****************/
*
*          MAIN PROGRAM
*
/*****************/
void main(void)
{
    OSCCON |= 0x73;           // internal RC, 8MHz

    PORTA = 0x00;
    TRISA = 0xFF;             // B'1111 1111'
    PORTB = 0x00;
    TRISB = 0xFF;             // B'1111 1111'
    PORTC = 0x75;             // B'0111 0101'
    TRISC = 0x00;              // B'0000 0000'
    GIE = 0;
    INTCON = 0x00;             // disable all interrupt
    INTCON2 = 0x00;            // enable port B pull-up
    INTCON3 = 0x00;

/*****************/
    set up adc for analog inputs
    ADC clock = Fosc/8 (1 uSecond), adc off,
    AN0 is contrast input, AN1 is backlight brightness input
/*****************/
    ADCON0 = 0x00;
    ADCON1 = 0x0D;             // RA0, RA1 are analog inputs
    ADCON2 = 0x15;              // left just, 4TAD, Fosc/16, 0001
0101

/*****************/
    set up timer 0 for 10 millisecond interrupt
    timer 0 is a general purpose timer

```

```

***** ****
T0CON = 0x46;           // timer 0 control register
T1CON = 0xB0;           // timer 1 off

spi_ss = 1;

if (!i2c_sel) {
    com_mode = 3;          // I2C
    init_i2c();
}
else {
    if (!spi_sel) {
        com_mode = 2;      // SPI
        init_spi();
    }
    else {
        com_mode = 1;      // RS232
        init_rs232();
    }
}

/* END OF SPECIAL REGISTER INITIALIZATION */

tick_100m = 9;           // 100 millisceond counter
tick_ls = 9;              // 1 second counter

TMR0L = 100;             // initialize to 100 counts
TMR0ON = 1;
TMR0IF = 0;
TMR0IE = 1;

contrast = 0;
contrast_f = 0;
bright = 0;
bright_f = 0;
serial_busy = 0;

TXREG = 0;
PEIE = 1;
GIE = 1;                  // enable global interrupt

delay_ms(100);           // waiting for LCD to initialize

lcd_clear();

// Set Contrast
tx_packet[0] = 0xFE;
tx_packet[1] = 0x52;
tx_packet[2] = 40;         // contrast 1 - 50
send_packet(3);

// Set Backlight Level
tx_packet[1] = 0x53;
tx_packet[2] = 15;         // backlight 1 - 15
send_packet(3);

tx_packet[1] = 0x48;      // underline cursor off
send_packet(2);

```

```

delay_ms(1000);

//*****
for (i = 0; i < 16; i++) {      // "NewHaven Display"
    tx_packet[i] = text6[i];
}
send_packet(16);

lcd_cursor(0x40);
delay_ms(100);

for (i = 0; i < 16; i++) {      // "Serial LCD Demo"
    tx_packet[i] = text7[i];
}

send_packet(16);

temp = 0;

for (;;) {

// Contrast Control
    if (contrast_f && !serial_busy) {
        tx_packet[0] = 0xFE;
        tx_packet[1] = 0x52;
        tx_packet[2] = contrast_save;
        send_packet(3);

        contrast_f = 0;
    }

// Backlight Brightness
    if (bright_f && !serial_busy) {
        tx_packet[0] = 0xFE;
        tx_packet[1] = 0x53;
        tx_packet[2] = bright_save;
        send_packet(3);

        bright_f = 0;
    }
}
} /* end main */
 */

*****send 'x' byte of the tx_packet[] to the serial port*****
void send_packet(unsigned int x)
{
    unsigned int ix;

    led = 1;
    serial_busy = 1;                                // set busy flag
    switch (com_mode) {
        case 1:                                     // RS232
mode

```

```

        for (ix = 0; ix < x; ix++) {
            while (!TXIF);
            TXREG = tx_packet[ix];
        }
        while (!TRMT);
        break;

    case 2:                                // SPI
        spi_ss = 0;
        delay_cycles(5);
        for (ix = 0; ix < x; ix++) {
            SSPBUF = tx_packet[ix];
            while(!BF);
            temp = SSPBUF;
            delay_us(5);           // reduce
effective clock rate
        }
        delay_cycles(5);
        spi_ss = 1;
        break;

    case 3:                                // I2C
        i2c_busy(0x50);                  // send address

        for (ix = 0; ix < x; ix++) {
            SSPBUF = tx_packet[ix];
            wait_sspif();
        }

        PEN = 1;                         // send
stop bit
        while (PEN == 1);                // wait until stop
bit finished

        break;

    default:
        break;
    }
    led = 0;
    serial_busy = 0;                  // clear busy flag
}

/*********************************************
wait for SSPIF set routine, add a software counter to ensure the
routine does not hang.
*****************************************/
void wait_sspif(void)
{
    loop_hi = 9;
    loop_lo = 0xC4;
    SSPIF = 0;
    while (!SSPIF && loop_hi) {
        loop_lo--;
        if(!loop_lo)
            loop_hi--;
    }
}

```

```

        SSPIF = 0;
    }

/*****
 * i2c_busy routine poll the ACK status bit to see if device is busy
 *****/
void i2c_busy(unsigned char x)
{
    SEN = 1;                                // start bit
    while(SEN);                            // wait until start bit
finished

    while (1) {
        SSPIF = 0;
        SSPBUF = x;                      // send write command
        wait_sspif();                  // wait until command finished

        if (ACKSTAT) {                // check ACK, if 1, ACK not
received
            RSEN = 1;                  // then sent start bit
again
            while (RSEN);      // wait until start bit finished
        }
        else
            break;
    }
}

/*****
 * set lcd cursor
 *****/
void lcd_cursor(unsigned int x)
{
    tx_packet[0] = 0xFE;
    tx_packet[1] = 0x45;
    tx_packet[2] = x;
    send_packet(3);
    delay_ms(10);
}

/*****
 * clear one line of display
 *****/
void clear_line(unsigned int x)
{
    unsigned int ij;

    for (ij = 0; ij < x; ij++) {
        tx_packet[ij] = 0x20;
    }
    send_packet(x);
}

/*****
 * lcd clear
 *****/
void lcd_clear(void)

```

```

{
    tx_packet[0] = 0xFE;
    tx_packet[1] = 0x51;
    send_packet(2);
    delay_ms(10);
}

/*************************************************
 * initialize for USART interface
*************************************************/
void init_rs232(void)
{
    TXSTA = 0x26;                      // rs232 transmit status register
    RCSTA = 0x80;                      // serial port enable
    BAUDCTL = 0x08;                    // BRG16 = 1;
    SPBRG = 207;
    SPBRGH = 0;
}

/*************************************************
 * initialize for spi interface
*************************************************/
void init_spi(void)
{
    TRISC |= 0x10;
    SSPCON1 = 0x32;                   // master, 125K CLK, CKP = 1

    temp = SSPBUF;
    SSPOV = 0;
    SSPIF = 0;
}

/*************************************************
 * initialize for i2c interface
*************************************************/
void init_i2c(void)
{
    TRISC |= 0x18;                    // RC3, RC4 as inputs
    SSPSTAT = 0x00;
    SSPADD = 19;                     // 100K Hz
    SSPCON1 = 0x28;                  // i2c master, enable SSP

    temp = SSPBUF;
    SSPOV = 0;
    SSPIF = 0;
    SSPIE = 0;                       // enable I2C interrupts
}

/*************************************************
 * ADC read routine, read the selected adc channel and put the result
 * in adc_result.
*************************************************/
void adc(unsigned char n)
{
    switch (n) {
        case 0:                         // adc channel 0, contrast
            ADCON0 = 0x03;
}

```

```

                break;

        case 1:                                // adc channel 1,
backlight
                ADCON0 = 0x07;
                break;

        default:
                break;
}

while (GODONE);                         // wait for end of convert
adc_result = ADRESH;
if (adc_result > 250)
    adc_result = 250;
}

/*********************************************
*****
/* interrupt routines
*/
/* timer 0 is set to interrupt at 100 Hz rate.
*/
/*********************************************
*****
#endif
void timer0_isr(void) /*interrupt handler routine*/
{
    restart_wdt();           // reset watchdog timer
    TMR0L = 100;

/*********************************************
          10 millisecond functions
********************************************/
    if (tick_wait10)
        tick_wait10--;

    if (tick_100m) {
        tick_100m--;
    }

/*********************************************
          100 millisecond functions
********************************************/
    else {                      // 100 millisecond function
        tick_100m = 9; // reload 100 millisecond timer

        if (tick_wait100)           // general purpose 100
mSecond timer
            tick_wait100--;

        adc(0);                  // read
contrast setting
        contrast = adc_result / 5;
        if (!contrast)
            contrast = 1;
}
}
```

```

        if (contrast != contrast_save) {
            contrast_save = contrast;
            contrast_f = 1;
        }

        adc(1);                                // read
backlight setting
        bright = adc_result / 15;
        if (!bright)
            bright = 1;

        if (bright != bright_save) {
            bright_save = bright;
            bright_f = 1;
        }

        if (tick_1s) {
            tick_1s--;
        }
*****1 second functions*****
else {
    tick_1s = 9;                      // reload 1 second timer
}
}      /* end of timer 0 interrupt routine */

```



User's Guide

LCD Safe Handling Procedure

For product support, contact

Newhaven Display International
2511 Technology Drive, #101
Elgin, IL 60124
Tel: (847)844-8795 Fax: (847)844-8796

USING LCD MODULES

LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY MODULES

LCD's are composed of glass, liquid crystal fluid, and a polarizer. Please pay attention to the following items when handling:

1. Keep the temperature within a specified range for use and storage. Polarization degradation, bubble generation or polarizer peel-off may occur with high temperatures and high humidity.
2. Do not touch, push or rub the exposed polarizer with anything harder than an HB lead pencil (glass, tweezers, etc).
3. N-hexane is recommended for cleaning the adhesives used to attach the front/rear polarizer. Reflectors made of organic substances will be damaged by chemicals such as acetone, toluene, ethanol and isopropyl alcohol.
4. If the display surface becomes contaminated, breathe on the surface and gently wipe it with a soft dry cloth. If it is heavily contaminated, wipe it gently with absorbent cotton or another soft material like a chamois soaked in Isopropyl alcohol or Ethyl alcohol. Scrub gently to avoid damaging the display surface.
5. Wipe off saliva or water immediately! Contact with water over a long period of time may cause deformation or color fading.
6. Avoid contact with oil or any greasy substances.
7. If there is condensation on the surface and contact with the terminals while cold, it will damage, stain or dirty the polarizer. After the product is tested at a low temperature, they must be warmed up in a container before being exposed to room temperature environments.
8. Do not put or attach anything on the display area in order to avoid leaving marks.
9. Do not touch the display with bare hands. This will stain the display area and degrade the insulation between terminals. (Some cosmetics are detrimental to the polarizer).
10. Exercise care to minimize corrosion of the electrode. Corrosion of the electrodes is accelerated by water droplets, moisture condensation or a current flow in a high-humidity environment.
11. As glass is fragile, care should be taken to avoid chipping, while handling the edges especially.

PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING LCD MODULES

Since the LCD module has been assembled and adjusted with a high degree of precision, avoid applying excessive shock or force to the module or making any alterations or modifications to it.

1. Do not alter, modify or change the shape of the tab on the metal frame.
2. Do not make extra holes on the printed circuit board, modify its shape or change the positions of components to be attached.
3. Do not damage or modify the pattern wiring on the printed circuit board.
4. Absolutely do not modify the zebra rubber strip (conductive rubber) or heat the seal connector!
5. Except for soldering the interface, do not make any alterations or modifications with a soldering iron.
6. Do not drop, bend or twist the LCD module. In particular, don't forcibly pull or bend the I/O cable or backlight cable.

7. In order to avoid cracking the FPC, pay attention to the area where the FPC is bent, the edge of the overlay, the area of the surface of Ni-Au plating, the area of soldering land, and the area of the through hole.

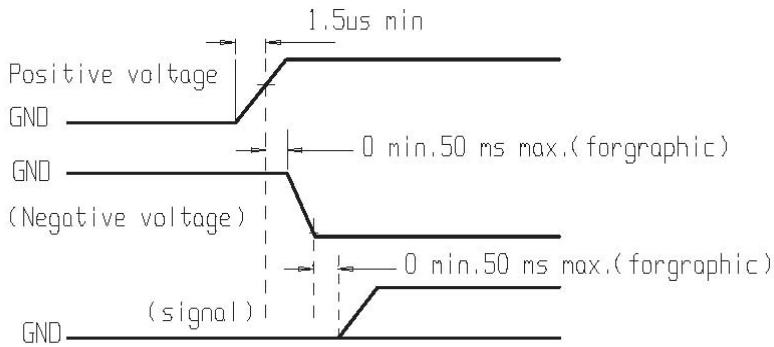
ELECTRO-STATIC DISCHARGE CONTROL

Since this module uses a CMOS LSI, give the same careful attention to the electrostatic discharge as you would for an ordinary CMOS IC.

1. Make sure you are grounded when handling LCD modules. To minimize the performance degradation of the LCD modules resulting from destruction caused by static electricity, exercise care to avoid holding the following sections when handling the modules: exposed area of the printed circuit board, terminal electrode sections.
2. Before removing the LCD module from its packing case or incorporating it into a set, be sure the module and your body have the same electric potential.
3. When soldering the terminal of the LCD module, make sure the AC power source for the soldering iron does not leak.
4. When using an electric screwdriver to attach the LCD module, the screwdriver should be of ground potentiality, to minimize any transmission of electromagnetic waves producing sparks coming from the commutator of the motor.
5. As far as possible, make the electric potential of your work clothes and that of the work bench the ground potential.
6. To reduce the generation of static electricity, be careful that the air in the working environment is not too dry. (A relative humidity of 50-60% is recommended).

PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATION

1. Viewing angle varies with the change of liquid crystal driving voltage (VO). Adjust VO to show the best contrast.
2. Driving the LCD in the voltage above the limit shortens its life.
3. If the LCD modules have been operating for a long time showing the same display patterns, the display patterns may remain on the screen as ghost images and a slight contrast irregularity may also appear. A normal operating status can be regained by suspending use for some time. It should be noted that this phenomenon does not adversely affect performance reliability.
4. Response time is greatly delayed at temperatures below the operating temperature range, however this does not mean the LCD will be out of order. It will recover when it returns to the specified temperature range.
5. If the display area is pushed hard during operation, the display may become abnormal, however it will return to normal if it is turned off and then turned back on.
6. Condensation on terminals can cause an electrochemical reaction disrupting the terminal circuit, therefore it must be used under the relative condition of 40°C, 50% RH.
7. When turning the power on, input each signal after the positive/negative voltage becomes stable.



STORAGE

WHEN STORING LCD'S, THE FOLLOWING PRECAUTIONS ARE NECESSARY:

1. Store them in a sealed polyethylene bag. If properly sealed, there is no need for desiccant.
2. Store them in a dark place; do not expose them to sunlight or fluorescent light. Keep the temperature between 0°C and 35°C.
3. The polarizer surface should not come in contact with any other objects. (We advise you to store them in the container in which they were shipped).
4. Environmental conditions:
 - A). Do not leave them for more than 160 hours at 70°C
 - B). They should not be left for more than 48 hours at -20°C

SAFETY

1. It is recommended to crush damaged or unnecessary LCDs into pieces and wash them off with solvents such as acetone and ethanol, which should later be burned.
2. If any liquid leaks out of a damaged glass cell and comes in contact with the hands, wash off thoroughly with soap and water.

LIMITED WARRANTY

Newhaven Display MAKES NO WARRANTY RESPECTING THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCTS OR THEIR SUITABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE OR RESPECTING INFRINGEMENT. Newhaven Display's liability arising out of any sale of products to Customer is expressly limited to repair and/or replacement of such Products, at Newhaven Display's election, with such remedies exclusive and in lieu of all others. Newhaven Display will not be responsible for any subsequent or consequential events or injury or damage to any personnel or user including third party personnel and/or user. This warranty is in lieu of any and all other warranties, whether oral, written, expressed, implied or statutory. Implied warranties of fitness for a particular purpose and merchantability are specifically excluded and shall not apply. Customer's obligations and Newhaven Display's remedies with respect to defective or nonconforming products, are solely and exclusively as stated herein. Furthermore, no warranty will apply if the Product has been subject to misuse, static discharge, neglect, accident, modification, or has been soldered or altered in any way or if any of the LCD handling precautions have been disregarded. Broken glass, scratches on polarizer, mechanical damages, as well as defects that are caused by accelerated environment tests are excluded from warranty. In returning products, they must be returned in their original packaging. If the original packaging is not used, the returned product must be properly packaged to prevent damage or warranty will be void. There must be a detailed description of the failures or defect for each returned part.

RETURN LCD MODULES UNDER WARRANTY

The Customer must notify Newhaven Display within one year from date of shipment of any defective product. If Newhaven Display agrees to accept a return, return freight charges may be paid by Newhaven Display. Newhaven Display will not accept COD shipments. Contact a sales representative for a Return Materials Authorization Number and addressing instructions prior to returning product.

Handling Precautions

1. Limitation of Application:

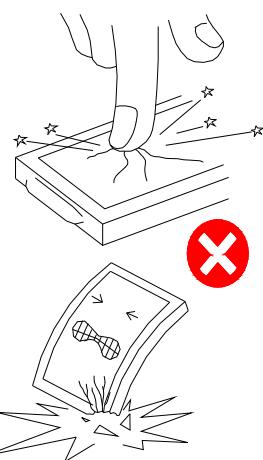
Newhaven products are designed for use in ordinary electronic devices such as business machines, telecommunications equipment, measurement devices..etc. Please handle the products with care. (See below) Newhaven products are not designed, intended or authorized for use in any application which the failure of the product could result in a situation where personal injury or death may occur. These applications include, but are not limited to: life-sustaining equipment, nuclear control devices, aerospace equipment, devices related to hazardous or flammable materials...etc. (If Buyer intends to purchase or use the Newhaven products for such unintended or unauthorized applications, Buyer must secure prior written consent to such use by a responsible officer of Newhaven Display). Should Buyer purchase or use Newhaven products for any such unintended or unauthorized application (without such consent), Buyer shall indemnify and hold Newhaven and its officers, employees, subsidiaries, affiliates and distributors harmless against all claims, costs, damages and expenses, and reasonable attorney's fees, arising out of, directly or indirectly, any claim of personal injury or death associated with such unintended or unauthorized use, even if such claim alleges that Newhaven was negligent regarding the design or manufacture of the part.

2. Industrial Rights and Patents

Newhaven shall not be responsible for any infringement of industrial property rights of third parties in any country arising out of the application or use of Newhaven products, except which directly concern the structure or production of such products.

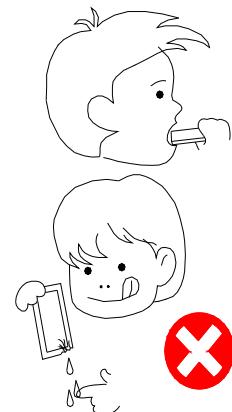
Do Not Press!

If pressure is applied to LCD, orientation may be disturbed. The LCD can be broken by shock!



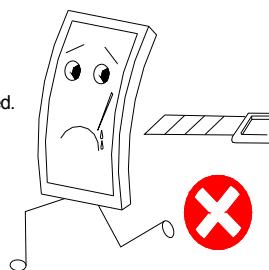
Don't Swallow or Touch Liquid Crystal!

Liquid Crystal may leak if the display breaks. If it accidentally gets on your hands, wash them with soap and water!



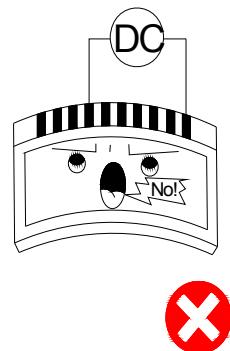
Do Not Scratch!

Polarizer is a soft material and can easily be scratched.



No DC Voltage to LCD!

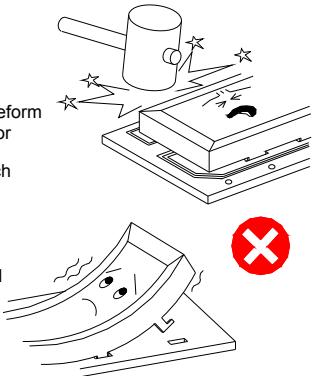
DC voltage or higher voltage than specified will reduce the lifetime of the LCD.



Do Not Put Pressure on the Metallic Frame or Disassemble the LCD Module

Pressure on the metallic frame and PCB may deform the conductive rubber or break the liquid crystal cell and backlight, which will cause defects.

LCD may be shifted or conductive rubber may be reshaped, which will cause defects.



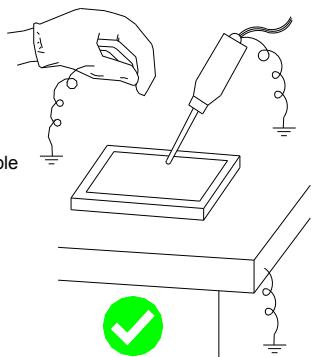
Slowly Peel Off Protective Film!

Avoid static electricity.



Avoid Static Electricity!

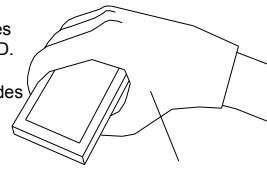
Please be sure to ground human body and electric appliances during work. It is preferable to use a conductive mat on the table and wear cotton clothes or conduction processed fiber. Synthetic fiber is not recommended.



Wear Gloves While Handing!

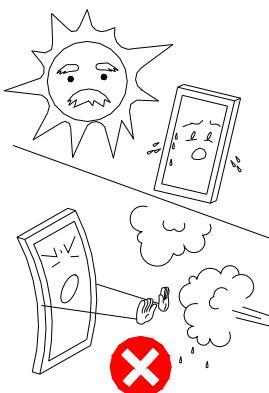
It is preferable to wear gloves to avoid damaging the LCD.

Please do not touch electrodes with bare hands or leave any residue.



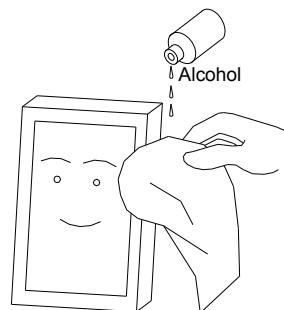
Keep Away From Extreme Heat and Humidity!

LCD deteriorates.



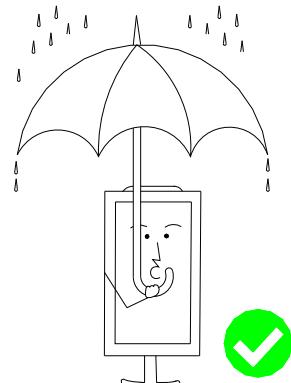
Use Alcohol to Clean Terminals!

When attaching with the heat seal or anisotropically conductive film, wipe off with alcohol before use.



Don't Drop Water on LCD!

Note that the presence of waterdrops or dew in the LCD panel may deteriorate the polarizer or corrode the electrodes.



Precaution in Soldering LCD Module

Basic instructions: Solder I/O terminals only.

Use soldering iron without leakage.

(1) Soldering condition to I/O terminals

Temperature at tip of the iron: $280 \pm 10^\circ$

Soldering time: 3~4 sec.

Type of solder: Eutectic solder (containing colophony-flux)

*Do not use flux because it may soak into the LCD Module or contaminate it.

*It is preferable to peel off protective film on the display surface after soldering I/O terminals are complete.

(2) Remove connector or cable

*When you remove connector or cable soldered to I/O terminals, please confirm that solder is fully melted. If you remove by force, electrodes at I/O terminals may be damaged (or stripped off).

*It is recommended to use a solder suction machine.

Long-term Storage

If it is necessary to store LCD modules for a period of time, please comply with the following procedures.

If storage conditions are not satisfactory, the display (especially polarizer) or soldering I/O terminals may become difficult (some oxide is generated at I/O terminals plating).

1. Store as delivered by Newhaven.

2. If you store it unpacked, put it in an anti-static bag, seal its opening and store where it is not subjected to direct sunlight or fluorescent light.

3. Store at temperature 0 to $+35^\circ$ and at low humidity. Please refer to our specification sheets for storage temperature range and humidity conditions.

Long-term Storage

Please use power supply with built-in surge protection circuit.